FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR
Second Edition
WORKBOOK

Betty Schrampfer Azar
Donald A. Azar
A developmental skills text that teaches speaking, listening, writing, and reading while focusing on target structures.

A broad syllabus of English structures for intermediate-level ESL/EFL students.

Clear, concise, easy-to-understand grammar charts.

A variety of written and oral exercises with lively and realistic contexts.

New features:
- Additional grammar areas
- New exercises
- Clarified structures and presentations

Available in full and split editions (A and B) and coordinated with the main text.

Self-study practices (with answers given) so students can work independently.

Guided study practices (with no answers given) for additional classwork, homework, or individualized instruction.

Presentation suggestions

Background grammar notes

Techniques for handling exercises

Notes on cultural content, vocabulary, and structure usage

Suggested activities

Answers to Main Text and Workbook exercises.

ISBN 0-13-347097-0
To Imme, Amelia Azar
Contents

PREFACE ............................................................................................. xl

Chapter 1 PRESENT TIME

PRACTICE PAGE

1—SELFSTUDY: Interview questions and answers ............................................ 1
2—GUIDED STUDY: Introducing yourself ........................................................ 2
3—GUIDED: Present verbs ........................................................................ 2
4—SELF: Present verbs ........................................................................... 3
5—SELF: Forms of the simple present ......................................................... 3
6—SELF: Simple present ........................................................................... 4
7—GUIDED: Final forms with -s/-es ................................................................ 5
8—SELF: Forms of the present and present progressive ................................ 5
9—SELF: Simple present and present progressive ...................................... 6
10—GUIDED: Simple present and present progressive ............................... 6
11—SELF: Frequency adverbs .................................................................... 7
12—GUIDED: Simple present: frequency adverbs ...................................... 8
13—SELF: Present progressive ................................................................... 9
14—GUIDED: Present progressive ............................................................ 10
15—SELF: Simple present and present progressive ....................................... 11
16—SELF: Present verbs: questions and short answers ............................. 12
17—GUIDED: Present progressive ............................................................ 13
18—GUIDED: Present progressive ............................................................ 14
19—SELF: Present verbs ........................................................................... 14
20—GUIDED: Present verbs ...................................................................... 15
21—GUIDED: Present verbs ...................................................................... 17
22—GUIDED: Present verbs ...................................................................... 17
23—SELF: Prepositions ............................................................................ 18
Chapter 2  PAST TIME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Simple past</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: Simple past: regular and irregular verbs</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—SELF: Simple past forms</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—SELF: Simple past: regular and irregular verbs</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—GUIDED STUDY: Simple past: regular and irregular verbs</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—SELF: Simple past: irregular verbs</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—GUIDED: Simple past: irregular verbs</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—GUIDED: Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ed endings</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ed endings</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—SELF: Spelling of -ing and -ed forms</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: Spelling of -ing</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: Simple present vs. simple past</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—SELF: Past progressive</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—GUIDED: Present progressive and past progressive</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—SELF: Past time using time clauses</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—SELF: Simple past vs. past progressive</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—GUIDED: Simple past vs. past progressive</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—GUIDED: Present and past verbs</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—SELF: Past habit with used to</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—GUIDED: Past habit with used to</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21—GUIDED: Past habit with used to</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22—GUIDED: Verb tense review</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23—GUIDED: Past time</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—GUIDED: Past time</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25—SELF: Prepositions of time</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26—SELF: Prepositions</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 3  FUTURE TIME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Present, past, and future</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: Present, past, and future</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—GUIDED STUDY: Present, past, and future</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—SELF: Be going to</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—GUIDED: Be going to</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—GUIDED: Be going to</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—SELF: Will</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—SELF: Will probably</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Will probably</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—GUIDED: Be going to and will</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: Be going to vs. will</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: Be going to vs. will</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—SELF: Time clauses</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—SELF: Time clauses</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—SELF: If-clauses</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4  NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Plural nouns</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: Plural nouns</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—GUIDED STUDY: Plural nouns</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—GUIDED: Plural nouns</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—SELF: Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—SELF: Nouns and verbs</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—GUIDED: Nouns and verbs</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—SELF: Adjectives</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—SELF: Adjectives and nouns</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—GUIDED: Adjectives and nouns</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: Nouns as adjectives</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: Nouns</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—GUIDED: Nouns</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—SELF: Personal pronouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—SELF: Personal pronouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—SELF: Personal pronouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—SELF: Personal pronouns</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—SELF: Possessive nouns</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—SELF: Possessive nouns</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—GUIDED: Possessive nouns</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21—GUIDED: Review of nouns + -s/-es</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22—SELF: Possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23—GUIDED: Possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—SELF: Reflexive pronouns</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25—SELF: Reflexive pronouns</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## MODAL AUXILIARIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: To with modal auxiliaries</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—GUIDED STUDY: To with modal auxiliaries</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—SELF: Expressing ability</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—GUIDED: Expressing ability</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—GUIDED: Expressing past ability</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—SELF: Expressing ability and possibility</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—SELF: Meanings of could</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—GUIDED: Expressing possibility</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Expressing possibility</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—SELF: Polite questions</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—GUIDED: Polite questions</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: Expressing advice</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—GUIDED: Expressing advice</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—SELF: Expressing necessity</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—GUIDED: Expressing necessity</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—SELF: Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—SELF: Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—GUIDED: Expressing advice and necessity</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—GUIDED: Expressing advice and necessity</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—SELF: Making logical conclusions</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21—GUIDED: Making logical conclusions</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22—SELF: Imperative sentences</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23—GUIDED: Imperative sentences</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—SELF: Making suggestions with let's and why don't</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25—GUIDED: Making suggestions with why don't you</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26—SELF: Stating preferences</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27—GUIDED: Stating preferences</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28—SELF: Cumulative review</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29—GUIDED: Cumulative review</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30—GUIDED: Review of auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31—GUIDED: Cumulative review</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32—SELF: Prepositions</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 6  QUESTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Asking “Interview” questions</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: Yes/no questions and short answers</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—SELF: Yes/no questions</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—GUIDED STUDY: Yes/no questions</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—SELF: Yes/no and information questions</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—SELF: Information questions</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—GUIDED: Yes/no and information questions</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—GUIDED: Asking for the meaning of a word</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Questions with why</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—SELF: Questions with who, who(m), and what</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: Who, who(m), and what</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: What + a form of do</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—GUIDED: What + a form of do</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—GUIDED: What + a form of do</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—GUIDED: What kind of.</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—SELF: Which vs. what</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—SELF: Who vs. whose</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—GUIDED: Asking questions</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—SELF: Using how</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—SELF: Using how far and how long</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21—SELF: Using how</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22—GUIDED: Using how</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23—SELF: Cumulative review</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—GUIDED: Cumulative review</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25—GUIDED: Cumulative review</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26—GUIDED: Cumulative review</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27—GUIDED: What about and how about</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28—SELF: Tag questions</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29—SELF: Tag questions</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30—GUIDED: Tag questions</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31—GUIDED: Asking questions</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32—SELF: Prepositions</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 7  THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Forms of the present perfect</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: The present perfect</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—SELF: The present perfect vs. the simple past</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—SELF: Irregular verbs</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—GUIDED STUDY: Irregular verbs</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—SELF: Since vs. for</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—SELF: Sentences with since-clauses</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTENTS  ◊ xi
# Chapter 8  COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

- 1—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 149
- 2—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: a/an and some ................................. 149
- 3—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: adding -s ........................................ 150
- 4—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: using two ....................................... 150
- 5—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: using a lot of .................................. 151
- 6—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: using too many and too much ......... 151
- 7—SELF: Count and noncount nouns: using a few and a little .................. 152
- 8—SELF: A vs. an: singular count nouns ................................................. 152
- 9—SELF: A/an vs. some .............................................................................. 153
- 10—SELF: Count and noncount nouns ...................................................... 153
- 11—GUIDED STUDY: Count and noncount nouns ..................................... 154
- 12—GUIDED: Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 155
- 13—SELF: How many and how much ....................................................... 155
- 14—SELF: A few vs. a little ......................................................................... 156
- 15—SELF: How many and how much ....................................................... 157
- 16—SELF: Units of measure with noncount nouns ..................................... 158
- 17—GUIDED: Units of measure with noncount nouns ................................ 158
- 18—GUIDED: How many and how much .................................................. 159
- 19—GUIDED: Count and noncount nouns .................................................. 159
- 20—SELF: Noncount abstractions .............................................................. 160
- 21—GUIDED: Noncount abstractions .......................................................... 160
- 22—SELF: Using a or Ø for generalizations ............................................... 161
- 23—SELF: Using a or some ......................................................................... 161
- 24—SELF: A/an vs. the: singular count nouns ........................................... 161
Chapter 9  CONNECTING IDEAS

◇ 1—SELFSTUDY: Connecting ideas with and ........................................ 175
◇ 2—SELF: Punctuating a series with and ........................................ 176
◇ 3—GUIDED STUDY: Punctuating a series with and .......................... 176
◇ 4—SELF: Connecting ideas with and ........................................ 177
◇ 5—SELF: Using and, but, and or ................................................ 177
◇ 6—SELF: Using and, but, or, and so ........................................ 178
◇ 7—SELF: Using and, but, or, and so ........................................ 178
◇ 8—SELF: Using and, but, or, and so ........................................ 179
◇ 9—SELF: Separating sentences: periods and capital letters ............. 179
◇ 10—GUIDED: Punctuating with commas and periods ....................... 180
◇ 11—GUIDED: Punctuating with commas and periods ....................... 181
◇ 12—SELF: Using auxiliary verbs after but and and ......................... 182
◇ 13—SELF: Using auxiliary verbs after but and and ......................... 183
◇ 14—SELF: Using too, so, either, or neither after and ...................... 183
◇ 15—GUIDED: Using so or neither to respond ................................ 184
◇ 16—GUIDED: Using too, so, either, or neither .............................. 186
◇ 17—SELF: Adverb clauses with because ..................................... 186
◇ 18—SELF: Adverb clauses with because ..................................... 186
◇ 19—GUIDED: Adverb clauses with because ................................ 187
◇ 20—SELF: Because vs. so ......................................................... 187
◇ 21—GUIDED: Using because ..................................................... 188
◇ 22—SELF: Using because and even though .................................. 188
◇ 23—SELF: Using even though and although .................................. 189
◇ 24—SELF: Using even though/although and because ....................... 189
◇ 25—GUIDED: Using even though/although and because .................. 190
◇ 26—GUIDED: Punctuating with commas and periods ...................... 192
◇ 27—SELF: Separable vs. nonseparable ....................................... 192
◇ 28—SELF: Identifying phrasal verbs ......................................... 193
◇ 29—SELF: Using phrasal verbs (separable) .................................. 193
◇ 30—SELF: Phrasal verbs ......................................................... 195
◇ 31—SELF: Phrasal verbs ......................................................... 195
Chapter 10  GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>◦  1—SELFSTUDY: Identifying gerunds and infinitives</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  2—GUIDED STUDY: Verb + gerund</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  3—SELF: Go + gerund</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  4—SELF: Verb + gerund vs. infinitive</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  5—SELF: Verb + gerund or infinitive</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  6—GUIDED: Verb + gerund or infinitive</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  7—GUIDED: Gerunds vs. Infinitives</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  8—SELF: Uncompleted infinitives</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  9—GUIDED: Uncompleted infinitives</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  10—SELF: Preposition + gerund</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  11—GUIDED: Preposition + gerund</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  12—SELF: Using <em>by</em> + gerund</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  13—GUIDED: Using <em>by</em> + gerund</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  14—SELF: Using <em>with</em></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  15—SELF: <em>By</em> vs. <em>with</em></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  16—SELF: Gerund as subject; <em>it</em> + infinitive</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  17—GUIDED: Gerund as subject; <em>it</em> + infinitive</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  18—GUIDED: <em>it + for (someone)</em> + infinitive</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  19—GUIDED: <em>it + take</em></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  20—GUIDED: <em>it + for (someone)</em> + Infinitive</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  21—SELF: <em>(in order) to</em></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  22—SELF: Purpose: <em>to</em> vs. <em>for</em></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  23—SELF: <em>Too and enough</em> + infinitive</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  24—SELF: <em>Too and enough</em> + infinitive</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  25—SELF: Gerunds vs. Infinitives</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  26—SELF: Gerunds vs. Infinitives</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  27—GUIDED: Gerunds vs. Infinitives</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  28—GUIDED: Gerunds vs. Infinitives</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  29—SELF: Phrasal verbs (separable)</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  30—SELF: Phrasal verbs (separable)</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 11  THE PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>◦  1—SELFSTUDY: Active vs. passive</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  2—SELF: Review of past participles</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  3—SELF: Passive form</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  4—SELF: Tense forms of the passive</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  5—SELF: Passive to active</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  6—SELF: Passive to active</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  7—GUIDED STUDY: Passive to active</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  8—SELF: Transitive vs. Intransitive</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◦  9—SELF: Active and passive</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE PAGE

10—SELF: The by-phrase .......................................................... 227
11—GUIDED: The by-phrase .................................................... 227
12—SELF: Active vs. passive ...................................................... 229
13—SELF: Progressive tenses in passive ........................................ 230
14—GUIDED: Progressive tenses in passive ..................................... 230
15—GUIDED: Active vs. passive .................................................. 231
16—SELF: Passive modals .......................................................... 232
17—GUIDED: Passive modals ....................................................... 232
18—SELF: Active vs. passive ...................................................... 233
19—GUIDED: Active vs. passive .................................................. 234
20—SELF: Stative passive ........................................................... 235
21—SELF: Participial adjectives .................................................... 236
22—GUIDED: Participial adjectives ................................................. 237
23—GUIDED: Participial adjectives ................................................. 238
24—SELF: Get + adjective and past participle .................................... 238
25—GUIDED: Get + adjective and past participle ................................ 239
26—SELF: Used to vs. be accustomed to .......................................... 240
27—SELF: Used to vs. be used to .................................................. 240
28—GUIDED: Be used/accustomed to and get used/accustomed to .......... 241
29—SELF: Be supposed to ............................................................ 241
30—SELF: Be supposed to ............................................................ 241
31—GUIDED: Be supposed to ........................................................ 242
32—GUIDED: Verb form review ..................................................... 242

Chapter 12 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

1—SELFSTUDY: Using who in adjective clauses .................................. 245
2—SELF: Using who in adjective clauses ......................................... 246
3—SELF: Using who in adjective clauses ......................................... 247
4—SELF: Using who and whom in adjective clauses .............................. 247
5—SELF: Using who and whom in adjective clauses .............................. 248
6—SELF: Using who and who(m) in adjective clauses ............................ 248
7—GUIDED STUDY: Using who and who(m) in adjective clauses .......... 249
8—SELF: Using that or Ø in adjective clauses ................................... 249
9—SELF: Using who, who(m), that, and Ø in adjective clauses ............... 250
10—SELF: Who and who(m) vs. which ............................................. 250
11—SELF: Using which, that, and Ø in adjective clauses ....................... 251
12—SELF: Object pronouns in adjective clauses: error analysis ............... 251
13—GUIDED: Object pronouns in adjective clauses: error analysis ........... 252
14—GUIDED: Using who, who(m), which, that, and Ø in adjective clauses .... 252
15—SELF: Pronoun usage in adjective clauses ..................................... 253
16—GUIDED: Pronoun usage in adjective clauses ................................ 253
17—GUIDED: Adjective clauses ...................................................... 254
18—GUIDED: Adjective clauses ...................................................... 255
19—GUIDED: Adjective clauses ...................................................... 256
20—SELF: Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses ......................... 256

CONTENTS ◆ xv
Chapter 14 NOUN CLAUSES

- 1—SELFSTUDY: Noun clauses and information questions
- 2—SELF: Noun clauses and information questions
- 3—SELF: Noun clauses that begin with a question word
- 4—SELF: Noun clauses and information questions
- 5—SELF: Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be
- 6—SELF: Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be
- 7—SELF: Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be
- 8—GUIDED STUDY: Noun clauses and information questions
- 9—GUIDED: Information questions and noun clauses
- 10—SELF: Yes/no questions and noun clauses
- 11—GUIDED: Yes/no questions and noun clauses
- 12—GUIDED: Noun clauses
- 13—GUIDED: Questions and noun clauses
- 14—GUIDED: Questions and noun clauses
- 15—SELF: That-clauses
- 16—SELF: That-clauses
- 17—GUIDED: That-clauses
- 18—GUIDED: That-clauses
- 19—GUIDED: That-clauses
- 20—SELF: Substituting so for a that-clause
- 21—GUIDED: Substituting so for a that-clause

Chapter 15 QUOTED SPEECH AND REPORTED SPEECH

- 1—SELFSTUDY: Quoted speech
- 2—SELF: Quoted speech
- 3—SELF: Quoted speech
- 4—SELF: Quoted speech
- 5—GUIDED STUDY: Quoted speech
- 6—GUIDED: Quoted speech
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7—SELF: Reported speech: pronoun usage</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—SELF: Reported speech: sequence of tenses</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Reported speech: pronoun usage and sequence of tenses</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—SELF: Say vs. tell</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: Reporting questions</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—GUIDED: Reporting questions</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—GUIDED: Reported vs. quoted speech</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—GUIDED: Reported speech</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—SELF: Verb + infinitive to report speech</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—GUIDED: Verb + infinitive to report speech</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—GUIDED: Verb + infinitive to report speech</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—GUIDED: Verb + infinitive to report speech</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—GUIDED: Reporting speech</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—SELF: Using advise, suggest, and recommend</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21—GUIDED: Using advise, suggest, and recommend</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22—GUIDED: Reporting speech</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23—GUIDED: Questions and noun clauses</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 16 USING WISH; USING IF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—SELFSTUDY: Making wishes</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—SELF: Making wishes</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—SELF: Using auxiliaries after wish</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4—SELF: Making wishes about the past</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5—SELF: Using auxiliaries after wish</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—GUIDED STUDY: Using wish</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—SELF: Using if: contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—SELF: Using if: contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9—GUIDED: Using if: contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—SELF: If: true vs. contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—SELF: If: contrary-to-fact in the past</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—SELF: Contracting had and would</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—SELF: Review of verb forms with if</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—GUIDED: Using wish and if</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15—SELF: Past verbs, contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—GUIDED: Past verbs, true and contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—SELF: Review of verb forms with if</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—GUIDED: Conditional sentences</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—GUIDED: Conditional sentences</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEX | 345 |

ANSWER KEY | Answer Key 1 |
This Workbook consists of exercises to accompany Fundamentals of English Grammar (2nd edition), a developmental skills text for mid-level ESL/EFL students. The exercises are designated SELFSTUDY (answers given) or GUIDED STUDY (answers not given). The SELFSTUDY practices are intended for students to use independently. The answers are in a separate, detachable Answer Key booklet at the back of this book. The GUIDED STUDY practices may be selected by the teacher for additional classwork, homework, or individualized instruction. Answers to the GUIDED STUDY practices, as well as suggestions for using the Workbook, can be found in the Teacher's Guide.

Many of the initial practices in each unit are tightly controlled and deliberate, intended to clarify form and meaning. Control is then loosened as the manipulative and clarifying practices lead to others that promote free, creative use of the target structures. The Workbook also contains suggestions for writing and various group activities such as games and discussions.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I am grateful to the many people who enable me to pursue the work I love. I am especially indebted to my husband, mainstay, and co-author, Don, who kept me afloat through the recent illness and loss of my much loved mother and provided the support system in which our work together could continue and prosper.

I am also greatly indebted to Shelley Hartle, our editorial assistant, without whom it would have been impossible to keep to production schedule. Though still new to the team, she adapted quickly and handled everything with aplomb, from proofing galleys and compiling indexes to tending the ducks when we had to be away.

Many thanks to Janet Johnston, our production editor, who kept everything running smoothly on her end and was wonderfully supportive and understanding. Thanks similarly go to Sylvia Moore, managing editor. Special thanks also go to Tina Carver, publisher, who has been consistently supportive not only as a friend but as a top-notch publishing professional whose sound judgment I highly respect.

My appreciation goes, too, to Ray Adame, Barbara Barysh, Nancy Baxter, Eric Bredenberg, Karen Chiang, Athena Foley, Norman Harris, Terry Jennings, Gordon Johnson, Ray Keating, Andy Martin, Don Martinetti, Gil Muller, Ed Perez, Jack Ross, Jerry Smith, and Ed Stanford. In addition, my gratitude goes to Joy Edwards, Barbara Matthies, and R.T. Steltz. Chelsea Azar has been splendid. Finally, I am lovingly grateful to my father for his continuing support and involvement in my endeavors. Many of his ideas and suggestions are reflected in the text.

BETTY SCHRAMPFER AZAR
Once again, I begin by expressing my gratitude to Betty for her continued patience and guidance, and for the same incredible expertise that she brings to all phases of this project. Much of this was accomplished during a difficult time. Her ability and persistence got the book out. I continue to marvel and to learn.

I want to thank my father-in-law, Bill Schrampfer, for numerous handwritten ideas for topics and sentences. His agile mind provided much fodder. Inspiration appeared from many sources, R.T. Steltz, Tom Hemba, and my uncle Elias George among them, as well as Fred Lockyear, Gary Althen and other colleagues whose brains I often pick without knowing why until I start putting sentences down.

And special thanks still go to Chelsea Azar. She continues to endure our commitment to these projects and always provides joy and support.

DONALD A. AZAR
Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate words.

A: Hi. My name ________ is Kunio.

B: Hi. My ________ name is Maria. I ________ glad to meet you.

KUNIO: I ________ glad to ________ you, too. Where ________

MARIA: I ________ from Mexico. Where ________

KUNIO: I ________ Japan.

MARIA: Where ________ living now?

KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in ________ apartment. And you?

MARIA: I ________ living in a dorm.

KUNIO: ________ your field of study?

MARIA: Business. After I study English, I ________ going to attend the School of Business Administration. How ________ you? ________ your major?

KUNIO: Chemistry.

MARIA: ________ you like to do in your free time? ________ you have any hobbies?

KUNIO: I ________ to swim. How ________ you?

MARIA: I read a lot and I ________ stamps from all over the world.

KUNIO: Really? ________ you like some stamps from Japan?

MARIA: Sure! That would be great! Thanks.

KUNIO: I have ________ write your full name on the board when I introduce ________ to the class. ________ do you spell your name?

MARIA: My first ________ is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last ________ is Lopez. L-O-P-E-Z.

MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. That right?

KUNIO: Yes, it is. It's been nice talking with you.

MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

◊ PRACTICE 2—GUIDED STUDY: Introducing yourself.

Directions: Write answers to the questions. Use your own paper.

1. What is your name?
2. Where are you from?
3. Where are you living?
4. Why are you here (in this city)?
   a. Are you a student? If so, what is your major field of study?
   b. Do you work? If so, what is your job?
   c. Do you have another reason for being here?
5. What do you like to do in your free time?
6. What is your favorite season of the year? Why?
7. What are your three favorite books?
8. Describe your first day at this school.

◊ PRACTICE 3—GUIDED STUDY: Present verbs. (Charts 1–1 → 1–3)

Directions: All of the following sentences contain mistakes. Find the mistakes and rewrite each sentence correctly.

Example: I no like cold weather. → I don't like cold weather.

1. I no living at home right now.
2. I be living in this city.
3. Student at this school.
4. I am study English.
5. I am not knowing my teacher's name.
6. (supply name) teach our English class.
7. She/He* expect us to be in class on time.
8. We always are coming to class on time.
9. Tom does he going to school?
10. Tom no go to school.
11. My sister don't have a job.
12. Does Sara has a job?

*Choose the appropriate pronoun for your teacher, he or she.
13. Does you have a job?
14. Is Canada does it be north of the United States?
15. I never to go to my office on Saturday.
16. Ahmed, Toshi, Ji, Ingrid, and Pedro eats lunch together every day.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Present verbs. (Charts 1-1 → 1-3)

Directions: Use the given verb to complete the sentence that follows. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

1. sit I ___________ am sitting ______ at my desk right now.
2. read I _______________ the second sentence in this exercise.
3. look I _______________ at sentence 3 now.
4. write Now I _______________ the right completion for this sentence.
5. do I _______________ a grammar exercise.
6. sit I usually ___________ sit ______ at my desk when I do my homework. And right now I ___________ am sitting ______ at my desk to do this exercise.
7. read I often _______________ the newspaper, but right now I _______________ a sentence in my grammar workbook.
8. look I _______________ at the newspaper every day. But right now I _______________ at my grammar workbook.
9. write When I do exercises in this workbook, I _______________ the answers in my book and then I check them in the Answer Key.* Right now I _______________ an answer in the book.
10. do I _______________ grammar exercises every day. Right now I _______________ Practice 4 in this workbook.

◊ PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Forms of the simple present. (Chart 1-1)

Directions: Review the basic forms of the SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE by completing the sentences with the correct form of the verb “SPEAK.”

PART I: STATEMENT FORMS

1. I (speak) ____________________________ English.
2. They (speak) ____________________________ English.
3. He (speak) ____________________________ English.
4. You (speak) ____________________________ English.
5. She (speak) ____________________________ English.

*The Answer Key to the selfstudy practices is in the back of this book.
PART II: NEGATIVE FORMS

1. I (speak, not) ________ do not (don't) speak ________ your language.
2. They (speak, not) ________ English.
3. He (speak, not) ________ English.
4. You (speak, not) ________ English.
5. She (speak, not) ________ English.

PART III: QUESTION FORMS

1. (you, speak) Do you speak ________ English?
2. (they, speak) ________ English?
3. (he, speak) ________ English?
4. (we, speak) ________ English?
5. (she, speak) ________ English?

◊ PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Simple present. (Charts 1-1 → 1-3)

Directions: Write -S/ES in the blanks where necessary and make any other needed changes in the verb. If the verb does not need -S/ES, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. Alan like____ to play soccer.
2. My son watch____ too much TV.
3. Rita do____ n't like____ coffee.
4. Monkeys climb____ trees.
5. Do____ you like____ to climb trees?
6. Do____ Paul like____ to cook?
7. Alex like____ to dance
8. Mike wash____ his own clothes.
9. Rita go____ to school at seven.
11. A bee visit____ many flowers in one day.
12. Tina get____ her work done on time.
13. Tina and Pat get____ their work done.
14. Do____ Bill get____ his work done?
15. Eric do____ n't get____ it done on time.
16. David carry____ a briefcase to work.
17. Janet play____ tennis every day.
18. A frog catch____ flies with its tongue.
19. Frogs are small green animals that live____ near water.
20. A turtle is another animal that live____ near water.
PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Final forms with -s/-es. (Charts 1-1 → 1-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences in COLUMN A with the words from COLUMN B.
• Capitalize the first word of the sentence.
• Add final -s/-es to the verb if necessary.
• Add a period or question mark at the end of the sentence.

Example: 1. A star shines in the sky at night.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a star</td>
<td>A. cause air pollution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a hotel</td>
<td>B. stretch when you pull on it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. newspaper ink</td>
<td>C. support a huge variety of marine life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. bees</td>
<td>D. shine in the sky at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. do automobiles</td>
<td>E. cause great destruction when it reaches land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. does physical exercise</td>
<td>F. use its long trunk like a hand to pick things up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. a rubber band</td>
<td>G. improve your circulation and general health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. a river</td>
<td>H. stain my hands when I read the paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. oceans</td>
<td>I. produce one-fourth of the world’s coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Brazil</td>
<td>J. gather nectar from flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. does an elephant</td>
<td>K. flow downhill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. a hurricane</td>
<td>L. supply its guests with clean towels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Forms of the present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Review the basic forms of the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE by completing the sentences with the correct form of the verb "SPEAK."

PART I: STATEMENT FORMS

1. I (speak) ____________________________ am speaking English right now.
2. They (speak) ____________________________ English right now.
3. She (speak) ____________________________ English right now.
4. You (speak) ____________________________ English right now.

PART II: NEGATIVE FORMS

1. I (speak, not) ____________________________ am not speaking English right now.
2. They (speak, not) ____________________________ English right now.
3. He (speak, not) ____________________________ English right now.
4. You (speak, not) ____________________________ English right now.

PART III: QUESTION FORMS

1. (you, speak) ____________________________ Are you speaking English right now?
2. (they, speak) ____________________________ English right now?
3. (she, speak) ____________________________ English right now?
4. (we, speak) ____________________________ English right now?
Directions: Complete the sentences with DO, DOES, IS, or ARE. If no completion is needed, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. Jack _______ not work at his father’s store.
2. _______ you have a job?
3. Kate _______ works at a restaurant.
4. Tom _______ working this afternoon.
5. _______ you working today?
6. Emily and Sara _______ working at the ice cream store this summer.
7. _______ Eric planning to get a job this summer?
8. _______ you plan to get a job, too?
9. Denise _______ wears jeans to work every day.
10. She _______ a carpenter.
11. Today she _______ working at the Hills’ house.
12. She and her partner Scott _______ building a new porch for Mr. and Mrs. Hill.
13. Denise and Scott usually _______ work together on small construction jobs.
15. _______ snakes lay eggs?
16. _______ a lizard lay eggs?
17. _______ a lizard a reptile?
18. _______ turtles and snakes reptiles?
19. Turtles, snakes, and lizards _______ all reptiles.
20. Almost all reptiles _______ lay eggs.
21. Reptiles _______ cold-blooded.
22. Their body temperature _______ the same as the temperature of their surroundings.

Directions: Complete the sentences with DO, DOES, IS, or ARE. If no completion is needed, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. A mosquito _______ flying around Sam’s head.
2. Mosquitoes _______ pests.
3. They _______ bother people and animals.
4. _______ a male mosquito bite?
5. No, male mosquitoes _______ not bite.
6. Only female mosquitoes _______ bite animals and people.
7. A female mosquito _______ lays 1,000 to 3,000 eggs in her lifetime.
8. How long __________ mosquitoes live?
9. A female mosquito __________ lives for 30 days.
10. A male mosquito __________ not live as long as a female.
11. How long __________ a male mosquito live?
12. It __________ dies after 10 to 20 days.
13. Hillary __________ wearing mosquito repellent.

14. The mosquito repellent ____________ smells bad, but it ____________ works.
15. The mosquito repellent ____________ effective.
16. Mosquitoes ____________ stay away from people who ____________ wearing mosquito repellent.
17. ____________ you ever wear mosquito repellent?
18. ____________ mosquito repellent work?

◊ PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Frequency adverbs. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)
Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate FREQUENCY ADVERB* from the list.
always usually often sometimes seldom rarely never
1. I see one or two movies every week. → I ____________ go to the movies.
2. I let my roommate borrow my car one time last year.
   → I ____________ let my roommate borrow my car.
3. Maria eats cereal for breakfast seven days a week.
   → Maria ________________ eats cereal for breakfast.
4. Four out of five visitors to the museum stay for three hours or longer.
   → Museum visitors ________________ stay for at least three hours.
5. We occasionally have quizzes in Dr. Jacobs's history class.
   → Dr. Jacobs ________________ gives quizzes in history class.

*See Chart 7-8 for more information about frequency adverbs.
6. If the teacher is on time, the class begins at 8:00 A.M. Once in a while, the teacher is a few minutes late.  
   → The class ________________ begins at 8:00 A.M.

7. The train from Chicago has been late ninety percent of the time.
   → The train from Chicago is ________________ on time.

8. In the desert, it rains only two days between May and September every year.
   → It ________________ rains there in the summer.

9. James asks me to go the sailboat races every year, but I don’t accept his invitation because I think sailboat racing is boring.
   → I ________________ go to sailboat races with James.

10. Every time I go to a movie, I buy popcorn.
    → I ________________ buy popcorn when I go to a movie.

11. Andy and Jake are friends. They go out to dinner at least three times a week.
    → Andy and Jake ________________ go out to dinner with each other.

12. Andy and Jake do business with each other every once in a while. Most of the time they don’t discuss business when they go out to dinner with each other.
    → They ________________ discuss business during dinner.

◊ PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Simple present: frequency adverbs. (Charts 1–1 and 1–2)

Directions: Make sentences about yourself. Use FREQUENCY ADVERBS with the given ideas.

Example: wear sandals in the summer
         → I usually wear sandals in the summer.

Example: read poetry in my spare time
         → I rarely read poetry in my spare time.

FREQUENCY ADVERBS:

always usually often sometimes seldom rarely never

1. wear a suit to class
2. go to sleep at ten-thirty
3. read mystery stories before I go to sleep
4. hand in my school assignments on time
5. listen to the radio in the morning
6. speak to strangers at a bus stop
7. believe the things I read in newspapers
8. call a friend if I feel lonely or homesick
9. wear a hat when the weather is chilly
10. have chocolate ice cream for dessert
Directions: Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE to identify the actions in the pictures.

1. __________
   He's doing the crawl.

2. __________

3. __________

4. __________

5. __________

6. __________
Directions: Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE to identify the actions in the pictures.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PRESENT or PRESENT PROGRESSIVE form of the verbs in the list. Each verb is used only one time.

belong need see □ take
bite play shine understand
drive prefer sing watch
look rain □ snow write

1. Look outside! It __________. Everything is beautiful and all white.

2. My father __________ the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning.

3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I __________ my car to work.

4. A: Charlie, can’t you hear the telephone? Answer it!
   B: You get it! I __________ my favorite TV show. I don’t want to miss anything.
5. A: What kind of tea do you like?  
   B: Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I _______________ green tea.

6. I'm gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I _______________ a larger pair of pants.

   B: Where are they?  
   A: They _______________ a game outside in the street.

8. It's night. There's no moon. Emily is outside. She _______________ at the sky. She _______________ more stars than she can count.

9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he _______________ with a musical group in town. It's a good way to earn a little extra money.

10. A: Ouch!  
    B: What's the matter?  
    A: Every time I eat too fast, I _______________ my tongue.

11. Alicia always _______________ in her diary after dinner.

12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I _______________ that lesson.

13. This magazine isn't mine. It _______________ to Colette.

14. I can see a rainbow because the sun _______________ and it _______________ at the same time.

◊ PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Present verbs: questions and short answers. (Chart 1–5)

Directions: Complete the questions with DO, DOES, IS, or ARE. Then complete both the affirmative and negative short answers.

1. A: ____________ you leaving now?  
   B: Yes, ____________ I am. OR: No, ____________ I'm not.

2. A: ____________ your neighbors know that you are a police officer?  
   B: Yes, ____________ they do. OR: No, ____________ they don't.

3. A: ____________ you follow the same routine every morning?  
   B: Yes, ____________ . OR: No, ____________ .

4. A: ____________ Dr. Jarvis know the name of her new assistant yet?  
   B: Yes, ____________ . OR: No, ____________ .

5. A: ____________ Paul and Beth studying the problem?  
   B: Yes, ____________ . OR: No, ____________ .

6. A: ____________ they understand the problem?  
   B: Yes, ____________ . OR: No, ____________ .

7. A: ____________ Mike reading the paper and watching television at the same time?  
   B: Yes, ____________ . OR: No, ____________ .
8. A: __________ you listening to me?
   B: Yes, __________. OR: No, ______________.

9. A: __________ that building safe?
   B: Yes, ______________. OR: No, ______________.

10. A: __________ the weather affect* your mood?
    B: Yes, ______________. OR: No, ______________.

◊ PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: In small groups, pretend to perform actions. One member of the group pretends to do something, and the rest of the group tries to guess what the action is and describe it using the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

Example: painting a wall

STUDENT A: (pretends to be painting a wall)
OTHERS: You’re conducting an orchestra. (No.)
Are you washing a window? (No.)
You’re painting a wall. (Yes!)

SUGGESTIONS FOR ACTION:
painting a wall        playing the piano
drinking a cup of tea/coffee    swimming
petting a dog            driving a car
 dialing a telephone    watching a tennis match
climbing a tree           pitching a baseball

*The word affect is a verb: The weather affects my mood.
The word effect is a noun: Warm, sunny weather has a good effect on my mood.
PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Present progressive. (Charts 1–1 and 1–2)

Direction: Practice the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE in pairs or groups.

FIRST: In a small group of your classmates, pretend to perform any usual, common human activity and describe aloud what you are doing.

Example: I’m standing in front of an unpainted wall. I’m opening a can of paint. Now I’m picking up a paintbrush. I’m dipping the brush in a can of paint. I’m lifting the brush. Now I’m painting the wall.

SECOND: Perform the action again while your classmates describe what you are doing.

Example: You’re standing in front of an unpainted wall. You’re opening a can of paint. Now you’re picking up a paintbrush. You’re dipping the brush in a can of paint. You’re lifting the brush. Now you’re painting the wall.

PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: Present verbs. (Charts 1–1 → 1–5)

Directions: Use either the SIMPLE PRESENT or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE of the verbs in parentheses.

1. It (be) _______ a cool autumn day. The wind (blow) _______ is blowing ________, and the leaves (fall) _______ are falling ________ to the ground.

2. My roommate (eat) _______________ breakfast at exactly seven o’clock every morning. I usually (eat, not) _______________ breakfast at all. What time (eat, you) ________ in the morning?

3. A: (shop, you) ________________ at this store every week?
   B: No. I _________. I (shop, usually) ________________ at the store near my apartment.
   A: Why (shop, you) ________________ here now?
   B: I (try) ________________ to find something special for my father’s birthday.

4. A: Flowers! Flowers for sale! Yes sir! Can I help you?
   B: I’ll take those—the yellow ones.
   A: Here you are, mister. Are they for a special occasion?
   B: I (buy) ________________ them for my wife. I (buy) ________ ________ her flowers on the first day of every month.
5. A: I like to read. How about you? (read, you) __________________ a lot?
   B: Yes, I __________________. I (read) __________________ at least one novel each week, and I (subscribe) __________________ to several magazines. And I always (look) __________________ at the newspaper during breakfast.

6. A: Knock, knock! Anybody home? Hey, Bill! Hi! It’s me. Where are you?
   B: I (be) __________ in the bedroom!
   A: What are you doing?*
   B: I (try) __________ to sleep!
   A: Oh. Sorry. I won’t bother you. Tom, shhh. Bill (rest) __________________.

7. Before you begin to study, you should ask yourself two questions. First, “Why (study, I) __________________ this subject right now?” Second, “What (want, I) __________________ to learn about this topic?” Students (need) __________________ to understand the purpose of their study.

8. In cold climates, many trees (lose) __________ their leaves in winter. They (rest) __________ for several months. Then they (grow) __________ new leaves and flowers in the spring. Some trees (keep) __________ their leaves during the winter and (stay) __________ green all year long. In some regions of the earth, trees (grow, not) __________ at all. For example, some desert areas (have, not) __________ any trees. (grow, trees) __________ on all of the continents in the world??*

◊ PRACTICE 20—GUIDED STUDY: Present verbs. (Charts 1–1 → 1–4)

Directions: Use either the SIMPLE PRESENT or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Ann is a painter. She (go) __________ to the opening of every new art show in the city. She (like) __________ to see the latest work of other artists. Right now she (prepare) __________ for her own show of her new paintings next month.

   B: It’s about Spain. I (think) ____________ you would enjoy it.
   A: I (see) ____________ sailing ships on the cover.
   B: Yes. It (be) ____________ about Spanish explorations in the 17th century.

3. A: I (leave) ____________ now. (want, you) ____________ to go with me into town?
   B: No, thanks. I can’t. I (wait) ____________ for my sister to call from the airport so that I can pick her up.

*In rapid, informal spoken English, What are you doing can sound like “Whatcha do-un?”

**No trees grow in Antarctica.
4. I work for an agricultural equipment company called Ballco. Right now, Ballco (try) _____________ to establish business contacts throughout South America. At the present time, our sales manager (travel) ________________ in Brazil and (talk) ________________ to potential customers. He (know) ________________ both Spanish and Portuguese.

5. A: Does the earth turn around and around?
   B: Yes, Jimmy. The earth (spin) ________________ around and around on its axis as it circles the sun. The earth (spin) ________________ rapidly at this very moment.
   A: I (feel, not) ________________ anything. (try, you) ________________ to fool me?
   B: Of course not! (think, you, really) ________________ that the earth isn’t moving?
   A: I guess so. Yes. I can’t see it move. Yes. It isn’t moving.
   B: (believe, you) ________________ only those things that you can see? Look at the trees out the window. All of them (grow) ________________ at this very moment, but you can’t see the growth. They (get) ________________ bigger and bigger with every second that passes. You can’t see the trees grow, and you can’t feel the earth spin, but both events (take) ________________ place at this moment while you and I (speak) ________________.
   A: Really? How do you know?

6. A: Look at Della! Where (go, she) ________________ and why (walk, she) ________________ so fast?
   B: She (rush) ________________ to a meeting with the company vice-president. Every morning at this time, she (submit) ________________ a report on the previous day’s activities and (present) ________________ the daily recommendations.
   A: But I (hear, usually) ________________ the daily recommendations from the president himself at the ten o’clock staff meetings.
   B: Every day, the vice-president (rewrite) ________________ Della’s comments and (take) ________________ them to the president. At every ten o’clock meeting, the president simply (read) ________________ the same recommendations that Della stayed up working on the night before, and he (act) ________________ like he’s been up for hours contemplating those ideas.
   A: Well, I’ll be darned! That (seem, not) ________________ fair!
   B: It (be, not) ________________ . But that’s the way it works.
Directions: Change the verb tenses. Use the same verb, but change other words in the sentence to make the meaning of the new verb tense clear.

PART I: Change the italicized verb from the SIMPLE PRESENT to the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE. Change other words to make the meaning of the new verb tense clear.

Example: Jane walks to work almost every day.
→ Right now it's 7:45 in the morning, and Jane is walking to work.

1. I study English every day.
2. The sun shines from morning until night every day.
3. The earth rotates on its axis.
4. Dr. Li talks to high school students all over the country about the dangers of drugs.
5. When Ted is tired, he sleeps wherever he is.

PART II: Change the italicized verb from the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE to the SIMPLE PRESENT. Change other words to make the meaning of the new verb tense clear.

Example: Right now, Luigi's team is winning the soccer game by a score of one to nothing.
→ Luigi's team always wins a lot of soccer games during the year.

6. Sue and her husband aren't home. They are traveling in South America.
7. Listen. Sam is playing the piano.
8. We don't have class today because our physics professor is running in a marathon this afternoon.
9. My friend Adam is wearing jeans today.
10. I'm doing a grammar exercise.

Directions: Complete the sentences in your own words, using the SIMPLE PRESENT or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE form of a verb, whichever is appropriate.

Example: ... every day before ... .
→ My brother George eats a large breakfast every day before he leaves for work.

1. ... usually ... before ...
2. ... always ... when ...
3. ... every Wednesday afternoon.
4. ... at this very moment.
5. ... every other day or so.
6. Why ... right now?
7. How often ... ?
8. ... sometimes ... after ...
9. ... rarely ... when ...
10. At the present time, ...
Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.*

1. My eight-year-old son Mark is afraid _____ of _____ thunder and lightning.
2. My mother really likes my friend Ahmed because he is always so polite _____ her.
3. Fifty miles is equal _____ eighty kilometers.
4. A: How do I get to your house?
   B: Are you familiar _____ the big red barn on Coles Road? My house is just past that and on the left.
   A: Oh, sure. I know where it is.
5. It’s so hot! I’m thirsty _____ a big glass of ice water.
6. My boss was nice _____ me after I made that mistake, but I could tell she wasn’t pleased.
7. Are you angry _____ me?
8. A: Harry, try some of this pasta. It’s delicious.
   B: No, thanks. My plate is already full _____ food.
9. Four council members were absent _____ the meeting last night.
10. A: Why are you so friendly with Mr. Parsons? He’s always so mean to everybody.
     B: He’s always been very kind _____ me, so I have no reason to treat him otherwise.
11. My sister is so mad _____ me. She won’t even speak to me.
12. Is everybody ready _____ dinner? Let’s eat before the food gets cold.

*See Appendix 1 for a list of preposition combinations.
CHAPTER 2
Past Time

◇ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Simple past. (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

Directions: Change the sentences to PAST TIME. Use a SIMPLE PAST verb. Choose yesterday or last.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every morning</td>
<td>yesterday morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every afternoon</td>
<td>yesterday afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every night</td>
<td>last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every week</td>
<td>last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every Monday, Tuesday, etc.</td>
<td>last Monday, Tuesday, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every month</td>
<td>last month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every year</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I walk to my office every morning.
   
   → I _______ walked _______ to my office yesterday, last morning.

2. I talk to my parents on the phone every week.
   
   → I _______ talked _______ to my parents on the phone yesterday, last week.

3. The post office opens at eight o'clock every morning.
   
   → The post office ____________ at eight o'clock yesterday, last morning.

4. Mrs. Hall goes to the fruit market every Monday.
   
   → Mrs. Hall ____________ the fruit market yesterday, last Monday.

5. The company executives meet at nine o'clock every Friday morning.
   
   → The executives ____________ at nine o'clock yesterday, last Friday morning.

6. I make my own lunch and take it to work with me every morning.
   
   → Yesterday, Last morning, I ____________ my own lunch and ____________ it to work with me.

7. Mr. Clark pays his rent on time every month.
   
   → Mr. Clark ____________ his rent on time yesterday, last month.

8. The baby falls asleep at three o'clock every afternoon.
   
   → Yesterday, Last afternoon, the baby ____________ asleep at three o'clock.

9. The last bus to downtown leaves at ten o'clock every night.
   
   → The last bus to downtown ____________ at ten o'clock yesterday, last night.
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Simple past: regular and irregular verbs. (Charts 2–1 → 2–4)

Directions: Write the SIMPLE PAST form of the given verbs.

1. start  
2. go  
3. see  
4. stand  
5. arrive  
6. win  
7. have  
8. make  
9. finish  
10. feel  
11. fall  
12. hear  
13. sing  
14. explore  
15. ask  
16. bring  
17. break  
18. eat  
19. watch  
20. build  
21. take  
22. pay  
23. leave  
24. wear

PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Simple past forms. (Charts 2–1 → 2–4)

Directions: Use the given words to make questions and give answers.

1. you/answer
   A: ___________________________ the question?
   B: Yes, ___________________ I answered the question. OR:
      No, ___________________ I didn’t answer the question.

2. he/see
   A: ___________________________ the fireworks?
   B: Yes, ___________________ the fireworks.
      No, ___________________ the fireworks.

3. they/watch
   A: ___________________________ the game?
   B: Yes, ___________________ the game.
      No, ___________________ the game.

4. you/understand
   A: ___________________________ the lecture?
   B: Yes, ___________________ the lecture.
      No, ___________________ the lecture.

5. you/be
   A: ___________________________ at home last night?
   B: Yes, ___________________ at home last night.
      No, ___________________ at home last night.
Directions: Complete the sentences by using the SIMPLE PAST of the verbs below. Use each verb only one time.

1. Paul ______ the bottle of soda so hard that it sprayed all over his clothes.
2. Carol didn’t want to go on vacation with us, so she ______ home alone all week.
4. I was terrified just standing over the pool on the high diving board. Finally, I took a deep breath, held my nose, and ______ into the water.
5. The climber, who was fearful of falling, ______ the rope tightly with both hands.
6. Johnny pushed Alan, and the two boys ______ for a few minutes. Neither boy was hurt.
7. Before Louise started her own company, she ______ chemistry at the university.
8. It was extremely cold last night, and the water we put out for the cat ______ solid.
9. Before I made my decision, I ______ about it for a long, long time.
10. John your house three times to ask you to go to the movie with us, but there was no answer, so we went ahead without you.
11. My car wouldn’t start this morning, so I ______ my bicycle to work.
12. I needed money to pay my tuition at the university, so I ______ my motorcycle to my cousin.

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the SIMPLE PAST of the verbs below. Use each verb only one time.

1. The phone ______ eight times before anybody answered it.
2. Oh my gosh! Call the police! Someone ______ my car!
3. The architectural firm that I work for designed this building. My brother’s construction company ______ it. It took them two years to complete it.
4. The children _______ baseball until dark and didn’t want to stop for dinner.
5. After I gave a large bone to each of my three dogs, they went to separate corners of the backyard and _______ holes to bury their bones.
6. A: Why isn’t Bill here for the meeting? He’s supposed to give the weekly report.
   B: I _______ to him last night on the phone, and he said he’d be here.
7. After looking at all the chairs in the furniture store, I finally _______ the red one. It was a difficult decision.
8. A: How are you getting along in your relationship with Carla?
   B: Not bad. Last night I _______ her again to marry me, and she said “maybe.”
9. The players are depressed because they _______ the game last weekend. Next time they’ll play better.
10. A: How can you take a three-month vacation? What about your job?
    B: I won’t be going back to that job ever again. I _______ yesterday.
11. I can’t afford a new car because I _______ all my money on new furniture for my apartment.
12. A: Is Elizabeth still angry with you?
    B: No, she _______ me for what I did, and she’s speaking to me again.

◊ PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Simple past: irregular verbs. (Charts 2–1 → 2–4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST of any of the verbs in Chart 2–4.

1. I _______ the kitchen floor with a broom.
2. A bird _______ into our apartment through an open window.
3. I _______ the bird in my hands and put it back outside.
4. My father _______ me how to make furniture.
5. It got so cold last night that the water in the pond _______.
6. When I heard about Sue’s problem, I _______ sorry for her.
7. Alex _______ a map for us to show us how to get to the museum.
8. A few minutes ago, I _______ on the radio about a bad plane accident.
9. Joe had an accident. He _______ off the roof and _______ his leg.
10. Sam _______ the race. He ran the fastest.
11. Ted _______ his car to Alaska last summer.
12. The soldiers _______ the battle through the night and into the morning.
13. I used to have a camera, but I _______ it because I needed the money.
14. Jane didn’t want anyone to find her diary, so she _______ it in a shoe box in her closet.
15. There was a cool breeze last night. I opened the window, but Colette got cold and _______ it.
16. Rita ____________ faster than anyone else in the 100-meter dash.
17. None of the other runners was ever in front of Rita during the race. She ____________ all of the other runners in the race from start to finish.
18. Greg is a penny pincher. I was very surprised when he ____________ for my dinner.
19. Frank was really thirsty. He ____________ four glasses of water.
20. Karen had to decide between a blue raincoat and a tan one. She finally ____________ the blue one.
22. My pen ran out of ink, so Sam ____________ me an extra one he had.

◊ PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Simple past: irregular verbs. (Charts 2–1 → 2–4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST of any of the verbs in Chart 2–4.

1. We ____________ at the new restaurant last night. The food wasn’t very good.
2. Jason ____________ an excellent job of gluing the broken vase together.
3. The sun ____________ at 6:21 this morning.
4. My wife gave me a painting for my birthday. I ____________ it on a wall in my office.
5. Laurie has circles under her eyes because she ____________ only two hours last night. She was studying for her final exams.
6. John is a good carpenter. He ____________ the house in which he and his family live.
7. Matt lost his watch. He looked everywhere for it. Finally, he ____________ it in the washing machine as he was removing the wet clothes to put them into the dryer. He had washed his watch, but it was still ticking.
8. Joy was barefoot. She stepped on a piece of broken glass and ____________ her foot.
9. Danny and I are old friends. We ____________ each other in 1975.
10. My friend told me that he had a singing dog.
   When the dog ____________ to sing, I ____________ my hands over my ears and ____________ the room.
11. My friend ____________ a note and passed it to me in class.
12. I didn’t want anyone else to see the note, so I ____________ it into tiny pieces and ____________ it in the wastebasket.
13. My mother ____________ all the letters I wrote to her while I was in England. She didn’t throw any away.
14. The student with the highest grade point average ____________ a speech at the graduation ceremony. She ____________ about her hopes for the future of the world.

15. No, I didn't buy these tomatoes. I ____________ them in a pot on the balcony outside my apartment.

16. Paul was in a hurry to get to class this morning. He ____________ to comb his hair.

17. Last week I ____________ an interesting book about the volcanoes in Iceland.

18. When Erica and I were introduced to each other, we ____________ hands.

19. Mike is in jail because he ____________ a car.

20. The fish I caught was too small. I carefully returned it to the water. It quickly ____________ away.

21. I ____________ the doorbell for a long time, but no one came to the door.

22. Amanda ____________ a lie. I didn't believe her because I ____________ the truth.

23. Steve ____________ the campfire with only one match. Then he ____________ on the fire to make it burn.

**PRACTICE 8—GUIDED STUDY:** Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ed endings. (Chart 2–3)

Directions: Practice pronouncing final -ED by saying the words in the list aloud.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONUNCIATION NOTES: Final -ed has three different pronunciations: /t/, /d/, and /əd/.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Final -ed is pronounced /t/ after most voiceless sounds. Voiceless sounds are made by pushing air through your mouth; no sound comes from your throat. Examples of voiceless sounds: /p/, /k/, /f/, /s/, /sh/, /ch/. Pronunciation: stopped = stop + /t/ (“stop-t”); talked = talk + /t/ (“talk-t”).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Final -ed is pronounced /d/ after most voiced sounds. Voiced sounds come from your throat. If you touch your neck when you make a voiced sound, you can feel your voice box vibrate. Your voice box produces voiced sounds. Examples of voiced sounds: /b/, /v/, /l/, and all vowel sounds. Pronunciation: robbed = rob + /d/ (“robd”); lived = live + /d/ (“lived”).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Final -ed is pronounced /əd/ after words that end in “t” or “d.” /əd/ adds a whole syllable to a word. Pronunciation: wanted = want + /əd/ (“want-ud”); needed = need + /əd/ (“need-ud”).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. stopped = stop + /t/ 11. finished = finish + /t/
2. robbed = rob + /d/ 12. dreamed = dream + /d/
3. wanted = want + /ed/ 13. killed = kill + /d/
4. talked = talk + /t/ 14. turned = turn + /d/
5. lived = live + /d/ 15. played = play + /d/
6. needed = need + /ed/ 16. continued = continue + /ed/
7. passed = pass + /t/* 17. repeated = repeat + /ed/
8. pushed = push + /t/ 18. waited = wait + /ed/
9. watched = watch + /t/ 19. added = add + /ed/
10. thanked = thank + /t/ 20. decided = decide + /ed/

◊ PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ed endings. (Chart 2–3)

Directions: Practice pronouncing final -ed by reading the sentences aloud.

1. I watched TV. Jean listened to the radio. Nick waited for the mail.
   watch/t/ listen/d/ wait/ad/
2. I tasted the soup. It seemed too salty.
   taste/ad/ seem/d/
3. James planned for his future. He saved money and started his own business.
   plan/d/ save/d/ start/ad/
4. I asked a question. Joe answered it. Then he repeated the answer for Ted.
   ask/t/ answer/d/ repeat/ad/
5. I stared at the sculpture for a long time. Finally, I touched it.
   stare/d/ touch/t/
6. Mary prepared a long report for her boss. She completed it late last night.
   prepare/d/ complete/ad/
7. After Dick parked the car, I jumped out and opened the door for my mother.
   park/t/ jump/d/ open/d/
8. After I finished reading Rod’s poem, I called him and we talked for an hour.
   finish/t/ call/d/ talk/t/
   clean/d/
10. I washed the windows, waxed the wood floor, and vacuumed the carpet.
    wash/t/ wax/t/ vacuum/d/
11. I expected to hear from Dr. Li about a scholarship.
    expect/ad/
12. I crossed my fingers and hoped for good news.
    cross/t/ hope/d/
13. I poured water into the glass and filled it to the top. I offered it to Sara.
14. Tim dropped the book. I picked it up and dusted it off with my hand.
15. She handed us the tests at the beginning of class and collected them at the end.
16. I guessed at most of the answers. I realized I should have studied harder.

*The words “passed” and “past” have the same pronunciation.
**PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Spelling of -ing and -ed forms. (Chart 2–5)**

Directions: Complete the chart. Refer to Chart 2–5 if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>END OF VERB</th>
<th>DOUBLE THE CONSONANT?</th>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td><strong>NO</strong></td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Consonants</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>exist</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Vowels + One Consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>shout</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Vowel + One Consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ONE-SYLLABLE VERBS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>pat</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON FIRST SYLLABLE)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>visit</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON SECOND SYLLABLE)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>admit</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>pray</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>pry</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ie</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>tie</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Spelling of -ing. (Chart 2–5)**

Directions: Write one "t" or two "t’s" in the blanks to spell the -ing verb correctly. Then write the simple form of the verb in each sentence.

1. I’m wait**ing** for a phone call.
2. I’m pa**tt**ing my dog’s head.
3. I’m bi**ing** my nails because I’m nervous.
4. I’m si**ing** in a comfortable chair.
5. I’m wri**ing** in my book.
6. I’m figh**ing** the urge to have some chocolate ice cream.
7. I’m wa**ing** to see if I’m really hungry.
8. I’m ge**ing** up from my chair now.
9. I’m star**ing** to walk to the refrigerator.
10. I’m permi**ing** myself to have some ice cream.
11. I’m lif**ing** the spoon to my mouth.
12. I’m ea**ing** the ice cream now.
13. I’m tas**ing** it. It tastes good.
14. I’m also cu**ing** a piece of cake.

1. **wait**
2. **pat**
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 
12. 
13. 
14. 

---

26 ◊ CHAPTER 2
15. I'm mee__ing my sister at the airport tomorrow. 
16. She’s visi__ing me for a few days. I’ll save some cake and ice cream for her.

◊ PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Simple present vs. simple past. (Charts 2-1 → 2-4)

Directions: Use the SIMPLE PRESENT or the SIMPLE PAST form of the verb in parentheses, whichever is appropriate.

1. A: (hear, you) ________________ Did you hear ________________ the thunder last night?
   B: No, I ________________ didn’t ________________ I (hear, not) ________________ didn’t hear ________________ anything all night. I ________________ was ________________ asleep.

2. A: Listen! (hear, you) ________________ Do you hear ________________ a siren in the distance?
   B: No, I ________________ don’t ________________ I (hear, not) ________________ don’t hear ________________ anything at all.

3. A: (build, you) ________________ that bookshelf?
   B: No, I ________________ My uncle (build) ________________ it for me.

4. A: (be, a fish) ________________ slippery to hold?
   B: Yes, ________________. It can slip right out of your hand.
   A: How about frogs? (be, they) ________________ slippery?
   B: Yes, ________________.
   A: What about snakes?
   B: I (know, not) ________________. I’ve never touched a snake.

5. A: I (want) ________________ to go to the mall this afternoon and (look) ________________ for a new bathing suit. (want, you) ________________ to go with me?
   B: I can’t. I (have) ________________ an appointment with my English teacher. Besides, I (buy) ________________ a new bathing suit last year. I (need, not) ________________ a new one this year.

6. I (offer) ________________ to help my older neighbor carry her groceries into her house every time I see her return from the store. She (be) ________________ always very grateful. Yesterday, she (offer) ________________ to pay me for helping her, but of course I (accept, not) ________________ the offer.
7. Last Monday night, I (take) ___________________ my sister and her husband to my favorite restaurant for dinner and (find) ___________________ the doors locked. I (know, not) ___________________ it then, but my favorite restaurant (be, not) ___________________ open on Mondays. We (want, not) ___________________ to eat anywhere else, so we (go) ___________________ back to my house. I (make) __________ salary a salad and (heat) __________ some soup. Everyone (seem) ___________________ satisfied even though I (be, not) ___________________ a wonderful cook.

8. My daughter is twenty-one years old. She (like) ________________ to travel. My wife and I (worry) ______________ about her a little when she (be) ______________ away from home, but we also (trust) _______________ her judgment.

    Last year, after she (graduate) ______________ from college, she (go) ______________ to Europe with two of her friends. They (travel, not) ______________ by train or by car. Instead, they (rent) ______________ motor scooters and slowly (ride) ______________ through each country they visited.

    While she (be) ______________ away, my wife and I (worry) ______________ about her safety. We (be) ______________ very happy when we (see) ______________ her smiling face at the airport and (know) ______________ that she was finally safe at home.

◊ PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Past progressive. (Charts 2-6 and 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the PAST PROGRESSIVE of the verbs below. Use each verb only one time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>answer</th>
<th>count</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>stand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>melt</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Fortunately, I didn’t get wet because I ___________________ was standing under a large tree when it began to rain.

2. I saw Ted at the student cafeteria at lunch time. He ___________________ a sandwich.

3. Mr. Cook asked an interesting question. The professor ___________________ Mr. Cook’s question when Mr. Gray rudely interrupted.

4. Robert didn’t answer the phone when Sara called. He ___________________ his favorite song in the shower and didn’t hear the phone ring.

5. A: I saw a whale!
   
   B: Really? Neat! When?
   
   A: This morning. I ___________________ on the beach when I heard a sudden “whoosh!” It was the spout of a huge gray whale.
6. Three people __________________________ the east side of the mountain when the avalanche occurred. All three died.

7. A: Were you on time for the play last night?
   B: I drove as fast as I could. The play ________________________ just as we walked in the door of the theater.

8. Robert came in while I __________________________ the money from the day’s receipts. I completely lost track and had to start all over again.

9. It was difficult to ski because the temperature was rising and the snow __________________________.

10. A: What do you think was the cause of your accident?
    B: I know what caused it. Paul __________________________ at the scenery while he __________________________ the car. He simply didn’t see the other car pull out from the right.

◊ PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Present progressive and past progressive. (Charts 1–2, 2–6, and 2–7)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by making up answers to the questions. Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE or the PAST PROGRESSIVE of the verb in parentheses.

1. A: Why were you at the airport so late last night?
   B: I __________________________ my brother’s plane. (wait)

2. A: Hi, Eric. I didn’t expect to run into you at the airport. Why are you here today?
   B: I __________________________ my brother’s plane. (wait)

3. A: Ted saw you around nine yesterday morning. Were you on your way to work when he saw you?
   B: No, I __________________________ . (walk)

4. A: Hi, Greg. How are you this morning? Are you on your way to work?
   B: No, I __________________________ . (walk)

5. A: Why are you laughing? What’s so funny?
   B: We __________________________ . (watch)

6. A: Why were you and your friends laughing so loudly a little while ago?
   B: We __________________________ . (watch)

7. A: Where are Ann and Rob? I haven’t seen them for a couple of weeks. Are they in town?
   B: No, they __________________________ . (travel)

8. A: Where were Ann and Rob when you got back from your trip? Were they in town?
   B: No, they __________________________ . (travel)

*Spelling note: There are three n’s in the word beginning.
9. A: What was I saying when the phone interrupted me? I lost my train of thought.
   B: You ________________________________ (describe)

10. A: What’s Marilyn talking about?
    B: She ________________________________ (describe)

◊ PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: Past time using time clauses. (Charts 2–1 → 2–8)

Directions: Combine the two sentences in any order, using the time expression in parentheses.

1. The doorbell rang. I was climbing the stairs. (while)
   → While I was climbing the stairs, the doorbell rang. OR:
   → The doorbell rang while I was climbing the stairs.
2. I gave Alan his pay. He finished his chores. (after)
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time. They went home. (before)
4. Mr. Novak stopped by our table at the restaurant. I introduced him to my wife. (when)
5. The kitten was sitting on the roof. An eagle flew over the house. (while)
6. My father was listening to a baseball game on the radio. He was watching a basketball game on television. (while)

◊ PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Simple past vs. past progressive. (Charts 2–1 → 2–8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST or the PAST PROGRESSIVE form of the
verb in parentheses.

1. It (begin) __________ to rain while Amanda and I (walk) __________ ______
   walking to school.
2. While I (wash) __________________ dishes, I (drop) ___________ a plate and (break) __________ it.
3. I (hit) ___________ my thumb while I (use) __________ the hammer. Ouch!
4. While I (walk) ___________ under an apple tree, an apple (fall) __________ and (hit) __________ me on the head.
5. Last month, both my brother and my next-door neighbor were in Thailand, and neither one of them (know) __________ that the other was there. While they (attend) __________ my daughter’s wedding reception last weekend, my neighbor (mention) __________ her trip, and my brother was very surprised. It seems that they (be) __________ in Bangkok for three days at exactly the same time and (stay) __________ in hotels that were only a few blocks away from each other.
6. While I (look) __________ at the computer screen, I (start) ____________ to feel a little dizzy, so I (take) ____________ a break. While I (take) ___________ a short break outdoors and (enjoy) _____________ the warmth of the sun on my face, an elderly gentleman (come) ___________ up to me
and (ask) ______________ for directions to the public library. After I (tell) ______________ him how to get there, he (thank) ______________ me and (go) ______________ on his way. Soon a big cloud (come) ______________ and (cover) ______________ the sun, so I (go) ______________ back inside to work.

◊ PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Simple past vs. past progressive. (Charts 2–1 → 2–8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST or the PAST PROGRESSIVE of the verbs in parentheses.

Late yesterday afternoon while I (1. prepare) ______________ dinner, the doorbell (2. ring) ______________. I (3. put) ______________ everything down and (4. rush) ______________ to answer it. I (5. open) ______________ the door and (6. smile) ______________ at the stranger standing in my doorway. He (7. hold) ______________ a small vacuum cleaner. While he (8. tell) ______________ me about this wonderful vacuum cleaner that he wanted to sell to me, the phone (9. ring) ______________. I (10. excuse) ______________ myself and (11. reach) ______________ for the phone. While I (12. try) ______________ to talk on the phone and listen to the vacuum cleaner salesman at the same time, my young son (13. run) ______________ up to me to tell me about the cat. The cat (14. try) ______________ to catch a big fish in my husband's prized aquarium. The fish (15. swim) ______________ on the bottom to avoid the cat's paw.

I (16. say) ______________ goodbye to the vacuum salesman and (17. shut) ______________ the door. I (18. say) ______________ goodbye to the person on the phone and (19. hang) ______________ up. I (20. yell) ______________ at the cat and
(21. shoo)* ____________ her away from the fish. Then I (22. sit) ____________ down in an easy chair and (23. catch) ____________ my breath. While I (24. sit) ____________ there, the doorbell (25. ring) ____________ again. Then the phone (26. ring) ____________. Then my son said, "Mom! Mom! The dog is in the refrigerator!" I (27. move, not) _____________. "What’s next?" I said to myself.

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Present and past verbs. (Chapters 1 and 2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PRESENT, PRESENT PROGRESSIVE, SIMPLE PAST, or PAST PROGRESSIVE.

PART I:

SITUATION: Right now Toshi (1. sit) ____________ at his desk. He (2. write) ____________ in his grammar workbook. His roommate, Oscar, (3. sit) ____________ at his desk, but he (4. study, not) _____________. He (5. stare) ____________ out the window. Toshi (6. want) ____________ to know what Oscar (7. look) ____________ at. Here is their dialogue:

TOSHI: Oscar, what (8. you, look) ____________ at?

OSCAR: I (9. watch) ____________ the bicyclists. They are very skillful. I (10. know, not) ____________ how to ride a bike, so I (11. admire) ____________ anyone who can. Come over to the window. Look at that guy in the blue shirt. He (12. steer) ____________ his bike with one hand while he (13. drink) ____________ a Coke with his other. And all the while, he (14. weave) ____________ in and out of the heavy street traffic and the pedestrian traffic. He (15. seem) ____________ fearless.

TOSHI: Riding a bike (16. be, not) ____________ as hard as it (17. look) _____________. I’ll teach you to ride a bicycle if you’d like.

OSCAR: Really? Great.

TOSHI: How come you don’t know how to ride a bike?**

OSCAR: I never (18. have) ____________ a bike when I (19. be) ____________ a kid. My family (20. be) ____________ too poor. One time I (21. try) ____________ to learn on the bike of one of my friends, but the other kids all (22. laugh) ____________ at me. I never (23. try) ____________ again because I (24. be) ____________ too embarrassed. But I’d love to learn now! When can we start?

*"Shoo! Shoo!" means "Go away! Leave!" When the woman shooed the cat, that means she said "Shoo! Shoo!" and made the cat leave.

**"How come?" means "Why?" For example, "How come you don’t know how to ride a bike?" means "Why don’t you know how to ride a bike?"
PART II:

Yesterday Toshi (25. sit) **was sitting** at his desk and (26. write) ___________ in his grammar workbook. His roommate, Oscar, (27. sit) ________________ at his desk, but he (28. study, not) ________________. He (29. stare) ________________ out the window. He (30. watch) ________________ bicyclists on the street below.

Toshi (31. walk) ________________ over to the window. Oscar (32. point) ________________ out one bicyclist in particular. This bicyclist (33. steer) ________________ with one hand while he (34. drink) ________________ a Coke with the other. And all the while, he (35. weave) ________________ in and out of the heavy traffic. To Oscar, the bicyclist (36. seem) ________________ fearless.

Oscar never (37. learn) ________________ how to ride a bike when he (38. be) ________________ a kid, so Toshi (39. offer) ________________ to teach him how. Oscar (40. accept) ________________ gladly.

◊ PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: Past habit with used to. (Chart 2–9)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences. Use **used to**.

1. When James was young, he hated school. Now he likes school.
   → James **used to hate school**

2. When I was young, I thought that people over forty were very old.
   → I ________________ that people over forty were very old.

3. Ann was a secretary for many years, but now she owns her own business.
   → Ann ________________, but now she owns her own business.

4. Rebecca had a rat as a pet when she was ten. The rat died, and she hasn’t had another rat as a pet since that time.
   → Rebecca ________________ as a pet.

5. Before Adam got married, he went bowling five times a week.
   → Adam ________________ five times a week.

6. A long time ago, we raised chickens in our yard.
   → We ________________ in our yard.

7. When we raised our own chickens, we had fresh eggs every morning.
   → We ________________ every morning when we raised our own chickens.

8. When Ben was a child, he often crawled under his bed and put his hands over his ears when he heard thunder.
   → Ben ________________ and ________________ when he heard thunder.
Directions: Combine the given ideas into a sentence with “USED TO . . . , BUT NOW . . . .”

1. Years ago, I smoked two packs of cigarettes a day. Now, I don’t smoke at all.
   → I used to smoke two packs a day, but now I don’t smoke at all.

2. Amanda always stayed up late when she was a student. When she got a job after she
   graduated, she had to go to bed early.
   → Amanda used to stay up late, but now she goes to bed early.

3. My neighbor Bill drove his car to work every day last year. Now, he rides the bus.

4. At the beginning of the semester, Eric worked hard. Now, he is too busy with his social life.

5. Millions of years ago, dinosaurs ruled the world. Millions of years ago, they also became
   extinct.

6. The Allens had a large house when their children lived at home, but they moved to a small
   three-room apartment after the children grew up and left home.

7. Susan ate a balanced diet when she was a child. Now she’s a teenager and eats a lot of junk
   food.

8. When I was a child, I didn’t stay up late. Now, I’m up late every night because I have to
   study a lot.

9. Hiroki never wore cowboy boots when he lived in Japan. When he moved to Texas, he started
   wearing cowboy boots every day.

10. When I was a kid, I didn’t have a job in the summer. I went swimming every day during the
    summer. Now I have to go to work, so I can go swimming only on weekends.

Directions: Write about or discuss in small groups the following topics. Use USED TO. Try to think
of at least two or three differences for each topic.

1. Compare past and present means of transportation.
   (e.g., People used to take long trips across the Atlantic by ship, but now they fly from one continent to
   another in a few hours.)

2. Compare past and present clothing.
   (e.g., Shoes used to have buttons, but now they don’t.)

3. Compare your grandparents’ lives when they were teenagers to the lives of teenagers today.
   (e.g., My grandparents didn’t use to watch rented movies on TV with their friends, but today
   teenagers often watch movies together for entertainment.)

4. Compare past and present beliefs.
   (e.g., Some people used to believe the moon was made of cheese, but now we know that the moon is
   not made of cheese.)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the SIMPLE PAST, SIMPLE
PRESENT, or PAST PROGRESSIVE.

(1) Once upon a time, a king and his three daughters (live) _______ lived _______ in a castle in
a faraway land. One day while the king (think) _______ was thinking _______ about his daughters, he
(have) _______ had _______ an idea. He (form) _______ formed _______ a plan for finding husbands
for them.
(2) When it came time for the three daughters to marry, the king announced his plan. He said, "I'm going to take three jewels to the center of the village. The young men will meet at the fountain there every day. The three young men who find the jewels will become my daughters' husbands."

(3) The next day, the king choose three jewels—an emerald, a ruby, and a diamond—and take them into the village. He hold them in his hand and walk among the young men. First he drop the emerald, then the ruby, and then the diamond. A handsome man pick up the emerald. Then a wealthy prince spot the ruby and bend down to pick it up. The king be very pleased.

(4) But then a frog hop toward the diamond and pick it up. The frog bring the diamond to the king and said, "I be the Frog Prince. I claim your third daughter as my wife."

(5) When the king tell Tina, his third daughter, about the Frog Prince, she refuse to marry him. When the people of the land hear the news about the frog and the princess, they laugh and say to each other. "Princess Tina is going to marry a frog!"

(6) Tina feel terrible. "I be the unluckiest person in the world," she sob. She believe no

*The simple present is used here because the story is giving the king's exact words in a quotation. Notice that quotation marks (" . . ") are used. See Chart 15-1 for more information about quotations.
one (love) her and her father (understand, not) her. She (hide) from her friends and (keep) her pain in her heart. Every day she (grow) sadder and sadder. Her two sisters (have) grand weddings. Their wedding bells (ring) with joy across the land.

(7) Eventually, Tina (leave) the castle. She (run) away from her family and (go) to live by herself in a small cottage in the woods. She (eat) simple food, (drink) water from the lake, (cut) her own firewood, (wash) her own clothes, (sweep) the floor, (make) her own bed, and (take) care of all her own needs. But she (be) very lonely and unhappy.

(8) One day Tina (go) swimming. The water (be) deep and cold. Tina (swim) for a long time and (become) very tired. While she (swim) back toward the shore, she (lose) the desire to live. She (quit) trying to swim to safety. She (drown) when the frog suddenly (appear) and, with all his strength, (push) Tina to land. He (save) her life.

(9) “Why (save, you) my life, Frog?”

“Because you (be) very young and you (have) a lot to live for.”

“No, I (do, not),” said the princess. “I (be) the most miserable person in the whole universe.”

(10) “Let’s talk about it,” (say) the frog, and they (begin)
to talk. Tina and the Frog Prince (sit) together for hours and hours. Frog (listen) and (understand). He (tell) her about himself and his own unhappiness and loneliness. They (share) their minds and hearts. Day after day, they (spend) hours with each other. They (talk), (laugh), (play), and (work) together.

(11) One day while they (sit) near the lake, Tina (bend) down and, with great affection, (kiss) the frog on his forehead. Suddenly the frog (turn) into a man. He (take) Tina in his arms and said, "You (save) me with your kiss. Outside, I (look) like a frog. But you (see) inside and (find) the real me. Now I (be) free. An evil wizard turned me into a frog until I found the love of a woman with a truly good heart." When Tina (see) through outside appearances, she (find) true love.

(12) Tina and the prince (return) to the castle and (get) married. Her two sisters, she discovered, (be) very unhappy. The handsome husband (ignore) his wife and (talk, not) to her. The wealthy husband (make) fun of his wife and (give) her orders all the time. But Tina and her frog prince (live) happily ever after.
PRACTICE 23—GUIDED STUDY: Past time. (Chapter 2)

Directions: In a small group, make up a story that happens in past time.

FIRST: One member of the group should begin the story, then the next student continues the story, and then the next ones until the story is finished.
SECOND: One member of the group should repeat the whole story orally while the others listen.
THIRD: The group should discuss any changes they want to make in the story.
FOURTH: Then each member of the group should write this story; in other words, each member of the group should write the same story.

Story suggestions:
1. A creative story about fictional people and events.
   Possible beginning: One day a person named Joe decided he had a boring life, so he decided to do something new and different every day for the rest of his life. The next morning was a Monday. Joe got up and left his apartment . . . .
2. An inventive tale about people and talking animals.
   Possible beginning: Once upon a time, a bear named Jane and a crow named Frank became friends. They got tired of their lives in the wilderness, so they decided to go to a city . . . .
3. A humorous story about a fictional student in your class who constantly has bad luck.
   Possible beginning: There is a student named . . . in our class who always seems to have bad luck. One day he wanted to sharpen his pencil, but he forgot what it was. The pencil got shorter and shorter. Then finally ( . . . )'s finger was in the pencil sharpener. He sharpened his finger to a point before he realized what he was doing. Now he has one finger that is pointed at the end . . . .
4. A murder mystery with various suspects.
   Possible beginning: On a dark and stormy night, Mr. Fox lit a candle and took his money box from its hiding place. He unlocked it and slowly counted each gold coin. He didn't hear footsteps coming up the stairs. The door creaked open . . . .

PRACTICE 24—GUIDED STUDY: Past time. (Chapter 2)

Directions: With your classmates, write a story that happens in the past. Each student should write one paragraph of three to five sentences at a time. One student begins the story. Then he or she passes the paper on to another student, who will then write a paragraph and pass the paper on—until everyone in the class has had a chance to write a paragraph. Use the story suggestions in Practice 23 above or make up your own story beginning.

PRACTICE 25—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions of time. (Chart 2–10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.

1. Jack goes shopping _______ Saturdays.
2. Elaine and I had a light lunch _______ noon, and then we played tennis _______ the afternoon.
3. A: Hi, John. It's good to see you again. When I saw you _______ December, you were working at the department store. Are you still working there?
   B: No. I quit _______ January 1st. _______ present, I'm working at Joe's Music Shop. _______ the future, I hope to have my own music store.
4. ______ 1988, we moved to this city. We arrived ______ night and couldn't find our new house. We got a hotel room and found the house ______ the morning.

5. I like to visit friends ______ the evening. I don't like to stay home by myself ______ night.

6. Excuse me. Are you busy ______ the moment?

7. A: When did you and your family go to New York?
   B: ______ 1990.
   A: ______ the spring or fall?
   B: We arrived ______ June 15 and left ______ the 21st.

8. What are the most important events that occurred ______ the nineteenth century?

♦ PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapters 1 and 2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.

1. Richard got mad ______ me when I asked him to get up early ______ the morning.

2. I'm ready ______ a change and a better job. I'll choose more carefully ______ the future.

3. A: Are you prepared to answer all questions for the court?
   B: Yes, I am.
   A: Where were you ______ February 3, 1991, ______ exactly 8:12 P.M.?
   B: I was having dinner with friends.
   A: Don't you usually work ______ the evening?
   B: I was absent ______ work. I was angry ______ a co-worker and didn't go to work that day. I left my friends ______ midnight.
   A: No more questions for this witness, Your Honor.

4. A: Are you familiar ______ the new musical play downtown?
   B: I'm told it's very good. We're going to see it ______ the summer.

5. A: What do you do ______ Sunday afternoons?
   B: I go to the amusement park with my family almost every Sunday.
   A: Oh. Isn't the park full ______ people ______ Sundays? I hate crowds.
   B: It's not so bad ______ the early afternoon. It gets worse later in the day.

6. My son was afraid ______ dogs ______ the past, but now he's asking me to get him one.
CHAPTER 3
Future Time

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Present, past, and future. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use:
   a. the SIMPLE PRESENT
   b. the SIMPLE PAST, and
   c. BE GOING TO/WILL.

1. arrive
   a. Joe _______ arrives _______ on time every day.
   b. Joe _______ arrived _______ on time yesterday.
   c. Joe _______ is going to arrive _______ on time tomorrow. OR:
      Joe _______ will arrive _______ on time tomorrow.

2. arrive?
   a. _______ Did Joe _______ arrive _______ on time every day?
   b. _______ Did Joe _______ arrive _______ on time yesterday?
   c. _______ Did Joe _______ arrive _______ on time tomorrow? OR:
      _______ Did Joe _______ arrive _______ on time tomorrow?

3. arrive, not
   a. Mike _______ is going to be _______ on time every day.
   b. Mike _______ isn't going to be _______ on time yesterday.
   c. Mike _______ is going to be _______ on time tomorrow. OR:
      Mike _______ isn't going to be _______ on time tomorrow.

4. eat
   a. Ann _______ breakfast _______ every day.
   b. Ann _______ breakfast _______ yesterday.
   c. Ann _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow. OR:
      Ann _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow.

5. eat?
   a. _______ you _______ breakfast _______ every day?
   b. _______ you _______ breakfast _______ yesterday?
   c. _______ you _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow? OR:
      _______ you _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow?

6. eat, not
   a. I _______ breakfast _______ every day.
   b. I _______ breakfast _______ yesterday.
   c. I _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow. OR:
      I _______ breakfast _______ tomorrow.
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Present, past, and future. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with forms of the verb in italics. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT, SIMPLE PAST, and BE GOING TO.

1. A: I got up at five this morning.
   B: Oh? Did you get up at five every morning?
   A: Yes, I did. I get up at five every morning.
   B: Are you going to get up at five tomorrow morning?
   A: Yes, I am. I’m going to get up at five tomorrow morning.

2. A: I studied last night.
   B: Oh? Did you study every night?
   A: Yes, I did. I study every night.
   B: Are you going to study two days ago?
   A: Yes, I am. I’m going to study two days ago.
   B: Are you going to study tomorrow?
   A: Yes, I am. I’m going to study tomorrow.

PRACTICE 3—GUIDED STUDY: Present, past, and future. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

Directions: Write a dialogue by completing the sentences with your own words.

A: I . . . yesterday.
B: Oh? . . . you . . . every day?
A: Yes, I . . . I . . . every day.
B: . . . you . . . two days ago?
A: Yes, I . . . I . . . two days ago.
B: . . . you . . . tomorrow?
A: Yes, I . . . I . . . tomorrow.

PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Be going to. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with BE GOING TO and the words in parentheses.

1. A: What (you, do) are you going to do this afternoon?
   B: I (finish) am going to finish my report.

2. A: Where (Ryan, be) later tonight?
   B: He (be) at Kim’s house.

3. A: (you, have) a hamburger for lunch?
   B: I (eat, not) lunch. I don’t have enough time.

4. A: (you, finish) this exercise soon?
   B: I (finish) it in less than a minute.
5. A: When (you, call) ____________________________ your sister?
   B: I (call, not) ____________________________ her. I (write) ________________
   ________________ her a letter.

6. A: What (Laura, talk) ____________________________ about in her speech tonight?
   B: She (discuss) ____________________________ the economy of Southeast Asia.

◊ PRACTICE 5—GUIDED STUDY: Be going to. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Pair up with a classmate.
STUDENT A: Ask a question using BE GOING TO and the given words.
STUDENT B: Answer the question. Use BE GOING TO.

Example: what/do next Monday?
STUDENT A: What are you going to do next Monday?
STUDENT B: I’m going to go to my classes as usual.

Example: watch TV tonight?
STUDENT A: Are you going to watch TV tonight?
STUDENT B: Yes, I’m going to watch TV tonight. OR: No, I’m not going to watch TV tonight.

1. where/go after your last class today?
2. have pizza for dinner tonight?
3. what/do this evening?
4. when/visit your family?
5. play soccer with (. . .)* Saturday?
6. what/do this coming Saturday?
7. look for a new place to live soon?
8. where/live next year?

(Change roles: STUDENT A becomes STUDENT B and vice versa.)

9. what time/go to bed tonight?
10. what/wear tomorrow?
11. wear your raincoat tomorrow?
12. take a trip sometime this year or next?
13. where/go and what/do?
14. how long/stay at this school?
15. talk to your family soon?
16. when/see your family again?

◊ PRACTICE 6—GUIDED STUDY: Be going to. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Use the given words to make sentences with BE GOING TO. Use your own ideas. Be sure to use a form of BE GOING TO in each sentence. Notice the various time expressions that are used to indicate future time.

Example: you/today?
Response: Are you going to eat lunch at McDonald’s today?

*The symbol (. . .) means that you should use the name of a person you know.
Example: (. . .)/tonight.
Response: Abdul is going to hang around with his friends tonight.

1. I/in a half an hour. 8. we/this coming Monday.
2. I/after a while. 9. (. . .)/this week?
3. you/today? 10. (. . .) and I/not/this weekend.
4. (. . .)/later today. 11. (. . .) and (. . .)/this year.
5. I/not/tomorrow morning. 12. I/two years from now.
6. you/the day after tomorrow? 13. my country/in the future.
7. my friends/next Sunday. 14. people/in the twenty-first century?

♦ PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY: Will. (Chart 3–2)
Directions: Complete the dialogues. Use WILL.

1. A: (you, help) ___________ Will you help me tomorrow?
   B: Yes, ___________ I will*. OR: No, ___________ I won’t.

2. A: (Paul, lend) ________________ us some money?
   B: Yes, ________________ OR: No, ________________.

3. A: (Jane, graduate) ________________ this spring?
   B: Yes, ________________ OR: No, ________________.

4. A: (her parents, be) ________________ at the ceremony?
   B: Yes, ________________ OR: No, ________________.

5. A: (I, benefit) ________________ from this business deal?
   B: Yes, ________________ OR: No, ________________.

♦ PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Will probably. (Chart 3–3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with WILL or WON’T. Also use PROBABLY.

1. The clouds are leaving, and the sun is coming out. It ___________ probably won’t _______ rain anymore.

2. The weather is cold today. There’s no reason to expect the weather to change. It ___________ will probably _______ be cold tomorrow, too.

3. Sam, Sharon, and Carl worked hard on this project. They ________________ turn in the best work. The other students didn’t work as hard.

4. Ronald is having a very difficult time in advanced algebra. He didn’t understand anything that happened in class today, and he ________________ understand tomorrow’s class either.

5. Jan skipped lunch today. She ________________ eat as soon as she gets home.

*Pronouns are NOT contracted with helping verbs in short answers.
CORRECT: Yes, I will.
INCORRECT: Yes, I’ll.
6. I don’t like parties. Mike really wants me to come to his birthday party, but I  
______________________________ go. I’d rather stay home.

7. Conditions in the factory have been very bad for a long time. All of the people who work on  
the assembly line are angry. They ___________________ vote to go out on strike.

8. We are using up the earth’s resources at a rapid rate. We ___________________ continue to do so* for years to come.

◊ PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Will probably. (Chart 3–3)

Directions: For each situation, predict something that WILL PROBABLY happen and something that  
PROBABLY WON’T happen.

Example: Emily has a test in ten minutes. She didn’t study for it at all. (pass it/fail it)  
Response: She probably won’t pass it. She’ll probably fail it.

1. It’s raining. Greg doesn’t have an umbrella. (get wet/stay outside for a long time)  
2. Mr. Lee works at an aircraft factory. He has a bad cold. (go to work/stay home today)  
3. Sam didn’t sleep at all last night. (go to bed early tonight/stay up all night again tonight)  
4. Alan has to go to Chicago on business. He hates to fly. (go by plane/take a bus or a train)  

Use your own words to make predictions with WILL PROBABLY and PROBABLY WON’T:

5. (. . . ) likes movies. There’s a new movie at the local theater.  
6. The weather is going to be rainy tomorrow. You like this kind of weather.  
7. (. . . ) is going to spend five days in New York as a tourist.  
8. Many important events are taking place in the world today. What are some of these events?  
   Make predictions about them.

◊ PRACTICE 10—GUIDED STUDY: Be going to and will. (Chart 3–3)

Directions: For each situation, predict the future. Use WILL or BE GOING TO. Use PROBABLY if  
you wish. Use the negative if you wish.

Example: people/go to work only four days a week.  
     → People will probably go to work only four days a week.

1. we/use electric motors in automobiles in the future  
2. we/use solar energy to heat buildings in the future  
3. clothing styles/change a lot in fifty years  
4. today’s rock music/popular twenty years from now  
5. we/be able to communicate by videophone  
6. doctors/be able to replace nearly all vital organs  
7. the population of the earth/double in thirty-five years  
8. the earth/have enough fresh water to support a population of twelve billion  
9. the earth’s tropical rain forests/disappear  
10. What other predictions can you make about the twenty-first century?

*Do so means “do the thing that the speaker/writer just mentioned.” In this sentence, do so = use up the earth’s  
resources at a rapid rate.
Practice 11—Selfstudy: Be going to vs. will. Chart 3–4

Directions: Using the given information about Speaker B’s plans, complete the sentences with either BE GOING TO or WILL.*

1. (Speaker B is planning to listen to the news at six.)
   A: Why did you turn on the radio?
   B: I’m going to listen to the news at six.

2. (Speaker B didn’t have a plan to show the other person how to solve the math problem, but she is glad to do it.)
   A: I can’t figure out this math problem. Do you know how to do it?
   B: Yes. Give me your pencil. I’ll show you how to solve it.

3. (Speaker B has made a plan. He is planning to lie down because he doesn’t feel well.)
   A: What's the matter?
   B: I don’t feel well. I lie down for a little while. If anyone calls, tell them I’ll call back later.
   A: Okay. I hope you feel better.

4. (Speaker B did not plan to take the other person home. He is making the offer spontaneously. He thinks of the idea only after the other person talks about missing his bus.)
   A: Oh no! I wasn’t watching the time. I missed my bus.
   B: That’s okay. I’ll give you a ride home.
   A: Hey, thanks!

5. (Speaker B has a plan.)
   A: Why did you borrow money from the bank?
   B: I buy a new pickup.** I’ve already picked it out.

6. (Speaker B does not have a plan.)
   A: Mom, can I have a candy bar?
   B: No, but I buy an apple for you. How does that sound?
   A: Okay, I guess.

7. (Speaker B has already made her plans about what to wear. Then Speaker B makes a spontaneous offer.)
   A: I can’t figure out what to wear to the Harvest Moon Ball. It’s formal, isn’t it?
   B: Yes. I’ll wear a floor-length gown.
   A: Maybe I should wear my red gown with the big sleeves. But I think it needs cleaning.
   B: I’ll take it to the cleaner’s for you when I go downtown this afternoon if you’d like.
   A: Gee, thanks. That’ll save me a trip.

*Usually be going to and will are interchangeable: you can use either one of them with little or no difference in meaning. Sometimes, however, they are NOT interchangeable. In this exercise, only one of them is correct, not both. See Chart 3–4.

**A pickup is a small truck.
PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY:  Be going to vs. will. (Chart 3–4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either BE GOING TO or WILL.

1. A: Why are you looking for a screwdriver?
   B: One of the kitchen chairs has a loose screw. I _______________ fix it.

2. A: The computer printer isn’t working again! What am I going to do?
   B: Calm down. Give Tom a call. He _______________ fix it for you. It’s probably just a loose connection.

3. A: Are you going to the post office soon?
   B: Yeah. Why?
   A: I need to send this letter today.
   B: I _______________ mail it for you.
   A: Thanks.

4. A: Why are you carrying that box?
   B: I _______________ mail it to my sister. I’m on my way to the post office.

5. A: Let’s meet for a beer after work.
   B: Sounds good to me. I _______________ meet you at the Blue Goose Bar at six.

6. A: Can you meet me for a beer after work?
   B: I’d like to, but I can’t. I _______________ stay at the office until seven tonight.

7. A: It’s grandfather’s eighty-fifth birthday next Sunday. What _______________ you _______________ give him for his birthday?
   B: I _______________ give him a walking stick that I made myself.

8. A: I have a note for Joe from Rachel. I don’t know what to do with it.
   B: Let me have it. I _______________ give it to him. He’s in my algebra class.
   A: Thanks. But you have to promise not to read it.

PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Time clauses. (Chart 3–5)

Directions: Combine the two sentences in any order, using the time expression in parentheses. Underline the time clause in the sentence you write. Pay special attention to the verb tense you use in the time clause.

1. I’ll call Mike tomorrow. I’ll tell him the good news. (when)
   → When I call Mike tomorrow, I’ll tell him the good news.
   OR: I’ll tell Mike the good news when I call him tomorrow.

2. Ann will lock all the doors. She will go to bed. (before)

3. I’m going to be in London for two days. I’m going to visit the Tate Museum. (when)

4. The show will start. The curtain will go up. (as soon as)

5. Nick is going to change the oil in his car. He’s going to take a bath. (after)

6. We’ll call you. We’ll drive over to pick you up. (before)

7. I’ll call you. I’ll get an answer from the bank about the loan. (when)

8. I’ll get my paycheck. I’ll pay my rent. (as soon as)
PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Time clauses. (Chart 3–5)

Directions: Use the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT and WILL/WON'T.

1. take/read
   I’ll read the textbook before I take the final exam.

2. return/call
   Mr. Lee will call his wife as soon as he returns to the hotel tonight.

3. be, not/come
   I will not come home tomorrow when the painters come to paint my apartment. Someone else will have to let them in.

4. prepare/go
   Before I go to my job interview tomorrow, I will prepare a list of questions I want to ask about the company.

5. visit/take
   When Sandra takes us this weekend, we will take her to our favorite seafood restaurant.

6. find/move/graduate
   Sara will move out of her parents’ house after she graduates from school next month and finds a job.

PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: If-clauses. (Chart 3–5)

Directions: Use the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT and WILL/WON'T.

1. not go/be
   If it is cold and rainy tomorrow morning, I won't go jogging.

2. get/pay
   If I get a job soon, I will pay you the money I owe you.

3. not go/be
   The boss will be very disappointed if you don’t go to the meeting tomorrow.

4. stop/tell
   I will stop taking these pills if Dr. Matthews tells me it’s okay.

5. get/be/eat
   If Barbara gets home on time tonight, we will eat dinner at 6:30. If she is late, dinner will be late.
**PRACTICE 16—GUIDED STUDY: Time clauses and if-clauses. (Chart 3–5)**

Directions: Combine the ideas in the pairs of sentences. Use WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS, or IF. Pay special attention to verb tenses. Underline the “time clause” or “if-clause” in each sentence you write.

*Example:* I'll see you Sunday afternoon. I'll give you my answer (then).*

*Written:* **When I see you Sunday afternoon, I'll give you my answer.**

**OR:** *I'll give you my answer when I see you Sunday afternoon.*

1. I'm going to clean up my apartment (first). My friends are going to come over (later).
2. The storm will be over (in an hour or two). I'm going to do some errands (then).
3. (Maybe) you won't learn how to use a computer. (As a result), you will have trouble finding a job.
4. Joe will meet us at the coffee shop. He'll finish his report (soon).
5. Sue will wash and dry the dishes. (Then) she will put them away.
6. They may not leave at seven. (As a result), they won’t get to the theater on time.

**PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Parallel verbs. (Chart 3–5)**

Directions: Underline the first verb in each parallel structure. Circle the word *and*. Then complete the sentence with the **PARALLEL FORM OF THE VERB** in parentheses.

1. Last night, I was listening to music *(do)* __________ *(was doing)* my homework when Kim stopped by.
2. My classmates are going to meet at Danny's *(mtdy)* __________ *(are going to)* study together tonight.
3. Tomorrow the sun will rise at 6:34 and *(set)* __________ at 8:59.
4. While Paul was carrying brushes and paint and *(climb)* __________ a ladder, a bird flew down and *(sit)* __________ on his head. Paul dropped the paint and *(spill)* __________ it all over the ground.
5. Next weekend, Nick is going to meet his friends downtown and *(go)* __________ to a soccer game.
6. Anna moves into her apartment on Sunday and *(start)* __________ her new job on Monday.
7. My pen slipped out of my hand and *(fall)* __________ to the floor.
8. I'm getting up early tomorrow morning and *(walk)* __________ to work.

*When you combine the sentences, omit the words in parentheses.*
9. When I first arrived in this city and (start) ____________ going to school here, I knew no one. I was lonely and (feel) _________________ that I didn’t have a friend in the world. One day while I was watching TV alone in my room and (feel) _________________ sorry for myself, a woman I had met in one of my classes knocked on my door and (ask) _________________ me if I wanted to accompany her to the student center. That was the beginning of my friendship with Lisa King. Now we see each other every day and usually (spend) _________________ time talking on the phone, too. This week we’re borrowing her brother’s car and (go) _________________ to visit her aunt in the country. Next week we’re going to take a bus to Fall City and (go) _________________ to a football game. I’m really enjoying our friendship.

◊ PRACTICE 18—SELFSTUDY: Parallel verbs. (Chart 3–5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. Fifteen years from now, my wife and I (retire) _________________ and (travel) _________________ all over the world.

2. If I feel tense, I (close) _________________ my eyes and (think) _________________ about nothing at all.

3. A: What is Pete doing in the other room?
   B: He (watch) _________________ TV and (study) _________________ for his chemistry exam.

4. Every morning without exception, Mrs. Carter (take) _________________ her dog for a walk and (buy) _________________ a newspaper at Charlie’s newsstand.

5. Before I (go) _________________ to your boss and (tell) _________________ her about your mistake, I want to give you an opportunity to explain it to her yourself.

6. Next month, I (take) _________________ my vacation and (forget) _________________ about everything that is connected to my job.

7. Kathy thinks I was the cause of her problems, but I wasn’t. Someday she (discover) _________________ the truth and (apologize) _________________ to me.

8. Yesterday I (see) _________________ the man who stole the radio from my car last Friday. I (run) _________________ after him, (catch) _________________ him, and (knock) _________________ him down. A passerby (go) _________________ to call the police. I (sit) _________________ on the man while I (wait) _________________ for them to come. After they (get) _________________ there and (understand) _________________ the situation, they (put) _________________ handcuffs on him and (take) _________________ him to jail.
Directions: Read Part I. Use the information in Part I to complete Part II with appropriate verbs and tenses. Use WILL (not be going to) for future time in Part II.

**PART I:**

(1) Yesterday morning was an ordinary morning. I got up at 6:30. I washed my face and brushed my teeth. Then I put on my jeans and a sweater. I went to the kitchen and started the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I walked down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. While I was walking to get the paper, I saw a deer. It was eating the flowers in my garden. After I watched the deer for a little while, I made some noise to make the deer run away before it destroyed my flowers.

(3) As soon as I got back to the kitchen, I poured myself a cup of coffee and opened the morning paper. While I was reading the paper, my teenage daughter came downstairs. We talked about her plans for the day. I helped her with her breakfast and made a lunch for her to take to school. After we said goodbye, I ate some fruit and cereal and finished reading the paper.

(4) Then I went to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a TV set, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I worked all morning. While I was working, the phone rang many times. I talked to many people. At 11:30, I went to the kitchen and made a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it was an ordinary morning.

**PART II:**

(1) Tomorrow morning will be an ordinary morning. I will get up at 6:30. I will wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I probably put on my jeans and a sweater. I will go to the kitchen and start the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I will walk down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I see a deer in my garden, I will watch it for a while and then make some noise to chase it away before it destroy my flowers.

(3) As soon as I go back to the kitchen, I will pour myself a cup of coffee and open the morning paper. While I’m reading the paper, my teenage daughter will come downstairs. We will talk about her plans for the day. I will help her with her breakfast and make a lunch for her to take to school. After we say goodbye, I will eat some fruit and cereal and finish reading the morning paper.

(4) Then I will go to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a TV set, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I will work all morning. While I’m working, the phone will ring many times. I will talk to many people. At 11:30, I will go to the kitchen and make a sandwich for lunch. As I said, tomorrow morning will be an ordinary morning.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE. Use the verbs in the list. Use each verb only one time. Notice the future time expressions in italics.

**arrive**  **leave**  **speak**  **take**

**attend**  **meet**  **spend**  **travel**

**get**  **see**  **study**  **visit**

1. Kathy ___is traveling___ to Caracas next month to attend a conference.

2. A: Are you expecting guests? Your apartment is so neat!
   B: How did you guess? My parents ___will be arriving___ tomorrow for a two-day visit.

3. A: Do you have any plans for lunch today?
   B: I ___will be meeting___ Shannon at the Shamrock Cafe in an hour. Want to join us?

4. A: I ___will be buying___ a bicycle for my son for his birthday next month. Do you know anything about bikes for kids?
   B: Sure. What do you want to know?

5. Amanda likes to take her two children with her on trips whenever she can, but she ___won't be taking___ them with her to El Paso, Texas, next week. It's strictly a business trip.

6. A: What are your plans for the rest of the year?
   B: I ___will be studying___ French in Grenoble, France, this coming summer. Then I'll be back here in school in the fall.

7. A: Why are you packing your suitcase?
   B: I ___will be getting___ ready for Los Angeles in a couple of hours.

8. A: My regular doctor, Dr. Jordan, ___will be attending___ a conference in Las Vegas next week, so I ___will be seeing___ her partner, Dr. Peterson, when I go for my appointment next Friday.

9. A: Do we have a test in English class tomorrow?
   B: No. Don't you remember? We're going to have a guest lecturer.
   A: Really? Who? Are you sure we don't have a test?
   B: A professor from the Department of Environmental Sciences ___will be coming___ to our class tomorrow morning.
   A: Great. That sounds interesting. And it sure beats having a test.

10. A: Why are you looking for your passport?
    B: I need it because I'm leaving for Taipei next Monday.
    A: Oh? How long will you be away?
    B: A week. I ___will be staying___ the first few days with my brother, who is going to school there. After that I ___will be seeing___ some old friends I went to school with in Australia several years ago. They've invited me to be their house guest.
    A: Sounds like a great trip. Hope you find your passport.
PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: The present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Look at Fred’s calendar. Then complete the sentences about Fred’s plans for the coming week. Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

1. Fred ____________________________ on Sunday.
2. He ______________________________ on Monday.
3. He ______________________________ on Tuesday.
4. He ______________________________ on Wednesday.
5. He ______________________________ on Thursday.
6. He ______________________________ on Friday.
7. He ______________________________ on Saturday.

is eating dinner with Emily

PRACTICE 22—GUIDED STUDY: The present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Make a calendar of your plans for the coming week. Then complete the sentences about these plans. Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

1. I ____________________________ on Sunday.
2. I ______________________________ on Monday.
3. I ______________________________ on Tuesday.
4. I ______________________________ on Wednesday.
5. I ______________________________ on Thursday.
6. I ______________________________ on Friday.
7. I ______________________________ on Saturday.
PRACTICE 23—GUIDED STUDY: The present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3–7)

Directions: Think of a place you would like to visit. Pretend you are going to take a trip there this weekend. Pretend you have already made all of your plans. Write a paragraph in which you describe your trip. Use the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE where appropriate.

Example: This coming weekend, my friend Benito and I are taking a trip. We’re going to Nashville, Tennessee. Benito likes country music and wants to go to some shows. I don’t know anything about country music, but I’m looking forward to going to Nashville. We’re leaving Friday afternoon as soon as Benito gets off work. (Etc.)

Possible questions to answer in your paragraph:
1. Where are you going?
2. When are you leaving?
3. Are you traveling alone?
4. How are you getting there?
5. Where are you staying?
6. Who are you visiting, if anyone?
7. How long are you staying there?
8. When are you getting back?

PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: The simple present to express future time. (Chart 3–8)

Directions: Use any of the verbs in the list to complete the sentences. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT to express future time.

begin
finish
leave
close
get in
open
end
land
start

1. A: What time does class begin (OR: start) tomorrow morning?
   B: It begins (OR: starts) at eight o’clock sharp.

2. A: The coffee shop close at seven o’clock tomorrow morning. I’ll meet you there at 7:15.
   B: Okay. I’ll be there.

3. A: What time are you going to go to the airport tonight?
   B: Tom’s plane end around 7:15, but I think I’ll go a little early in case it gets in ahead of schedule.

4. A: What time should we go to the theater tonight?
   B: Around 7:30. The movie end at 8:00.
   A: What time does it end?
   B: It’s a two-hour movie. It end at 10:00.

5. A: What time close the dry cleaning shop tonight? If I don’t get there in time, I’ll have nothing to wear to the banquet tonight.
   B: It close at 6:00. I can pick up your dry cleaning for you.
   A: Hey, thanks! That’ll really help!
6. A: What’s the hurry?
   B: I’ve got to take a shower, change clothes, and get to the theater fast. The play __________________ in forty-five minutes, and I don’t want to miss the beginning.

◊ PRACTICE 25—SELFSTUDY: Be about to. (Chart 3–10)
       Directions: Describe the actions that are about to happen in the pictures. Use BE ABOUT TO.

1. The chimpanzee is about to eat a banana.

2. __________________________________

3. __________________________________

4. __________________________________

◊ PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2 and 3)
       Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of the verb in parentheses.

1. A: I’ll lend you my bike if I (need, not) _________________ it tomorrow.
   B: Thanks.

2. A: Everyone in the office (plan) _________________ to come to the annual company picnic tomorrow. (you, come) _________________?
   B: Of course!

3. A: How (you, get, usually) _________________ to work?
   B: I (take) _________________ the commuter train every morning.
4. A few days ago, Janet (watch) ______________________ a drama on TV when the screen suddenly (become) ______________________ blank and the TV set (stop) ______________________ working. She never (find) ______________________ out how the story ended.

5. A: I (go) ______________________ to a lecture on Shakespeare tomorrow evening. Want to join me?
   B: Nah. Brian and I (go) ______________________ to a movie—*Godzilla Eats the Earth*.

6. A: When's Barbara going to call? We have to leave soon.
   B: She (call, probably) ______________________ any minute. I'm sure she'll call us before we (go) ______________________ out to dinner.

7. A: Look! There (be) ______________________ a police car behind us. Its lights (flash) ______________________.
   B: I (know) ______________________! I (know) ______________________! I (see) ______________________ it!
   A: What (go) ______________________ on? (you, speed) ______________________?
   B: No, I'm not. I (go) ______________________ the speed limit.
   A: Ah, look. The police car (pass) ______________________ us. Whew.

8. Sometime in the next twenty-five years, a spaceship with a human crew (land) ______________________ on Mars. At least, that's what I (think) ______________________.

9. I usually (ride) ______________________ my bicycle to work in the morning, but it (rain) ______________________ when I left my house early this morning, so I (drive) ______________________ my car. After I (arrive) ______________________ at work, I (discover) ______________________ that I had left my briefcase at home.

10. A: How do you like your new job?
    B: I don't start it until tomorrow. I (give) ______________________ you an answer next week.

11. A: What (you, wear) ______________________ to Eric's wedding tomorrow?
    B: My blue dress, I guess. How about you?
    A: I (plan) ______________________ to wear my new outfit. I (buy) ______________________ it just a few days ago. It (be) ______________________ a yellow suit with a white blouse. Just a minute. I (show) ______________________ it to you. Wait right here. I (get) ______________________ it from my closet and (bring) ______________________ it out.

12. A: Where's my blue sweater?
    B: Lizzy (wear) ______________________ it today.
    A: She's what? I (lend, not) ______________________ her my sweater.
    B: Oh? Well, Lizzy (be) ______________________ back soon. You can get your sweater back then.
PRACTICE 27—SELFSTUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of the verb in parentheses.

(1) Two hundred and fifty years ago, people (make) ______________ their own clothes. They (have, not) ______________ machines for making clothes. There (be, not) ______________ any clothing factories. People (wear) ______________ homemade clothes that were sewn by hand.

(2) Today, very few people (make) ______________ their own clothes. Clothing (come) ______________ ready-made from factories. People (buy) ______________ almost all their clothes from stores.

(3) The modern clothing industry (be) ______________ international. As a result, people from different countries often (wear) ______________ similar clothes. For example, people in many different countries throughout the world (wear) ______________ jeans and T-shirts.

(4) However, regional differences in clothing still (exist) ______________. For instance, people of the Arabian deserts (wear) ______________ loose, flowing robes to protect themselves from the heat of the sun. In northern Europe, fur hats (be) ______________ common in the winter.

(5) In the future, there (be, probably) ______________ fewer and fewer differences in clothing in the world. People throughout the world (wear) ______________ clothes from the same factories. (we all, dress) ______________ almost alike in the future? TV shows and movies about the future often (show) ______________ everybody in a uniform of some kind. What (you, think) ______________?

PRACTICE 28—GUIDED STUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of the verb in parentheses.

Dianne, Sara, and Emily all (1. go) ______________ to college together twenty years ago. They (2. have) ______________ a wonderful time and (3. learn) ______________ a lot. Now, the three of them (4. work) ______________ at the same insurance company. They (5. eat) ______________ lunch together every day and sometimes (6. tell) ______________ stories about their school days.

Yesterday, they (7. remember) ______________ a funny incident at a special banquet during their sophomore year. At this dinner, they (8. sit) ______________ at the same table as the president of the university. Everything (9. go) ______________ along fine, but then disaster (10. strike) ______________. To make a long story short, Sara (11. spill) ______________ a serving dish full of spaghetti onto the president.

Sara (12. be) ______________ terribly embarrassed. She (13. apologize) ______________ profusely and (14. leave) ______________ the banquet room in tears.
Now, twenty years later, the three women remembered every detail, especially the look on the president’s face. When they told that story at lunch yesterday, they laughed until tears streamed down their faces.

The spaghetti incident was not funny when it happened, but it is funny to the women now. Terrible embarrassments that we suffer when we are young often seem funny when we are older. As we get older, we get more tolerant of our own foibles. Right now you are young. When you are older, you smile with amusement about some of the seemingly terrible and embarrassing things that happen to you as a young adult.

◊ PRACTICE 29—GUIDED STUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of the verb in parentheses.

1. This morning, Bob comb his hair when the comb broke. So he finished combing his hair with his fingers and rushed out the door to class.

2. I’m exhausted! When I get home tonight, I read the paper and watch the news. I do not any work around the house.

3. A: My cousin has a new cat. She now four cats.

   B: Why has so many?

   A: To catch the mice in her house.

   B: Have any cats?

   A: No, and I get any. I have not mice in my house.

4. A: Ouch!

   B: What happened?

   A: I cut my finger.

   B: It bleed!

   A: I know!

   B: Put pressure on it. I get some antibiotic and a bandage.

   A: Thanks.

5. A: You take the kids to the amusement park tomorrow morning?

   B: Yes. It open at 10:00. If we leave here at 9:30, we get, probably there at 9:55. The kids can be the first ones in the park.
6. A: Your phone (ring) ____________________________.
B: I (know) ____________________________.
A: (you, answer) ____________________________ it?
B: No.
A: (you, want) ____________________________ me to get it?
B: No thanks.
A: Why (you, want, not) ____________________________ to answer your phone?
B: I (expect) ____________________________ another call from the bill collector. I have a bunch of
bills I haven’t paid. I (want, not) ____________________________ to talk to her.
A: Oh.

7. My grandmother used to say, “If adversity (destroy, not) ____________________________ you,
it will strengthen you.” In other words, if you (learn) ____________________________ to survive bad
times and bad luck, you will become a stonger person.

8. A: Peter B. Peas is a piece-by-piece pizza eater.
B: What (you, say) ____________________________?
A: I (say) ____________________________, “Peter B. Peas is a piece-by-piece pizza eater.” It (be)
__________________________ a tongue-twister. How fast can you say it?

9. A: Okay, let’s all open our fortune cookies.
B: What (yours, say) ____________________________?
A: Mine says, “An unexpected gift (add) ____________________________ to your pleasure.”
Great! (you, plan) ____________________________ to give me a gift soon?
B: Not that I know of. Mine says, “Your trust in a friend (prove) ____________________________
well-founded.” Good. I (like) ____________________________ having trustworthy friends.
C: This one says, “A smile (overcome) __________________ a language barrier.”
   Well, that’s good! After this, when I (understand, not) __________________
   people who (speak) __________________ English to me, I (smile, just)
   __________________ at them!

D: My fortune is this: “Your determination (make) __________________ you succeed in
everything.”
A: Well, it (look) __________________ like all of us (have) __________________ good
luck in the future!

10. A: (the sun, keep) __________________ burning forever, or (it, burn, eventually)
   __________________ itself out?
B: It (burn, eventually) __________________ itself out, but that
   (happen, not) __________________ for another five or ten billion years.

◊ PRACTICE 30—GUIDED STUDY: Future time. (Chapter 3)

Directions: Do you believe that some people are able to predict the future? Pretend that you have
the ability to see into the future. Choose several people you know (classmates, teachers, family
members, friends) and tell them in writing about their future lives. Discuss such topics as marriage,
children, jobs, contributions to humankind, fame, and exciting adventures. With your words, paint
interesting and fun pictures of their future lives.

◊ PRACTICE 31—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.*

1. What are you laughing _______?
2. I can’t stop staring _______ Tom’s necktie. The colors are wild!
3. A: I don’t believe _______ flying saucers. Do you?
   B: I don’t know. I think anything is possible.
4. Ted is going to help me _______ my homework tonight.
5. Do you mind if I apply _______ your job after you quit?
6. I’m traveling _______ Indonesia next week to discuss my new business plan _______ our
   contacts in Jakarta.
7. I admire Carmen _______ her courage and honesty in admitting that mistake.
8. A: Where did you get that new car?
   B: I borrowed it _______ my neighbor.
9. A: What are you two arguing _______?
   B: Modern art.
10. A: Where will you go to school next year?
    B: Well, I applied _______ admission at five different universities, but I’m worried that
       none of them will accept me.
Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.

1. Dan is always nice to everyone.

2. A: How long do you need to keep the Spanish book you borrowed from me?
   B: I’d like to keep it until I’m ready for the exam next week.

3. A: Why weren’t you more polite to Alan’s friend?
   B: Because he kept staring at me all evening. He made me nervous.

4. A: We’re going to beat you in the soccer game on Saturday.
   B: No way. Two of your players are equal to only one of ours.
   A: Oh yeah? We’ll see.

5. Stop pouring! My cup is already full of coffee.

6. May I please borrow some money from you? I’m thirsty for an ice-cream soda, and we’re walking right by the ice cream shop.

7. A: Do you believe in astrology?
   B: I’m really not familiar with it.

8. A: Mike, I really admire you for your ability to remember names. Will you help me with the introductions?
   B: Sure. Ellen, let me introduce you to Pat, Andy, Debbie, Nora, Jack, and Kate.

*See Appendix 1 for a list of preposition combinations.
CHAPTER 4
Nouns and Pronouns

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Plural nouns. (Charts 4–1 and 4–2)

Directions: These sentences have many mistakes in the use of nouns. Underline each NOUN. Write the correct PLURAL FORM if necessary. Do not change any of the other words in the sentences.

streets
highways
1. Chicago has busy street and highway.
2. Box have six side.
3. Big city have many problem.
4. Banana grow in hot, humid area.
5. Insect don't have nose.
6. Lamb are the offspring of sheep.
8. Parent support their child.
9. Indonesia has several active volcano.
10. Baboon are big monkey. They have large head and sharp tooth. They eat leaf, root, insect, and egg.

◊ PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Plural nouns. (Chart 4–1)

Directions: Write the correct SINGULAR or PLURAL form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
<td>9. duty</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pocket</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>10. highway</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ______</td>
<td>teeth</td>
<td>11. ______</td>
<td>thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ______</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
<td>12. belief</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ______</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>13. potato</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ______</td>
<td>women</td>
<td>14. radio</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. branch</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>15. offspring</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. friend</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>16. ______</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRONUNCIATION NOTES: Final -s/-es has three different pronunciations: /s/, /z/, and /az/.

- /s/ is the sound of “s” in “bus.” Final -s is pronounced /s/ after voiceless sounds: seats = seat + /s/.
  (Examples of voiceless sounds are: /t/, /p/, /k/, /f/.
- /z/ is the sound of “z” in “buzz.” Final -s is pronounced /z/ after voiced sounds: seeds = seed + /z/. (Examples of voiced sounds are: /d/, /b/, /t/, /l/, /m/, /n/ and all vowel sounds.)
- /az/ adds a whole syllable to a plural noun. Final -es and -s are pronounced /az/ after -sh, -ch, -s, -z, and -ge/dge sounds:
  wishes = wish + /az/
  matches = match + /az/
  classes = class + /az/
  sizes = size + /az/
  pages = page + /az/
  judges = judge + /az/

 1. cats = cat + /s/
 2. heads = head + /z/
 3. eyes = eye + /z/
 4. cars = car + /z/
 5. backs = back + /s/
 6. words = word + /z/
 7. boats = boat + /s/
 8. lips = lip + /s/
 9. ribs = rib + /z/
10. hills = hill + /z/
11. dishes = dish + /az/
12. matches = match + /az/
13. eyelashes = eyelash + /az/
14. edges = edge + /az/
15. pages = page + /az/
16. horses = horse + /az/
17. glasses = glass + /az/
18. places = place + /az/
19. prices = price + /az/
20. prizes = prize + /az/
4. **Hospitals, businesses, and schools** use closed-circuit television.
   hospital/z/ business/z/ school/z/

5. There were two **messages** on my answering machine.
   message/z/

6. There are many TV **programs** about **doctors, detectives, and cowboys**.
   program/z/ doctor/z/ detective/z/ cowboy/z/

7. **Insects** don’t have **ears**. They have **membranes** that can detect **vibrations**.
   insect/z/ ear/z/ membrane/z/ vibration/z/

8. Modern **tools, machines, and sources** of power make our **jobs** easier.
   tool/z/ machine/z/ source/z/ job/z/

9. **Writers** need to support their **opinions** with **facts** and logical **thoughts**.
   writer/z/ opinion/z/ fact/z/ thought/z/

10. Cotton is used to make **blankets, blouses, rugs, gloves, and shirts**.
    blanket/z/ blouse/z/ rug/z/ glove/z/ shirt/z/

◊ **PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions.** (Charts 4–2 and 4–3)

Directions: Identify the **SUBJECTS** (S), **VERBS** (V), **OBJECTS** (O), and **PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES** (PP) in the following sentences.

```
S  V  O  PP
1. [Bridges] [cross] [rivers.]
2. [A terrible earthquake] [occurred] [in Turkey.]
3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.
4. Trucks carry large loads.
5. Rivers flow toward the sea.
6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.
7. Bacteria can cause diseases.
8. Clouds are floating across the sky.
9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.
10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.
```

◊ **PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Nouns and verbs.** (Charts 4–1 → 4–3).

Directions: Some words can be used both as a noun and as a verb. If the word in *italics* is used as a NOUN, circle **n.** If the word in *italics* is used as a VERB, circle **v.** (n. = noun and v. = verb).

1. **n.** People **smile** when they're happy.
2. **v.** Mary has a nice **smile** when she’s happy.
3. **n.** v. Emily likes her **work**.
4. n. v. Emily and Mike work at the cafeteria.
5. n. v. The semester will end next month.
6. n. v. I’ll go on vacation at the end of next month.
7. n. v. The child wrote her name on the wall with a crayon.
8. n. v. People often name their children after relatives.
9. n. v. I rarely add salt to my food.
10. n. v. Some people salt their food before they even taste it.
11. n. v. Kings and queens rule their countries.
12. n. v. We learned a spelling rule in grammar class.
13. n. v. People usually store milk in a refrigerator.
14. n. v. We went to the store to buy some milk.
15. n. v. Airplanes land on runways at the airport.
16. n. v. The ship reached land after seventeen days at sea.
17. n. v. I took a train from New York to Boston.
18. n. v. I train my dogs to sit on command.
19. n. v. Alex visits his aunt every week.
20. n. v. Alex’s aunt enjoys his visits every week.
21. n. v. Marilyn killed the flies in the kitchen with a fly swatter.
22. n. v. Marti flies her airplane to an island in Canada at least once a month.

◊ PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY. Nouns and verbs. (Charts 4–1 → 4–3)

Directions: Use each word in two different sentences. Use the word as a NOUN (n.) in the first sentence and as a VERB (v.) in the second sentence. Consult your dictionary if necessary to find out the different uses and meanings of a word.

Example: watch

Written: n. I am wearing a watch.
          v. I watched TV after dinner last night.

1. snow        4. phone        7. water
2. paint       5. smoke        8. circle
3. tie         6. face         9. mail

Other common words that are used as both nouns and verbs are listed below. Choose several from the list to make additional sentences. Use your dictionary if necessary.

center/centre,* date, experience, fear, fish, garden, mind, place, plant, promise,
question, rain, rock, season, sense, shape, shop, star, tip, trip, value

*center = American English.
centre = British English.
**PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Adjectives. (Chart 4–4)**

Directions: All of the following words are adjectives. For each, write an ADJECTIVE that has the OPPOSITE MEANING.

1. new ________ old ________
2. young ________ old ________
3. cold ________
4. fast ________
5. sad ________
6. good ________
7. wet ________
8. easy ________
9. soft ________
10. wide ________
11. clean ________
12. empty ________
13. dangerous ________
14. noisy ________
15. shallow ________
16. sweet ________
17. cheap ________
18. dark ________
19. heavy ________
20. public ________
21. left ________
22. wrong ________
23. weak ________
24. long ________

**PRACTICE 9—SELFSTUDY: Adjectives and nouns. (Chart 4–4)**

Directions: Circle each ADJECTIVE. Draw an arrow to the noun it describes.

1. Paul has a __________ voice.
2. Sugar is __________
3. The students took an easy test.
4. Air is free.
5. We ate some delicious food at a Mexican restaurant.
6. An encyclopedia contains important facts about a wide variety of subjects.
7. The child was sick.
8. The sick child crawled into his warm bed and sipped hot tea.

**PRACTICE 10—GUIDED STUDY: Adjectives and nouns. (Chart 4–4)**

Directions: Add ADJECTIVES to the sentences. Choose two of the three adjectives in each list to add to the given sentences.

*Example:* hard, heavy, strong  
A man lifted the box.  
→ A strong man lifted the heavy box.

1. beautiful, safe, red  
   Roses are flowers.
2. dark, cold, dry  
   Rain fell from the clouds.
3. empty, wet, hot  
   The waiter poured coffee into my cup.
4. easy, blue, young  
   The girl in the dress was looking for a telephone.
5. quiet, sharp, soft  Annie sleeps on a bed in a room.
6. fresh, clear, hungry  Mrs. Fox gave the children some fruit.
7. dirty, modern, delicious  After we finished our dinner, Frank helped me with the dishes.
8. round, inexperienced, right  When Tom was getting a haircut, the barber accidentally cut Tom’s ear with the scissors.

◊ PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 4–5)

Directions: Use the information in italics to complete the sentences. Each completion should have a NOUN THAT IS USED AS AN ADJECTIVE in front of another noun.

1. Articles in newspapers are called ______________________ newspaper articles ______________________.
2. Numbers on pages are called ______________________ ______________________.
3. Money that is made of paper is called ______________________ ______________________.
4. Buildings with apartments are called ______________________ ______________________.
5. Chains for keys are called ______________________ ______________________.
6. Governments in cities are called ______________________ ______________________.
7. Ponds for ducks are called ______________________ ______________________.
8. Pads for shoulders are called ______________________ ______________________.
9. Knives that people carry in their pockets are called ______________________ ______________________.
10. Lights that regulate traffic are called ______________________ ______________________.

◊ PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Nouns. (Charts 4–1 → 4–5)

Directions: These sentences contain many mistakes in noun usage. Make the nouns PLURAL whenever possible and appropriate. Do not change any other words.

<code>bottles caps</code>
1. Medicine <code>bottle</code> have childproof <code>cap</code>.
2. Airplane <code>seat</code> are narrow and uncomfortable.
3. Science <code>student</code> do laboratory experiment in their class.
4. Housefly <code>are</code> dangerous pest. They carry germ.
6. There are approximately 250,000 different <code>kind</code> of flower in the world.
7. Newspaper <code>reporter</code> have high-pressure job.
8. Good telephone <code>manner</code> are important.
9. I bought two <code>theatre</code> <code>ticket</code> for Thursday evening’s performance of <i>A Doll’s House</i>.
10. Our daily <code>life</code> have changed in many way in the past one hundred <code>year</code>. We no longer need to <code>use</code> <code>oil</code> <code>lamp</code> or <code>candle</code> in our house, raise our own <code>chicken</code>, or build <code>daily</code> <code>fire</code> for cooking.
Directions: These sentences contain many mistakes in noun usage. Make the nouns PLURAL whenever possible and appropriate. Do not change any other words.

**kinds of birds**

1. There are around 8,600 **kinds of bird** in the world.

2. Bird hatch from egg.

3. Baby bird stay in their nest for several week or month. Their parent feed them until they can fly.


5. Fox and snake are natural enemy of bird. They eat bird and their egg.

6. Some bird eat only seed and plant. Other bird eat mainly insect and earthworm.

7. Weed are unwanted plant. They prevent farm crop and garden flower from growing properly. Bird help farmer by eating weed seed and harmful insect.

8. Rat, rabbit, and mouse can cause huge loss on farm by eating stored crop. Certain big bird like hawk help farmer by hunting these animal.

9. The feather of certain kind of bird are used in pillow and mattress. The soft feather from goose are often used for pillow. Goose feather are also used in winter jacket.

10. The wing feather from goose were used as pen from the sixth century to the nineteenth century, when steel pen were invented.
**PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Personal pronouns. (Chart 4–6)**

Directions: Find each PRONOUN. Note how it is used:
- SUBJECT (**S**)
- OBJECT OF A VERB (**O of vb**), or
- OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION (**O of prep**).

**O of vb**
1. The teacher helped [me] with the lesson.

**S**
2. [I] carry a dictionary with [me] at all times.

3. Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.

4. Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time with her.

5. Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the window. They dried quickly.

6. Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me. He and I share a strong bond of friendship.

**PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: Personal pronouns. (Chart 4–6)**

Directions: Circle each PRONOUN, and draw an arrow to the noun or noun phrase it refers to.

1. [Janet] had [a green apple.] **She** ate it after class.

2. Betsy called this morning. John spoke to her.

3. Nick and Rob are at the market. They are buying fresh vegetables.

4. Eric took some phone messages for Karen. They're on a pad of yellow paper in the kitchen.

5. When Louie called, Alice talked to him. He asked her for a date. She accepted.

6. Jane wrote a letter to Mr. and Mrs. Moore. She mailed it to them yesterday. They should get the letter from her on Friday.

**PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Personal pronouns. (Chart 4–6)**

Directions: Complete the sentences with **SHE**, **HE**, **IT**, **HER**, **HIM**, **THEY**, or **THEM**.

1. I have a grammar book. **It** is black.

2. Tom borrowed my books. **He** returned **them** yesterday.

3. Susan is wearing some new earrings. **____________** look good on **____________**.
4. Don’t look directly at the sun. The intensity of its light can injure your eyes. Don’t look at _______ _______ directly even if you are wearing sunglasses.

5. Table tennis (also called ping-pong) began in England in the late 1800s. Today ____________ is an international sport. My brother and I played ___________ a lot when we were teenagers. I beat __________ sometimes, but __________ was a better player and usually won.

6. Do bees sleep at night? Or do __________ work in the hive all night long? You never see __________ after dark. What do __________ do after night falls?

7. The apples were rotten, so we didn’t eat __________ even though we were really hungry.

8. The scent of perfume rises. According to one expert, you should put __________ on the soles of your feet.

9. Clean, safe water is fundamental to human health. It is shocking that an estimated 800 million people in the world are still without __________. Unsafe water causes illnesses. __________ contributes to high numbers of deaths in children under five years of age.

10. Magazines are popular. I enjoy reading __________. __________ have news about recent events and discoveries. Recently, I read about “micromachines.” __________ are human-made machines that are smaller than a grain of sand. One scientist called __________ “the greatest scientific invention of our time.”

◊ PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Personal pronouns. (Chart 4–6)

Directions: Circle the correct PRONOUN.

1. You can ride with Jennifer and __________.

2. Did you see Mark? __________, __________ was waiting in your office to talk to you.

3. I saw Rob a few minutes ago. I passed Sara and __________, __________ on the steps of the classroom building.

4. Nick used to work in his father’s store, but his father and __________, __________ had a serious disagreement. Nick left and started his own business.

5. When the doctor came into the room, I asked __________, __________ a question.
6. The doctor was very helpful. She, Her answered all of my questions.
7. Prof. Molina left a message for you and I, me. He, him needs to see we, us.
8. Emily is a good basketball player. I watch Betsy and she, her carefully during games. They, Them are the best players.
9. One time my little sister and I, me were home alone. When our parents returned, they found a valuable vase had been broken. They, Them blamed we, us for the broken vase, but in truth the cat had broken it, them. We, Us got in trouble with they, them because of the cat.
10. Take these secret documents and destroy it, them.
11. Ron invited Mary and I, me to have dinner with he, him.
12. Maureen likes movies. Ron and she, her go to the movies every chance they get.
13. Tom and I, me both want to marry Ann. She has to choose between he and I, him and me.

◊ PRACTICE 18—SELFSTUDY: Possessive nouns. (Chart 4–7)
Directions: Use the italicized noun in the first sentence to write a POSSESSIVE NOUN in the second sentence. Pay special attention to where you put the apostrophe.

1. I have one friend. My __________________________ name is Paul.
2. I have two friends. My __________________________ names are Paul and Kevin.
3. I have one son. My __________________________ name is Ryan.
4. I have two sons. My __________________________ names are Ryan and Scott.
5. I have one baby. My __________________________ name is Joy.
6. I have two babies. My __________________________ names are Joy and Erica.
7. I have one child. My __________________________ name is Anna.
8. I have two children. My __________________________ names are Anna and Keith.
9. I know one person. This __________________________ name is Nick.
10. I know several people. These __________________________ names are Nick, Karen and Rita.
11. I have one teacher. My __________________________ name is Ms. West.
12. I have two teachers. My __________________________ names are Ms. West and Mr. Fox.
13. I know a man. This __________________________ name is Alan Burns.
14. I know two men. These __________________________ names are Alan Burns and Joe Lee.
15. We live on the earth. The __________________________ surface is seventy percent water.

◊ PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: Possessive nouns. (Chart 4–7)
Directions: These sentences contain mistakes in the punctuation of possessive nouns. Add APOSTROPHES in the right places.

1. A king’s chair is called a throne.
2. Kings’ chairs are called thrones.
3. Babies toys are often brightly colored.
4. It's important to make sure a baby's toys are safe.
5. Someone called, but because of the static on the phone, I couldn't understand the callers words.
6. A receptionist's job is to write down callers' names and take messages.
7. Newspapers aren't interested in yesterday's news. They want to report today's events.
8. Each flight has at least two pilots. The pilots' seats are in a small area called the cockpit.
9. Rain forests cover five percent of the earth's surface but have fifty percent of the different species of plants.
10. Mosquitoes' wings move incredibly fast.
11. A mosquito's wings move about one thousand times per second. Its wing movement is the sound we hear when a mosquito is humming in our ears.
12. The average pulse of a human being is seventy beats per minute. A cat's heart beats one hundred and thirty times per minute. Elephants have slow heartbeats. Did you know that an elephant's heart beats only twenty-five times per minute?
13. When we went to the circus, we saw three elephants. All of us enjoyed watching the elephants' tricks. Elephants are quite intelligent animals that can be taught to respond to spoken commands.
14. Elephants like to roll in mud. The mud protects the animals' bodies from insects and the sun.
15. When we were walking in the woods, we saw an animal's footprints on the muddy path.

◊ PRACTICE 20—GUIDED STUDY: Possessive nouns. (Chart 4–7)

Directions: Make the nouns POSSESSIVE if necessary.

Dan's
1. I met Dan's sister yesterday.
2. I met Dan and his sister yesterday. (no change)
3. I know Jack's roommates.
4. I know Jack well. He's a good friend of mine.
5. I have one roommate. My roommate's desk is always messy.
6. You have two roommates. Your roommate's desks are always neat.
7. Jo Ann and Betty are sisters.
8. Jo Ann is Betty's sister. My sister's name is Sonya.
9. My name is Richard. I have two sisters. My sisters' names are Jo Ann and Betty.
10. There is an old saying: "A woman's work is never done."
11. I read a book about the changes in women's roles and men's roles in modern society.
12. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. We cannot see Jupiter's surface from the earth because thick clouds surround the planet.
13. Mercury is the closest planet to the sun. Mercury atmosphere is extremely hot and dry.

14. Mars' surface has some of the same characteristics as the earth surface, but Mars could not support life as we know it on earth. The plants and animals that live on the earth could not live on any of the other planets in our solar system.

15. Venus is sometimes called the earth twin because the two planets are almost the same size. But like Mars, Venus surface is extremely hot and dry.

16. The planets English names come from ancient Roman mythology. For example, Mars was the name of the god of war in ancient Rome. Jupiter was the king of the gods. Mercury, who was Jupiter son, was the messenger of the gods. Venus was the goddess of love, beauty, and creativity. Venus son was named Cupid, the god of love and desire.

* When a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible possessive forms, as in the examples below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR NOUN</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE FORMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>I know James' brother. OR: I know James's brother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris</td>
<td>Chris' car is red. OR: Chris's car is red.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlos</td>
<td>Carlos' last name is Rivera. OR: Carlos's last name is Rivera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 21—GUIDED STUDY: Review of nouns + -s/-es. (Charts 4–1 and 4–7)

Directions: Add -s/-es if necessary. Add an APOSTROPHE to possessive nouns as appropriate.

Examples: Butterflies and David's

Butterfly are beautiful. Nick is David's brother.

1. Most leaf are green.
2. My mother apartment is small.
3. Potato are good for us.
4. Do bird have teeth?
5. Tom last name is Miller.
6. Two thief stole Mr. Lee car.
7. Mountain are high, and valley are low.
8. A good toy holds a child interest for a long time.
9. Children toy need to be strong and safe.
10. All of the actor name are listed on page six of your program.
11. Teacher are interested in young people idea.
12. Almost all monkey have opposable thumb on not only their hand but also their feet. People have thumb only on their hand.

PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: Possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives. (Chart 4–8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS or POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES that refer to the words in italics.

1. A: Can I look at your grammar book?
   B: Why? You have ______ your own* book. You have ______ yours, and I have mine.
   B: Why? She has ______ own book. She has ______, and I have mine.
   B: Why? He has ______ own book. He has _______, and I have mine.
   B: Why? You have ______ own books. You have ______, and I have mine.
5. A: Tom and Anna want to look at our grammar books.
   B: Why? They have ______ own books. We have ______ own books. They have ______, and we have ______.

*Own frequently follows a possessive adjective: e.g., my own, your own, their own. The word own emphasizes that nobody else possesses the exact same thing(s); ownership belongs only to me (my own book), to you (your own book), to them (their own books), to us (our own books), etc.
Directions: Complete the sentences with POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS or POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES that refer to the words in italics.

1. Sara asked her mother for permission to go to a movie.
2. I don't need to borrow your bicycle. Sara loaned me hers.
3. Ted and I are roommates. Our apartment is small.
4. Brian and Louie have a huge apartment, but we don't. Our is small.
5. You can find your keys in the top drawer of the desk.
6. The keys in the drawer belong to you. I have mine in my pocket. You should look in the drawer for yours.
7. Tom and Paul talked about their experiences in the wilderness areas of Canada. I've had a lot of interesting experiences in the wilderness, but nothing to compare with yours.
8. I know Eric well. He is a good friend of mine. You know him, too, don't you? Isn't he a friend of yours, too?
9. Omar, my wife and I would like to introduce you to a good friend of ours. His name is Dan Lightfeather.

Directions: Complete the sentences with REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS that refer to the words in italics.

1. I enjoyed myself at Disney World.
2. Paul enjoyed himself.
3. Paul and I enjoyed ourselves.
4. Hi, Emily! Did you enjoy yourself?
5. Hi, Emily and Dan! Did you enjoy yourselves?
7. Jessica and Paul enjoyed themselves.

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in the list + REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. Use any appropriate verb tense.

believe in help talk to
blame introduce teach
cut kill work for
feel sorry for take care of wish

1. This accident was my fault. I caused it. I was responsible. In other words, I blamed myself for the accident.
2. Be careful with that sharp knife! You ______ are going to cut yourself ______ if you’re not careful.

3. It was the first day of class. I sat next to another student and started a conversation about the class and the classroom. After we had talked for a few minutes, I said, “My name is Rita Woo.” In other words, I ______ ______ ______ to the other student. 

4. When I walked into the room, I heard Joe’s voice. He was speaking. I looked around, but the only person I saw and heard was Joe. In other words, Joe ______ ______ ______ when I walked into the room.

5. My wife and I have our own business. We don’t have a boss. In other words, we ______ ______ ______.

6. Mr. and Mrs. Hall own their own business. No one taught them how to run a business. In other words, they ______ ______ ______ everything they needed to know about running a small business.

7. Mr. Baker committed suicide. In other words, he ______ ______ ______.

8. I climbed to the top of the diving tower and walked to the end of the diving board. Before I dived into the pool, I said “good luck” to myself. In other words, I ______ ______ ______ luck.

9. Rebecca is in bed because she has the flu. She isn’t at work. Instead, she’s resting at home and drinking plenty of fluids. She is being careful about her health. In other words, she ______ ______ ______.

10. Sometimes we have problems in our lives. Sometimes we fail. But we shouldn’t get discouraged and sad. We need to have faith that we can solve our problems and succeed. If we ______ ______ ______, we can accomplish our goals.

11. When I failed to get the new job, I was sad and depressed. In other words, I ______ ______ ______ because I didn’t get the job.

12. In a cafeteria, people walk through a section of the restaurant and pick up their food. They are not served by waiters. In other words, in a cafeteria people ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ to the food they want.

◊ PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Pronouns. (Charts 4–6 → 4–10)

Directions: Circle the correct PRONOUNS.

1. Nick invited ______ to go to dinner with he, him.

2. Sam and you should be proud of ______, yourselves. The two of you did a good job.

3. The room was almost empty. The only furniture was one table. The table stood by ______ in one corner.
4. The bird returned to its, it's* nest to feed its, it's** offspring.
5. Nick has his tennis racket, and Ann has her, hers, her's.*
6. Where’s Eric? I have some good news for Joe and he, him, his, himself.
7. Don’t listen to Greg. You need to think for yourself, yourselves, Jane. It’s you, your, yours life.
8. We all have us, our, ours own ideas about how to live our, ours, our’s* lives.
9. You have your beliefs, and we have our, ours.
10. People usually enjoy themself, themselves, theirselves** at family gatherings.
11. History repeats himself, herself, itself.
12. David didn’t need my help. He finished the work by him, himself, his, his self.

PRACTICE 27—GUIDED STUDY: Pronoun review. (Charts 4–6 → 4–10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with PRONOUNS that refer to the words in italics.

1. Tom is wearing a bandage on his arm. He hurt himself while he was repairing the roof. I’ll help him with the roof later.
2. I have a sister. Her name is Kate. and I share a room.
3. My sister and I share a room. Our room is pretty small. We have only one desk.
4. Our desk has five drawers. Kate puts things in the two drawers on the right.
5. I keep stuff in the two drawers on the left. She and I share the middle drawer.
6. Kate doesn’t open my two drawers, and I don’t open mine.
7. I don’t put things in her drawers, and she doesn’t put things in mine.
8. Ms. Lake and Mr. Ramirez work together at the advertising company. They often work on projects by themselves, but I work with someone sometimes. My office is next to his. Our office has names on the door, and mine has my name.
9. I have my dictionary, and Sara has hers. But Nick doesn’t have it.
10. My friend James enjoyed himself at Mike’s house yesterday. When I talked to him on the phone, he told me about their day with Mike. They and Mike played basketball, ate junk food, and played computer games. I like James a lot. I’m going to spend next Saturday with Mike and them at a science fair.

REMINDER: Apostrophes are NOT used with possessive pronouns. Note that it’s = possessive adjective, it is. Also note that her’s, your’s, and our’s are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English.

NOTE: themself and theirselves are not really words—they are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English. Only themselves is the correct reflexive pronoun form.
11. *Karen* has a bandage on ___________ thumb because ___________ accidentally cut ___________ with a hatchet while ___________ was cutting wood for ___________ fireplace.

12. We don’t agree with you. *You* have ___________ opinion, and *we* have ___________.

◇ PRACTICE 28—SELFSTUDY: Singular forms of *other*. (Chart 4-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with ANOTHER or THE OTHER.

1. There are two birds in Drawing A. One is an eagle. ___________ is a chicken.

2. There are three birds in Drawing B. One is an eagle.
   a. ___________ one is a chicken.
   b. ___________ bird is a crow.

3. There are many kinds of birds in the world. One kind is an eagle.
   a. ___________ kind is a chicken.
   b. ___________ kind is a crow.
   c. ___________ kind is a sea gull.
   d. What is the name of ___________ kind of bird in the world?
4. There are two women in Picture A. One is Ann. ____________ is Sara.

5. There are three men in Picture B. One is Alex. ____________ one is Mike.

6. In Picture B, Alex and Mike are smiling. ____________ man looks sad.

7. There are three men in Picture B. All three have common first names. One is named Alex.
   a. ______________ is named David.
   b. The name of ______________ one is Mike.

8. There are many common English names for men. Alex is one.
   a. Mike is ______________.
   b. David is ______________.
   c. John is ______________ common name.
   d. Joe is ______________.
   e. What is ______________ common English name for a man?

◊ PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Plural forms of other. (Chart 4–12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with THE OTHER, THE OTHERS, OTHER, or OTHERS.

1. There are four birds in the picture. One is an eagle, and another one is a crow.
   ______________ birds in the picture are chickens.

2. There are four birds in the picture. One is an eagle, and another one is a crow.
   ______________ are chickens.
3. Birds have different eating habits. Some birds eat insects.
   a. ________ ________ birds get their food chiefly from plants.
   b. ________ ________ eat only fish.
   c. ________ ________ hunt small animals like mice and rabbits.
   d. ________ ________ birds prefer dead and rotting flesh.

4. There are five English vowels. One is “a.” Another is “e.”
   a. What are ________ ________ vowels?
   b. ________ ________ are “i”, “o”, and “u.”

5. There are many consonants in English. The letters “b” and “c” are consonants.
   a. What are ________ ________ consonants?
   b. Some ________ ________ are “d”, “f”, and “g.”

6. Some people are tall, and ________ ________ are short. Some people are neither tall nor short.

7. Some people are tall, and ________ ________ people are short.

8. Some animals are huge. ________ ________ are tiny.

9. Some animals are huge. ________ ________ animals are tiny.

10. A: There were ten questions on the test. Seven of them were easy.
    ________ ________ three were really hard.

    B: Any question is easy if you know the answer. Seven of the questions were “easy” for you because you had studied for them. ________ ________ were “hard” only because you hadn’t studied for them.

◊ PRACTICE 30—SELFSTUDY: Summary forms of other. (Charts 4-11 → 4-13)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: Copper in one kind of metal. Silver is ________.
   A. another  B. the other  C. the others  D. others  E. other

1. Summer is one season. Spring is ________.
   A. another  B. the other  C. the others  D. others  E. other

2. There are four seasons. Summer is one. ________ are winter, fall and spring.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

3. What’s your favorite season? Some people like spring the best. ________ think fall is the nicest season.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

4. My eyes are different colors. One eye is gray and ________ is green.
   A. another  B. the other  C. the others  D. others  E. other

5. One color I like a lot is blue. ________ colors that I think are nice are green and yellow. Purple is a pretty color, too.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

6. There are five letters in the word “fresh.” One of the letters is a vowel. ________ are consonants.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

Nouns and Pronouns ◊ 79
7. Alex failed his English exam, but his teacher is going to give him ____ chance to pass it.
   A. another  B. the other  C. the others  D. others  E. other

8. Some people drink tea in the morning. ____ have coffee. I prefer fruit juice.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

9. There are five digits in the number 20,000. One digit is a 2. ____ digits are all zeroes.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

10. Smith is a common last name in English. ____ common names are Johnson, Jones, and Miller. Others are Anderson, Moore, and Brown.
    A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

◊ PRACTICE 31—GUIDED STUDY: Summary forms of other. (Charts 4-11 → 4-13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words. Use a form of other in the blank and underline it.

Example: I have ____ books on my desk. One is ____ , and ____ is/are ____ .

Written: I have three books on my desk. One is a grammar book, and the others are my dictionary and a science book.

1. I have two favorite colors. One is ____ , and ____ is ____ .

2. Some students walk to school. ____ is ____ .

3. Ted drank ____ , but he was still thirsty, so ____ one.

4. I speak ____ languages. One is ____ , and ____ is/are ____ .

5. Some people ____ , and ____ .

6. I have ____ (sisters, brothers, and/or cousins). One is ____ , and ____ is/are ____ .

7. One of my teachers is ____ .

8. ____ and ____ are two common names in my country. ____ are ____ .

9. ____ of the students in my class are from ____ . ____ students are from ____ .

10. There are many popular sports in the world. One is ____ .

◊ PRACTICE 32—SELFSTUDY: Capitalization. (Chart 4-14)

Directions: Add capital letters where necessary.

1. Do you know Robert Jones?

2. Do you know my uncle? (no change)

3. I like uncle Joe and aunt Sara.

4. I'd like you to meet my aunt.

5. Susan W. Miller is a professor.

6. I am in Prof. Miller's class.

7. The weather is cold in January.

8. The weather is cold in winter.

9. I have three classes on Monday.

10. I would like to visit Los Angeles.

11. It's a large city in California.

12. I like to visit large cities in foreign countries.

13. There are fifty states in the United States of America.

14. It used to take weeks or months to cross an ocean.
15. Today we can fly across the Atlantic Ocean in hours.

16. I live on a busy street near the local high school.


18. We stayed at a very comfortable hotel.

19. We stayed at the Hilton hotel in Bangkok.

20. Yoko is Japanese, but she can also speak German.

◊ PRACTICE 33—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.*

1. How much did you pay __________ that beautiful table?

2. A: Did you talk __________ the manager __________ returning that dress?
   B: No. She didn’t arrive __________ the store while I was there. I waited __________ her for a half an hour and then left.

3. I listened __________ you very carefully, but I didn’t understand anything you said.

4. When I graduated __________ college, my mother and father told everyone we knew that I had graduated.

5. I paid too much __________ this watch. It’s not worth it.

6. A: We don’t have all day! How long is it going take for someone to wait __________ us? I’m hungry.
   B: We just got here. Be patient. Do you have to complain __________ everything?

7. When did you arrive __________ Mexico City?

8. A: This sauce is delicious! What is it?
   B: Well, it consists __________ tomatoes, garlic, olive oil, and lemon juice all blended together.

9. There were ten people at the meeting and ten different opinions. No one agreed __________ anyone else __________ the best way to solve the club’s financial problems.

10. I have to complain __________ the manager. Both the food and the service are terrible.

◊ PRACTICE 34—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapters 1, 3, and 4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate PREPOSITIONS.

1. Everyone is talking __________ the explosion in the high school chemistry lab.

2. Carlos was absent __________ class six times last term.

3. Fruit consists mostly __________ water.

*See Appendix I for a list of preposition combinations.
4. Our children are very polite ________ adults, but they argue ________ their playmates all the time.
5. Three centimeters is equal ________ approximately one and a half inches.
6. I'm not ready ________ my trip. I haven't packed yet.
7. I borrowed some clothes ________ my best friend.
8. Are you familiar ________ ancient Roman mythology?
9. I discussed my problem ________ my uncle.
10. Someday astronauts will travel ________ another solar system.
11. Jennifer arrived ________ Singapore last Tuesday.
12. Jack's plane arrived ________ the airport in Mexico City two hours ago.
13. I admire you ________ your ability to laugh ________ yourself when you make a silly mistake.
14. A: Why are staring ________ the wall?
   B: I'm not. I'm thinking.
15. A: Are you two arguing ________ each other ________ your in-laws again?
   B: Do you know what his father did?
   C: Oh yeah? Listen ________ what her sister said.
   A: Shh. I don't want to hear any of this. Stop complaining ________ me ________ your relatives. I don't agree ________ either of you.
CHAPTER 5

Modal Auxiliaries

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: To with modal auxiliaries. (Chart 5-1)

Directions: Add the word TO where necessary. Write Ø if TO is not necessary.

1. Mr. Alvarez spilled tea on his shirt. He must ☐ change clothes before dinner.
2. Mr. Alvarez has ☐ change his shirt before dinner.
3. Everyone should ☐ pay attention to local politics.
4. Everyone ought ☐ participate in local government.
5. May I ☐ borrow your pen?
6. A good book can ☐ be a friend for life.
7. Jimmy is yawning and rubbing his eyes. He must ☐ be sleepy.
8. You can’t ☐ open a can without a can opener, can you?
9. I’d like to stay and talk some more, but I’ve got ☐ hurry over to the chemistry building for my next class.
10. A: Should I ☐ tell the boss about the accounting error in the report?
    B: You have ☐ tell him. That error could ☐ get the company in trouble.
    A: I know that I ought ☐ be honest about it, but I’m afraid he’ll get angry. He might ☐ fire me. Would you ☐ go with me to see him?
    B: I think you should ☐ do this yourself. You can ☐ do it. I’m sure the boss will ☐ understand.
    A: No, you must ☐ go with me. I can’t ☐ face him alone.

◊ PRACTICE 2—GUIDED STUDY: To with modal auxiliaries. (Chart 5-1)

Directions: Add the word TO where necessary. Write Ø if TO is not necessary.

(1) Everyone in my family has ☐ contribute to keeping order in our house. My parents
(2) assign chores to my brother, George, and me. We must ☐ do these tasks every day.
(3) Sometimes if one of us is busy and can’t ☐ do a chore, the other one may ☐ take
(4) care of it.
(5) For example, last Friday it was George’s turn to wash the dishes after dinner. He couldn’t

(6) __________ stay to do it because he had __________ hurry to school for a basketball game. George (7) asked me, “Will you __________ do the dishes for me, please? I’ll __________ do them for you (8) tomorrow when it’s your turn. I’ve got __________ get to the school for the game.” I reluctantly (9) agreed to do George’s chores and washed the dishes after dinner. But then the next night, George (10) “forgot” that we had traded days. When I reminded him to wash the dishes, he said, “Who? (11) Me? It’s not my turn. You have __________ do the dishes tonight. It’s __________ turn.” (12) I think I’d better __________ write our agreement down when I take my brother George’s (13) chores, and I ought __________ give him a copy of the agreement. George has a short memory, (14) especially if he has __________ wash dishes or take out the garbage. I should __________ write (15) everything down. In fact, I might __________ write out a weekly schedule. Then we could (16) __________ write our names in and change assignments if necessary. That ought __________ solve (17) the problem. I must __________ remember to do that.

◊ PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Expressing ability. (Chart 5-2)

Directions: Choose one of the words in parentheses to complete each sentence.

1. A __________ zebra can’t stretch its neck to reach the tops of trees. (giraffe, zebra)
2. A single __________ can kill a thousand mice in a year. (bee, cat)
3. __________ can crush small trees under their huge feet. (Rabbits, Elephants)
4. __________ can climb trees with ease. (Monkeys, Chickens)
5. Did you know that __________ can survive seventeen days without any water at all? (ducks, camels)
6. One __________ can produce as much as 8,500 lbs. (3,860 kgs) of milk in a year. (cow, bull)
7. A person can sit on a __________ without hurting it. (horse, cat)
8. A _______________ can carry heavy loads on its back. (donkey, snake)

9. A _______________ can stay high up in the trees for weeks, leaping from branch to branch. (squirrel, polar bear)

10. Most _______________ can lift objects that are ten times heavier than their own bodies. (people, ants)

◊ PRACTICE 4—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing ability. (Chart 5–2)

Directions: Interview a classmate about each item in the list below, then write a report about your classmate's abilities.

Example: read pages that are upside down?
STUDENT A: (Jose), can you read pages that are upside down?
STUDENT B: Yes, I can. Here, I'll show you.
    OR: No, I can't.
    OR: I don't know. I'll try. Turn your book upside down and I'll try to read it.

PART I: STUDENT A interviews STUDENT B:
1. speak more than two languages?
2. play chess?
3. drive a car?
4. read upside down?
5. play any musical instrument?
6. do card tricks?
7. pat the top of your head up and down with one hand and rub your stomach in a circular motion with the other hand at the same time?

PART II: STUDENT B interviews STUDENT A:
8. fold a piece of paper in half more than six times?
9. draw well—for example, draw a picture of me?
10. cook?
11. walk on your hands?
12. play tennis?
13. use a computer?
14. write legibly with both your right hand and your left hand?

◊ PRACTICE 5—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing past ability. (Chart 5–2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with COULD or COULDN'T and your own words.

Example: A year ago I . . . , but now I can.
Written: A year ago I couldn't speak English, but now I can.

1. When I was a baby, I . . . , but now I can.
2. When I was a child, I . . . , but now I can't.
3. When I was thirteen, I . . . , but I couldn't do the same thing when I was three.
4. Five years ago, I . . . , but now I can't.
5. Last year/month/week, I . . . , but now I can.
Directions: Complete the sentences with CAN, CAN'T, MAY, or MAY NOT.

1. I _______ play only one musical instrument: the piano. I _______ play a guitar.

2. Dark clouds are gathering in the sky. It _______ rain soon.

3. Michael will be your interpreter during your trip to Korea. He _______ speak Korean fluently.

4. One minute John wants to go to the dinner party. The next minute he doesn't want to go. He _______ make up his mind. He _______ go to the dinner party tonight, or he _______.

5. You'd better take a book with you to the airport when you go to meet Danny's plane. It _______ be late because of the snowstorm in Denver.

6. A: What channel is the news special on tonight?
   B: I'm not sure. It _______ be on Channel Seven. Try that one first.

7. Alice is a runner. She likes to compete, but two days ago she broke her ankle when she fell. She _______ run in the race tomorrow.

8. A: Do you remember a famous actor named Basil Rathbone? Is he still making movies?
   B: I think he _______ be dead.

Directions: Complete the sentences with CAN, CAN'T, MIGHT, or MIGHT NOT.

9. Jessica hasn't made up her mind about where to go to school. She _______ or she _______ attend Duke University. She just doesn't know yet.

10. Ducks _______ swim well, but chickens _______ because they don't have webbed feet.

11. A: What are you going to order?
   B: I dunno.* I _______ have a hamburger or a cheeseburger.

12. A: Carol's in New York now. Is she going to return to school in Chicago in September?
   B: It depends. If she _______ find a job in New York, she'll stay there this fall. Who knows? She _______ stay there through the winter and spring, too. If she likes her job, she _______ want to return to school in Chicago next year at all. We'll have to wait and see.

13. A: Which one of these oranges is sweet? I like only sweet oranges.
   B: How should I know? I _______ tell if an orange is sweet just by looking at it. _______ you? Here. Try this one. It _______ be sweet enough for you. If it isn't, put some sugar on it.

---

*I dunno* = informal spoken English for "I don't know."
PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY: Meanings of could. (Charts 5–2 → 5–4)

Directions: Choose the expression that has the same meaning as the italicized verb.

1. Twenty years ago, David could speak Arabic fluently. Now he’s forgotten a lot.
   (A) was able to speak  B. may/might speak
2. Let’s leave for the airport now. Lenny’s plane could arrive early tonight.
   A. was able to arrive  B. may/might arrive
3. “Where’s Alice?” “I don’t know. She could be at the mall.”
   A. was able to be  B. may/might be
4. I think I’ll take my umbrella. It could rain today.
   A. was able to rain  B. may/might rain
5. “What’s in this box?” “I don’t know. It looks like a bottle, but it could be a flower vase.”
   A. was able to be  B. may/might be
6. When I was a child, we could swim in the Duckfoot River, but now it’s too polluted.
   Today even the fish get sick.
   A. were able to swim  B. may/might swim
7. “How long will it take you to paint two small rooms?” “I’m not sure. If the job isn’t complicated, I could finish by Thursday.”
   A. was able to finish  B. may/might finish
8. When I was a kid, I could jump rope really well.
   A. was able to jump  B. may/might jump

PRACTICE 8—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing possibility. (Chart 5–4)

Directions: For each situation, use could to suggest possible courses of action.

Example: Jack has to go to work early tomorrow. His car is out of gas. His bicycle is broken.
Response: Jack could take the bus to work.
   He could take a gas can to a gas station, fill it up, and carry it home to his car.
   He could try to fix his bicycle.
   He could get up very early and walk to work. Etc.

1. Nancy walked to school today. Now she wants to go home. It’s raining hard. She doesn’t have an umbrella. She doesn’t want to get wet.
2. Ann and Carmen want to get some exercise. They have a date to play tennis this morning, but the tennis court is covered with snow.
3. Sam just bought a new camera. He has it at home now. He has the instruction manual. It is written in Japanese. He can’t read Japanese. He doesn’t know how to operate the camera.
4. Dennis likes to travel around the world. He is twenty-two years old. Today he is alone in (name of a city). He needs to eat, and he needs to find a place to stay overnight. But while he was asleep on the train last night, someone stole his wallet. He has no money.

◊ PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing possibility. (Charts 5-2 → 5-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: I could _____ today. ( . . .) could _____ too, but we’ll probably ______.
Response: I could _____ skip class and go to a movie today. Pedro could _____ come along too, but we’ll probably _____ go to class just like we’re supposed to.

1. Tonight I could _____ Or I might _____ Of course, I may _____ But I’ll probably _____
2. Next year, I might _____ But I could _____ I may _____ But I’ll probably _____
3. My friend ( . . .) may _____ this weekend, but I’m not sure. He/She might _____
   He/She could also _____ But he/she’ll probably _____
4. One hundred years from now, ______ may __________. ______ could __________.
   ____ will probably ______

◊ PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Polite questions. (Charts 5-5 and 5-6)

Directions: Circle the correct completion.

1. A: This desk is too heavy for me: May, Can you help me lift it?
   B: Sure. No problem.
2. A: Ms. Milan, may, will I be excused from class early today? I have a doctor’s appointment.
   B: Yes. You may leave early. That would be fine.
3. A: I’m having trouble with this word processor. Would, May you show me how to set the margins one more time?
   B: Of course.
4. A: Andrew, would, could I speak to you for a minute?
   B: Sure. What’s up?
5. A: I can’t meet David’s plane tonight. Can, May you pick him up?
   B: Sorry. I have to work tonight. Call Uncle Frank. Maybe he can pick David up.
6. A: Could, May you please take these letters to the post office before noon?
   B: I’d be happy to, sir. Hmmm. It’s almost eleven-thirty. May, Will I leave for the post office now and then go to lunch early?
   A: That would be fine.
7. A: Marilyn, are you feeling okay? Would, Can I get you something?
   B: May, Will you get me a glass of water, please?
   A: Right away.
8. A: Darn these medicine bottles! I can’t ever get the cap off!

B: Would, Could I open that for you?

A: Thanks. I’d really appreciate it.

◊ PRACTICE 11—GUIDED STUDY: Polite questions. (Charts 5–5 and 5–6)

Directions: Write a dialogue for each situation. The beginning of each dialogue is given.

Example:

SITUATION: You’re in a restaurant. You want the waiter to refill your coffee cup. You catch the waiter’s eye and raise your hand slightly. The waiter approaches your table.

DIALOGUE: A: Yes? What can I do for you?

Written: A: Yes? What can I do for you?
B: Could I please have some more coffee?
A: Of course. Right away.

1. SITUATION: You’ve been waiting in line at a busy bakery. Finally, the person in front of you is getting waited on, and the clerk turns toward you.

DIALOGUE: A: Next!

2. SITUATION: You are at work. You feel sick. Your head is pounding, and you have a slight fever. You really want to go home. You see your boss, Mr. Jenkins, passing by your desk.

DIALOGUE: A: Mr. Jenkins?

3. SITUATION: Your cousin, Willy, is in the next room listening to music. You are talking on the telephone. The music is getting louder and louder. Finally, you can no longer hear your conversation over the phone. You put the phone down and turn toward the door to the next room.

DIALOGUE: A: Willy!

4. SITUATION: The person next to you on the plane has finished reading his newspaper. You would like to read it.

DIALOGUE: A: Excuse me.

5. SITUATION: You see a car on the side of the road with the hood raised and an older man standing next to it. He looks tired and concerned. You pull over and get out of your car to walk over to him.

DIALOGUE: A: Do you need some help, sir?

◊ PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Expressing advice. (Chart 5–7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Danny doesn’t feel well. He ____ see a doctor.
   A. should          B. ought       C. had

2. Danny doesn’t feel well. He ____ better see a doctor.
   A. should          B. ought       C. had

3. Danny doesn’t feel well. He ____ to see a doctor.
   A. should          B. ought       C. had
4. It’s extremely warm in here. We _____ open some windows.
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

5. It’s really cold in here. We _____ to close some windows.
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

6. There’s a police car behind us. You _____ better slow down!
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

7. People who use public parks _____ clean up after themselves.
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

8. I have no money left in my bank account. I _____ better stop charging things on my credit card.
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

9. It’s going to be a formal dinner and dance. You _____ to change clothes.
   A. should    B. ought    C. had

10. This library book is overdue. I _____ better return it today.
    A. should    B. ought    C. had

◊ PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing advice. (Chart 5–7)

Directions: Give advice. Use SHOULD, OUGHT TO, and HAD BETTER.

Example: I forgot my dad’s birthday. It was yesterday. I feel terrible about it. What should I do?
Possible responses:
   You’d better call him on the phone right away.
   You should send him a card and a little present.
   You ought to write him a long letter and tell him you’re sorry.

1. Sam studies, but he doesn’t understand his physics class. It’s the middle of the term, and he is failing the course. He needs a science course in order to graduate. What should he do?
2. Dan just discovered that he made dinner plans for tonight with two different people. He is supposed to meet his fiancée at one restaurant at 7:00, and he is supposed to meet his boss at a different restaurant across town at 8:00. What should he do?
3. The boss wants me to finish my report before I go on vacation, but I probably don’t have time. What should I do?
4. I borrowed Karen’s favorite book of poems. It was special to her. A note on the inside cover said “To Karen.” The poet’s signature was at the bottom of the note. Now I can’t find the book. I think I lost it. What am I going to do?

◊ PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Expressing necessity. (Chart 5–8)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I _____ to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn.
   A. have    B. has    C. had    D. must

2. Bye! I’m leaving now. I _____ got to take this package to the post office.
   A. have    B. has    C. had    D. must

3. I know you didn’t mean what you said. You _____ think before you speak!
   A. have    B. has    C. had    D. must

4. Yesterday everyone in the office _____ to leave the building for a fire drill. I’m glad it wasn’t a real fire.
   A. have    B. has    C. had    D. must
5. Janet ___ to take an educational psychology course next semester. It’s a required course.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

6. Pete, Chris, and Anna ___ to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Irwin wants them to help him grade papers.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

7. Mr. Silva, you ___ not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you’re the only one who can answer her questions about the new project.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

8. Last year our town didn’t have many tourists because of the oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We ___ to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

◇ PRACTICE 15—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing necessity. (Chart 5–8)

Directions: Use the information in PART I to answer the questions in PART II. Answer in complete sentences using the verb in italics.

PART I: INFORMATION
   a. Mr. Lin is nearsighted.
   b. Carmen’s boss just told her that she’s going to Rome next month to an important international conference.
   c. Gloria’s car is in the garage.
   d. Jake’s parents are going out to play cards with their friends.
   e. The students in this class want to improve their English.
   f. Professor Clark got the flu.

PART II: QUESTIONS
1. Who ___________ take the bus to work and why?
   → Gloria has to take the bus to work because her car is in the garage.

2. Who ___________ cancel classes and why?
3. Who ___________ renew her passport immediately and why?
4. Who ___________ wear glasses and why?
5. Who’s ___________ stay home and babysit his little sister tonight and why?
6. Who ___________ study hard and why?

◇ PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 5–8 and 5–9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with MUST NOT or DON’T HAVE TO.

1. You _________ must not _________ drive when you are tired. It’s dangerous.
2. I live only a few blocks from my office. I _________ don’t have to _________ drive to work.
3. You _________ play loud music late at night. The neighbors will call the police.
4. This box isn’t as heavy as it looks. You _________ help me with it. Thanks anyway for offering to help.
5. Susan, you _______________ go to the university. Your father and I think you should, but it’s your choice.

6. People _______________ spend their money foolishly if they want to stay out of financial trouble.

7. My new telephone has a “memory.” I _______________ look up phone numbers anymore. All I have to do is push a button next to someone’s name.

8. When you first meet someone, you _______________ ask personal questions. For example, it’s not polite to ask a person’s age.

9. The nations of the world _______________ stop trying to achieve total world peace.

10. My husband and I grow all of our own vegetables in the summer. We _______________ buy any vegetables at the market.

◊ PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 5–8 and 5–9)

Directions: Complete each sentence with a form of HAVE TO or MUST. Use the negative if necessary to make a sensible sentence.

1. Smoking in this building is prohibited. You _______________ extinguish your cigar.

2. Alan’s company pays all of his travel expenses. Alan _______________ pay for his own plane ticket to the business conference in Amman, Jordan.

3. Our company provides free advice on the use of our products. You _______________ pay us.

4. Charles could get fired if he misses any more morning meetings. He _______________ be late today under any circumstances.

5. Everyone here _______________ leave immediately! The building is on fire!

6. Lynn _______________ attend the meeting tonight because she isn’t working on the project that we’re going to discuss. We’re going to discuss raising money for the new library. Lynn isn’t involved in that.

7. The construction company _______________ finish the building by the end of the month. That’s the date they promised, and they will lose a lot of money if they are late.

8. Please remember, you _______________ call my house between three and four this afternoon. That’s when the baby sleeps, and my mother will get upset if we wake him up.

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing advice and necessity. (Charts 5–7 → 5–9)

Directions: Use the given information to discuss the situation. Use expressions like OUGHT TO, HAS TO, COULD, SHOULD, MIGHT, HAS GOT TO, HAD BETTER.

Example: Carol is just recovering from the flu and tires easily. She’s at work today.

Possible responses:
- Carol should go directly home from work and get plenty of rest.
- She ought to talk to her boss about leaving work early today.
She's got to take care of her health.
She must not get too tired.
She doesn't have to stay at work if she doesn't feel well.

1. Sara is fifteen. She doesn’t have a driver’s license. She’s planning to drive her brother’s car to her girlfriend’s house. Her brother isn’t home. Her parents aren’t home.

2. Steve is a biology major. Chemistry is a required course for biology majors. Steve doesn’t want to take chemistry. He thinks it’s boring. He would rather take a course in art history or creative writing.

3. Matt and Amy are eighteen years old. They are students. Matt doesn’t have a job. Amy works part-time as a waitress. Matt and Amy met a month ago. They fell in love. They plan to get married next week.

4. Kate invited a friend to her apartment for dinner at 8:00 tonight. Right now it’s 7:20, and Kate is unexpectedly in a long and late business meeting with an important client. It takes her 30 minutes to get home from her office. She hasn’t had time to shop for food for tonight’s dinner.

5. I know a story about a rabbit named Rabbit and a frog named Frog. Rabbit and Frog are good friends, but Rabbit's family doesn’t like Frog, and Frog’s family doesn’t like Rabbit. Rabbit’s family says, “You shouldn’t be friends with Frog. He’s too different from us. He’s green and has big eyes. He looks strange. You should stay with your own kind.” And Frog’s family says, “How can you be friends with Rabbit? He’s big and clumsy. He’s covered with hair and has funny ears. Don’t bring Rabbit to our house. What will the neighbors think?”

◇ PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Expressing advice and necessity. (Charts 5–7 → 5–9)

Directions: Read the passage, and then give advice either in a discussion group or in writing.

Mr. and Mrs. Holtz don’t know what to do about their fourteen-year-old son, Mark. He’s very intelligent but has no interest in school or in learning. His grades are getting worse, but he won’t do any homework. Sometimes he skips school without permission, and then he writes an excuse for the school and signs his mother’s name.

His older sister, Kathy, is a good student and never causes any problems at home. Mark’s parents keep asking him why he can’t be more like Kathy. Kathy makes fun of Mark’s school grades and tells him he’s stupid.
All Mark does when he's home is stay in his room and listen to very loud music. Sometimes he doesn't even come downstairs to eat meals with his family. He argues with his parents whenever they ask him to do chores around the house, like taking out the garbage.

Mr. and Mrs. Holtz can't stay calm when they talk to him. Mrs. Holtz is always yelling at her son. She naggs him constantly to do his chores, clean up his room, finish his homework, stand up straight, get a haircut, wash his face, and tie his shoes. Mr. Holtz is always making new rules. Some of the rules are unreasonable. For instance, one rule Mr. Holtz made was that his son could not listen to music after five o'clock. Mark often becomes angry and goes up to his room and slams the door shut.

This family needs a lot of advice. Tell them what changes they should make. What should Mr. and Mrs. Holtz do? What shouldn’t they do? What about Kathy? What should she do? And what’s Mark got to do to change his life for the better?

Use each of the following words at least once in the advice you give:

a. should  e. ought to
b. shouldn’t  f. have to/has to
c. have got to/has got to  g. must
d. had better

PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Making logical conclusions. (Chart 5–10)

Directions: Complete the following sentences. Use MUST or MUST NOT.

1. Joe just bought a new car a few weeks ago, and now he's buying a new car for his sister. Joe _____ must ______ earn a lot of money.

2. I offered Holly something to eat, but she doesn’t want anything. She _____ must not ______ be hungry.

3. My uncle has been working in the hot sun for hours. He’s soaked with perspiration. He _____ must be thirsty.

4. A: Erica’s really bright. She always gets above ninety-five percent (95%) on her math tests.
   B: I’m sure she’s bright, but she _____ must not ______ also study a lot.

5. A: Fido? What’s wrong, old boy?
   B: What’s the matter with the dog?
   A: He won’t eat. He _____ must not ______ feel well.

6. A: I’ve called the bank three times, but no one answers the phone. The bank _____ must be open today.
   B: It isn’t. Today’s a holiday, remember?
   A: Oh, of course!

   B: Mr. Silverberg _____ must be doing his morning exercises. The same thing happens every morning. Don’t worry about it.
PRACTICE 21—GUIDED STUDY: Making logical conclusions. (Chart 5-10)

Directions: Make a logical conclusion about each of the following situations. Use MUST.

Example: Emily is crying.
Response: She must be unhappy.

1. Debbie has a big smile on her face.
2. Steve is coughing and sneezing.
3. Rick is wearing a gold ring on the fourth finger of his left hand.
4. Sam is shivering.
5. Matt just bought three mouse traps.
6. Kate just bought a box of floppy disks.
7. James is sweating.
8. Robert never hands in his homework on time.
9. Rita rents ten movies every week.
10. Marilyn always gets the highest score on every test her class takes.
11. Brian can lift one end of a compact car by himself.

PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: Imperative sentences. (Chart 5-11)

Directions: Pretend that someone says the following sentences to you. Which verbs give you instructions? Underline the IMPERATIVE VERBS.

1. I'll be right back. Wait here.
2. Don't wait for Rebecca. She's not going to come with us.
3. Read pages thirty-nine to fifty-five before class tomorrow.
4. What are you doing? Don't put those magazines in the trash. I haven't read them yet.
5. Come in and have a seat. I'll be right with you.
6. Don't cross this field unless you can do it in 9.9 seconds. The bull can do it in 10. (Not trespassing)
7. Don’t just stand there! Do something!

8. A: Call me around eight, okay?
   B: Okay.

9. Here, little Mike. Take this apple to Daddy. That’s good. Go ahead. Walk toward Daddy. That’s great! Now give him the apple. Wonderful!

10. Capitalize the first word of each sentence. Put a period at the end of a sentence. If the sentence is a question, use a question mark at the end.

◊ PRACTICE 23—GUIDED STUDY: Imperative sentences. (Chart 5–11)

Directions: Pretend that someone says the following sentences to you. Which verbs give you instructions? Underline the IMPERATIVE VERBS.

1. Here’s a number puzzle:
   - Write down the number of the month you were born. (For example, write “2” if you were born in February. Write “3” if you were born in March.)
   - Double it.
   - Add 5.
   - Multiply by 50.
   - Add your age.
   - Subtract 250.
   - In the final number, the last two digits on the right will be your age, and the one or two digits on the left will be the month you were born. (Try it! It works.)

2. Here are some ways to handle stress in your life:
   - Get daily physical exercise.
   - Manage your time efficiently. Don’t overload your daily schedule.
   - Take time for yourself. Learn to relax. Read, reflect, listen to music, or just do nothing for a period every day.
   - Don’t waste time worrying about things you can’t change. Recognize the things that you can’t change and accept them.

◊ PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Making suggestions with let’s and why don’t. (Chart 5–12)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using verbs from the list. The verbs may be used more than once.

`ask  fly  pick up  see`
`call  get  play  stop`
`fill up  go  save  take`

1. A: There’s a strong wind today. Let’s ___go___ to the top of the hill on Cascade Avenue and ___fly___ our kite.
   B: Sounds like fun. Why don’t we ___see___ if Louie wants to come with us?
   A: Okay. I’ll call him.
2. A: What should we buy Mom for her birthday?
   B: I don’t know. Let’s ____________ her some perfume or something.
   A: I have a better idea. Why don’t we ____________ her out for dinner and a movie?
3. A: My toe hurts. Let’s not ____________ dancing tonight.
   B: Okay. Why don’t we ____________ chess instead?
4. A: Let’s ____________ a taxi from the airport to the hotel.
   B: Why don’t we ____________ a bus and ____________ ourselves some money?
5. A: We’re almost out of gas. Why don’t we ____________ at a gas station and ____________ before we drive the rest of the way to the beach?
   B: Okay. Are you hungry? I am. Let’s ____________ some hamburgers, too.
   A: Great.
6. A: Let’s ____________ to a movie at the mall tonight.
   B: I’ve already seen all the good movies there. What else can we do?
   A: Well, Marika has a car. Why don’t we ____________ her and ____________ if she wants to drive us into the city to an ice hockey game?
   B: Okay. What’s her number?

◊ PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY: Making suggestions with why don’t you. (Chart 5–12)

Directions: Make suggestions using WHY DON’T YOU. STUDENT A should state the problem, and then others should offer suggestions.

Example: I’m at a restaurant with some business clients. I left my wallet at home. I don’t have enough money to pay the bill. What am I going to do?

STUDENT A: Okay, here’s the situation. I’m at a restaurant with some business customers. I sell computer parts. I need these customers. I need to impress my clients. I have to pay for dinner, but I left my wallet at home. I don’t have enough money to pay the bill. I’m really embarrassed. What am I going to do?

STUDENT B: Why don’t you call your office and ask someone to bring you some money?
STUDENT C: Why don’t you borrow the money from one of your customers?
STUDENT D: Why don’t you excuse yourself and go home to get your wallet?
STUDENT E: Why don’t you have a private discussion with the manager? Arrange to pay the bill later.

1. I feel like doing something interesting and fun tonight. Any suggestions?
2. I need regular physical exercise. What would you suggest?
3. My pants keep slipping down! I’m always pulling them up.
4. An important assignment is due in Professor Black’s history class today. I haven’t done it. Class starts in an hour. What am I going to do?
5. I’ve lost the key to my apartment, so I can’t get in. My roommate isn’t home. He’s at a concert. What am I going to do?
6. My friend and I had an argument. We stopped talking to each other. Now I’m sorry about the argument. I want to be friends again. What should I do?
7. I work hard all day long every day. I never take time to relax and enjoy myself. I need some recreation in my life. What do you think I should do?
8. I’m trying to learn English, but I’m making slow progress. What can I do to learn English faster?
PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Stating preferences. (Chart 5–13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with PREFER, LIKE, or WOULD RATHER.

1. I ___________ prefer cold weather to hot weather.
2. A: What’s your favorite fruit?
   B: I ___________ like strawberries better than any other fruit.
3. Mary ___________ would rather save money than enjoy herself.
4. Unfortunately, many children ___________ candy to vegetables.
5. A: Why isn’t your brother going with us to the movie?
   B: He ___________ stay home and read than go out on a Saturday night.
6. A: Does Peter ___________ football to baseball?
   B: No. I think he ___________ baseball better than football.
   A: Then, why didn’t he go to the game yesterday?
   B: Because he ___________ watch sports on TV than go to a ball park.
7. I ___________ jog in the morning than after work.
8. Heidi enjoys her independence. She is struggling to start her own business, but she ___________ borrow money from the bank than ask her parents for help.
9. A: Do you want to go to the Japanese restaurant for dinner?
   B: That would be okay, but in truth I ___________ Chinese food to Japanese food.
   A: Really? I ___________ Japanese food better than Chinese food. What shall we do?
   B: Let’s go to the Italian restaurant.
10. A: Mother, I can’t believe you have another cat! Now you have four cats, two dogs, and three birds.
    B: I know, dear. I can’t help it. I love having animals around.
    A: Honestly, Mother, I sometimes think you ___________ animals to people.
    B: Honestly, dear, sometimes I do.

PRACTICE 27—GUIDED STUDY: Stating preferences. (Chart 5–13)

Directions: Give a sentence with the same meaning, using the word(s) in parentheses.

Example: Alex would rather swim than jog. (prefer)
Response: Alex prefers swimming to jogging.

Example: My son likes fish better than beef. (would rather)
Response: My son would rather eat/have fish than beef.

1. Kim likes salad better than dessert. (prefer)
2. In general, Nicole would rather have coffee than tea. (like)
3. Bill prefers teaching history to working as a business executive. (would rather)
4. When considering a pet, Sam prefers dogs to cats. (like)
5. On a long trip, Susie would rather drive than ride in the back seat. *(prefer)*
6. I like studying in a noisy room better than studying in a completely quiet room. *(would rather)*
7. Alex likes music better than sports. *(would rather)*

◇ PRACTICE 28—SELFSTUDY: Cumulative review. (Charts 5–1 → 5–13)

Directions: Each of the following has a short dialogue. Try to imagine a situation in which the dialogue could take place, and then choose the best completion.

Example:
"My horse is sick."
"Oh? What’s the matter? You **B** call the vet."
A. will B. had better C. may

1. "Does this pen belong to you?"
   "No. It ____ be Susan’s. She was sitting at that desk."
   A. must B. will C. had better

2. "I need the milk. ____ you get it out of the refrigerator for me?"
   "Sure."
   A. May B. Should C. Could

3. "Let’s go to a movie this evening."
   "That sounds like fun, but I can’t. I ____ finish a report before I go to bed tonight."
   A. have got to B. would rather C. ought to

4. "Hey, Ted. What’s up with Ken? Is he upset about something?"
   "He’s angry because you recommended Ann instead of him for the promotion. You ____ sit down with him and try to explain your reasons. At least that’s what I think."
   A. should B. will C. can

5. "Does Tom want to go with us to the film festival tonight?"
   "No. He ____ go to the wrestling match than the film festival."
   A. could B. would rather C. prefers

6. "I did it! I did it! I got my driver’s license!"
   "Congratulations, Michelle. I’m really proud of you."
   "Thanks, Dad. Now ____ I have the car tonight? Please, please!"
   A. will B. should C. may

7. "I just tripped on your carpet and almost fell! There’s a hole in it. You ____ fix that before someone gets hurt."
   "Yes, Uncle Ben. I should. I will. I’m sorry. Are you all right?"
   A. can B. ought to C. may

8. "Are you going to the conference in Atlanta next month?"
   "I _____. It’s sort of ‘iffy’ right now. I’ve applied for travel money, but who knows what my supervisor will do."
   A. will B. have to C. might

9. "What shall we do after the meeting this evening?"
   "____ pick Jan up and all go out to dinner together."
   A. Why don’t B. Let’s C. Should

10. "There’s a mistake in this report."
    "Really? You ____ tell Erica before she gives it to Ms. Allen."
    A. had better B. may C. would rather

Modal Auxiliaries ◇ 99
11. “Have you seen my denim jacket? I _____ find it.”  
   “Look in the hall closet.”  
   A. may not  
   B. won’t  
   C. can’t  

12. “____ you hand me that book, please? I can’t reach it.”  
   “Sure. Here it is.”  
   A. Would  
   B. Should  
   C. Must  

13. “Bye, Mom! I’m going to go play soccer with my friends.”  
   “Wait a minute, young man! You _____ do your chores first.”  
   A. must not  
   B. must  
   C. would rather  

14. “What do you like the most about your promotion?”  
   “I _____ get up at 5:30 in the morning anymore. I can sleep until 7:00.”  
   A. must not  
   B. would rather  
   C. don’t have to  

15. “Do you think that Scott will quit his job?”  
   “I don’t know. He _____ He’s very angry. We’ll just have to wait and see.”  
   A. must not  
   B. may  
   C. will  

◊ PRACTICE 29—GUIDED STUDY: Cumulative review. (Charts 5–1 → 5–13)  

Directions: Each of the following has a short dialogue. Try to imagine a situation in which the dialogue could take place, and then choose the best completion.  

Example:  
“My horse is sick.”  
“Oh? What’s the matter? You _____ call the vet.”  
A. will  
B. had better  
C. may  

1. “Do you have a minute? I need to talk to you.”  
   “I _____ leave here in ten minutes. Can we make an appointment for another time?”  
   A. have to  
   B. could  
   C. may  

2. “Yes? _____ I help you?”  
   “Yes. Do you have these sandals in a size eight?”  
   A. Should  
   B. Can  
   C. Will  

3. “Let’s go bowling Saturday afternoon.”  
   “Bowling? I _____ play golf than go bowling.”  
   A. had better  
   B. should  
   C. would rather  

   “This is my bathrobe, not a towel.”  
   A. don’t have to  
   B. must not  
   C. couldn’t  

5. “I heard that Bill was seriously ill.”  
   “Really? Well, he _____ be sick anymore. He just left for New York on a business trip.”  
   A. won’t  
   B. must  
   C. must not  

6. “Dianne found a library book on a bench at Central Park. Someone had left it there.”  
   “She _____ take it to any library in the city. I’m sure they’ll be glad to have it back.”  
   A. will  
   B. should  
   C. would rather  

7. “Do you understand how this computer program works?”  
   “Sort of, but not really. _____ you explain it to me one more time? Thanks.”  
   A. Could  
   B. Should  
   C. Must  

8. “Did you climb to the top of the Statue of Liberty when you were in New York?”  
   “No, I didn’t. My knee was very sore, so I _____ climb all those stairs.”  
   A. couldn’t  
   B. might not  
   C. must not
9. "Rick, ____ you work for me this evening? I'll take your shift tomorrow."
   "Sure. I was going to ask you to work for me tomorrow anyway."
   A. would  B. should  C. must

10. "Beth got another speeding ticket yesterday."
    "Oh? That's not good. She ____ be more careful. She'll end up in serious trouble if she gets
    any more."
    A. would rather  B. will  C. ought to

11. "Are you going to take the job transfer when the company moves out of town?"
    "I ____ accept their offer if they are willing to pay all of my moving expenses."
    A. must not  B. might  C. maybe

12. "How are we going to take care of your little brother and go to the concert at the same time?"
    "I have an idea. ____ we take him with us?"
    A. Why don't  B. Let's  C. Will

13. "Are you going to admit your mistake to the boss?"
    "Yes. I ____ tell her about it than have her hear about it from someone else."
    A. can  B. should  C. would rather

14. "Meet me at Tony's at five. Please! I ____ talk to you. It's important."
    "Is something wrong?"
    A. could  B. will  C. have got to

15. "What are you children doing? Stop! You ____ play with sharp knives."
    "What?"
    A. mustn't  B. couldn't  C. don't have to

◇ PRACTICE 30—GUIDED STUDY: Review of auxiliary verbs. (Chapters 1 → 5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate auxiliary verb in the list. There may be
more than one possible completion. Also include any words in parentheses.

List of auxiliary verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>should</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>had better</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>has to</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>have to</td>
<td>ought to</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: Hello?
   B: Hello. This is Gisella Milazzo. __May (Could/Can)__ I speak with Ms. Morgan, please?

2. A: Where's the newspaper?
   B: I (not) __don't__ have it. Ask Kevin.

3. A: ________________ you rather go downtown today or tomorrow?
   B: Tomorrow.

4. A: ________________ Nick going to be at the meeting tomorrow?
   B: I hope so.

5. A: ________________ you talk to Amanda yesterday?
   B: Yes. Why?

6. A: ________________ I help you, sir?
   B: Yes. ________________ you show me the third watch from the left on the top shelf?
   A: Of course.
7. A: I’m sorry. _______________ you repeat that? I couldn’t hear you because my dog _______________ barking.
   B: I said, “Why is your dog making all that noise?”
8. A: I don’t know whether to turn left or right at the next intersection.
   B: I think you _______________ pull over and look at the map.
   B: I _______________ hurrying!
10. A: Andy can’t teach his class tonight.
    B: He _______________ teach tonight! He’ll be fired if he doesn’t show up.
11. A: Stop! (not) _______________ touch that pan! It’s hot! You’ll burn yourself.
    B: Relax. I had no intention of touching it.
12. A: What _______________ you carrying? _______________ you want some help?
    B: It’s a heavy box of books. _______________ you open the door for me, please?
13. A: Hello?
    B: Hello. _______________ I please speak to Sandra Wilson?
    A: I’m sorry. There’s no one here by that name. You _______________ have the wrong number.
    B: Really? I didn’t know that.
A: Everyone __________________ work toward cleaning up the environment.

B: I agree. Life on earth (not) __________________ survive if we continue to poison the

land, water, and air.

◊ PRACTICE 31—GUIDED STUDY: Cumulative review. (Chapter 5)

Directions: Following is a passage for you to read. The topic is the process of writing a composition. Read the passage through completely to get the main ideas. Then read it again slowly and choose from the words in italics. Which completions seem best to you? Why? Discuss your choices.

Writing a Composition

(1) "What? Not another composition! I hate writing compositions. I’m not good at it." Do you ever complain about having to write compositions in English class? A lot of students do. You may, cannot find it difficult and time-consuming, but you are learning a useful skill. The ability to write clearly is, must be important. It can, must affect your success in school and in your job. You may, can learn to write effectively by practicing. Preparing compositions is one of the best ways to learn the skill of writing clearly.

(2) The first step in writing a composition is to choose a subject that interests you. You maybe, should write about a subject you already know about or can, have to find out about through research. Writers might, should never pretend to be experts. For example, if you have never bought a car and are not knowledgeable about automobiles, you should, should not choose to write an essay on what to look for when buying a used car—unless, of course, you plan to research the subject in books and magazines and make yourself an expert. There is one topic about which you are the most knowledgeable expert in the world, and that topic is, will be yourself and your experiences. Many of the most interesting and informative compositions are based simply on a writer’s personal experience and observations. The questions you should ask yourself when choosing a topic are "Do I have any expertise in this subject?" and if not, "Will, Can I be able to find information about this subject?"

(3) After you have a topic and have researched it if necessary, start writing down your thoughts. These notes must not, do not have to be in any particular order. You do not have to, could not worry about grammar at this time. You can, may pay special attention to that later.
Next you have to organize your thoughts. You cannot, might not say everything possible about a subject in one composition. Therefore, you may, must carefully choose the ideas and information you want to include. Look over your notes, think hard about your topic, and find a central idea. Answer these questions: “What am, do I want my readers to understand? What is, does my main idea? How can, must I put this idea into one sentence?” Good writing depends on clear thinking. Writers should, should not spend more time thinking than actually writing. After you have a clearly formed main idea, choose relevant information from your notes to include in your composition.

Before you begin to write the actual composition, you ought to, can know exactly what you want to say and how you are going to develop your ideas. Many good writers prepare, prepared an outline before they start. An outline is like a road map to keep you headed toward your destination without getting lost or sidetracked.

There are, ought to be many ways to begin a composition. For example, you might, must begin with a story that leads up to your main idea. Or you may, ought to start with a question that you want your reader to think about and then suggest an answer. Maybe, May be you could, have to introduce your topic by defining a key word. Simply presenting interesting factual information is, will be another common way of beginning a composition. Your goals in your first paragraph is, are to catch your reader’s attention and then state your main idea clearly and concisely. By the end of the first paragraph, your reader may, should understand what you are going to cover in the composition.

If possible, write the entire first draft of your composition in a single sitting. After you have a first draft, the next step is rewriting. Every composition could, should go through several drafts. Rewriting is a natural part of the process of writing. You will, do not have to find many things that you can change, changed and improve when you reread your first draft. As you revise, you will, should be careful to include connecting words such as then, next, for example, after, and therefore. These words connect one idea to another so that your reader will not get lost. Also pay attention to grammar, punctuation, and spelling as you revise and rewrite. Your dictionary should, can be next to you.

Writing is, may be a skill. It improves as you gain experience with the process of choosing a subject, jotting down thoughts, organizing them into a first draft, and then rewriting and polishing. At the end of this process, you should, should not have a clear and well-written composition.

◊ PRACTICE 32—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 5; Appendix 1)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition.

1. A: Why are you so friendly with/to George? I thought you didn’t like him.

   B: I’m not crazy _________ his attitude toward his work, but I have to encourage him to do the best he can.
2. A: Do you think it’s bad that I drink so much coffee every day?
   B: I believe too much of almost anything is bad ________ you.
3. I don’t know why they fired me. It certainly isn’t clear ________ me.
4. A: Dad, I got ninety-five percent on my algebra exam!
   B: I’m proud ________ you. I knew you could do it.
5. A: You seem to be interested ________ aerobic exercise and jogging.
   B: I think regular physical exercise is good ________ everyone.
6. That sweater is very similar ________ mine. Did you buy it at the mall?
7. Most children are afraid ________ noises in the middle of the night.
8. A: You were up awfully late last night.
   B: I couldn’t sleep. I was hungry ________ something sweet, and I couldn’t find anything
   in the kitchen.
9. I have no doubt that I’m doing the right thing. I’m sure ________ it.
10. George Gershwin, an American composer, is most famous ________ Rhapsody in Blue, an
    orchestral piece that combines jazz with classical music.
11. A: Why is Gary avoiding you? Is he angry about something?
    B: I don’t know. I’m not aware ________ anything I did that could upset him.
12. A: Who is responsible ________ this dog? He’s chewing on my desk!
    B: I’m sorry, sir. She followed me from home. I’ll take her outside.
13. My car is a lot like yours, but different ________ Margaret’s.
Directions: In the following, pretend that you are interviewing a member of your class named Anna. Write your name in line (1), and then complete the dialogue with appropriate QUESTIONS.

(1) ME: Hi. My name is _______________. Our teacher has asked me to interview you so that I can practice asking questions. Could I ask you a few questions about yourself?
   ANNA: Sure.

(2) ME: Well, first of all, ____________ your name?
   ANNA: Anna.

(3) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Yes, that’s my first name.

(4) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Polanski.

(5) ME: ____________
   ME: Let me make sure I have that right. Your first name is Anna, A-N-N-A. And your last name is Polanski, P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I. Right?
   ANNA: That’s right.

(6) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Poland.

(7) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Warsaw.

(8) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Two weeks ago.

(9) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Because I wanted to study at this school.

(10) ME: ____________
   ANNA: Biochemistry.

(11) ME: ____________
   ANNA: I’m going to stay here for four years or until I graduate.

(12) ME: ____________
   ANNA: I’m living at my aunt and uncle’s house.
(13) ME: __________________________
ANNA: No. Not far.

(14) ME: __________________________
ANNA: Six blocks.

(15) ME: __________________________
ANNA: Sometimes I take the bus, but usually I walk.

(16) ME: You're lucky. I live far away from the school, so it takes me a long time to get here every morning. But that's my only big complaint about living here. Otherwise, I like going to this school a lot. __________________________
ANNA: Very much.
ME: Well, thanks for the interview. I think I have enough information for the assignment. Nice to meet you.
ANNA: Nice to meet you, too.

◊ PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 6–1 and 6–2)

Directions: Complete Speaker A’s QUESTIONS with DO, DOES, IS, or ARE. Complete Speaker B’s SHORT ANSWERS.

1. A: I need a flashlight. Do you have one?
   B: No, I don’t.

2. A: ________ Alaska in North America?
   B: Yes, ________________.

3. A: ________ snakes have legs?
   B: No, ________________.

4. A: ________ you going to be in class tomorrow?
   B: Yes, ________________.

5. A: ________ aspirin relieve pain?
   B: Yes, ________________.

6. A: ________ all snakebites poisonous?
   B: No, ________________.

7. A: ________ crocodiles lay eggs?
   B: Yes, ________________.

8. A: ________ you doing a grammar exercise?
   B: Yes, ________________.

9. A: ________ Africa the largest continent?
   B: No, ________________. Asia is.

10. A: ________ ants eat other insects?
    B: Yes, ________________.

11. A: Mercury is a liquid metal used in thermometers. ________ mercury have a boiling point?
    B: Yes, ________________. It boils at 356.58°C.
**PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY:** Yes/no questions. (Chapters 1, 2, 3, 5, and Chart 6-1)*

Directions: Write the correct QUESTION FORM. The answer to the question is in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Helping Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <strong>SIMPLE PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, I like coffee.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong> Do you like coffee?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <strong>SIMPLE PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Tom likes coffee.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Ann is watching TV.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, I'm having lunch with Rob.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <strong>SIMPLE PAST</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Sara walked to school.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Ann was taking a nap.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <strong>SIMPLE FUTURE</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Ted will come to the meeting.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <strong>MODAL: CAN</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Rita can ride a bicycle.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <strong>MAIN VERB BE SIMPLE PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, Ann is a good artist.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <strong>MAIN VERB BE SIMPLE PAST</strong></td>
<td><strong>A:</strong> Yes, I was at the wedding.</td>
<td><strong>B:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Question forms of tenses and modals can be found in the following charts:
Simple present and present progressive: Chart 1–2
Simple past: Chart 2–2
Past progressive: Chart 2–7
Simple future (will): Chart 3–2
Modal can: Chart 5–2
PRACTICE 4—GUIDED STUDY: Yes/no questions. (Charts 6-1 and 6-2)

Directions: Write dialogues between Speakers A and B. Make up QUESTIONS that will fit with the given idea in B’s answer.

Example: B: No, I ______. I’m allergic to them.
Written:  
A: Do you like cats (dogs/strawberries/etc.)?  
B: No, I don’t. I’m allergic to them.

Example: B: Yes, we ______. Would you like to come along with us?
Written: A: Are you and Yoko going to the festival Saturday?  
B: Yes, we are. Would you like to come along with us?

1. B: No, she ______. It was too expensive.  
2. B: Yes, he ______. Yesterday.  
7. B: Yes, I ______. What about you?
3. B: No, I ______. I forgot.  
8. B: Maybe. Let me think about it.
4. B: Yes, we ______. It was delicious.  
5. B: Yes, they ______. Don’t worry.  
10. B: Sure. Sounds like a good idea to me.

PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Yes/no and information questions. (Charts 6-1 and 6-2)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing Speaker A’s QUESTION. Write Ø if no word is needed in a space.

1. A: Ø Did you hear the news yesterday?  
   B: Yes, I did. (I heard the news yesterday.)

2. A: When did you hear the news?  
   B: Yesterday. (I heard the news yesterday.)

3. A: Ø  
   B: Yes, he is. (Eric is reading today’s paper.)

4. A: Ø  
   B: Today’s paper. (Eric is reading today’s paper.)

5. A: Ø  
   B: Yes, I did. (I found my wallet.)

6. A: Ø  
   B: On the floor of the car. (I found my wallet on the floor of the car.)

7. A: Ø  
   B: Because he enjoys the exercise. (Mr. Li walks to work because he enjoys the exercise.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(question word)</th>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8. A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, he does. (Mr. Li walks to work.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, she will. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o’clock.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At one o’clock. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o’clock.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, it is. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In the refrigerator. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Information questions. (Charts 6-1 and 6-2)**

Directions: Make questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses. Use **WHEN, WHAT TIME, WHERE, or WHY.** Pay special attention to the word order in the questions.

1. A: **What time (When) do the fireworks start** this evening?
   B: 9:30. (The fireworks start at 9:30 this evening.)

2. A: **Why** to see the principal?
   B: Because I need to get his signature on this application form. (I’m waiting to see the principal because I need to get his signature on this application form.)

3. A: **When** her new job?
   B: Next Monday morning. (Rachel starts her new job next Monday morning.)

4. A: **When** home for work?
   B: Around 6:00. (I usually leave home for work around 6:00.)

5. A: **Why** to the meeting?
   B: Because I fell asleep after dinner and didn’t wake up until 9:00. (I didn’t get to the meeting because I fell asleep after dinner and didn’t wake up until 9:00.)

6. A: **Where** razor blades?
   B: At many different kinds of stores. (You can buy razor blades at many different kinds of stores.)

7. A: **When** for home?
   B: Next Saturday. (I’m leaving for home next Saturday.)

8. A: **Where** Chinese?
   B: In Germany. (I studied Chinese in Germany.)
   A: **Why** Chinese in Germany?
   B: Because there is a good Chinese language school there. (I studied Chinese in Germany because there is a good Chinese language school there.)
   A: **Why** to China to study Chinese?
   B: Because I had a scholarship to study in Germany. (I didn’t go to China to study Chinese because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.)
9. A: ___________ to finish this project?
B: Next month. (I expect to finish this project next month.)

10. A: ___________?
B: To Mars. (The spaceship will go to Mars.)

◊ PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Yes/no and information questions. (Charts 6-1 and 6-2)

Directions: Create dialogues between Speakers A and B. In each dialogue:
A: asks a QUESTION.
B: gives the SHORT ANSWER that is given below, and then gives a LONG ANSWER.

Example: After midnight.
Dialogue: A: What time did you go to bed last night?
B: After midnight. I went to bed after midnight last night.

1. The day before yesterday.
2. Yes, I do.
3. Because I had to.
4. At 8:30.
5. Yes, he is.
6. In a supermarket.
7. Tomorrow afternoon.
8. A notebook.
9. No, I can’t.
10. Because . . .
11. Yeah, sure. Why not?
12. I don’t know. Maybe.

◊ PRACTICE 8—GUIDED STUDY: Asking for the meaning of a word. (Charts 6-2 and 6-3)

Directions: Ask your classmates for the meaning of the italicized word in each sentence below. If no one knows the meaning, look it up in a dictionary.

PART I: Ask questions using “What does . . . mean?”
1. Captain Cook explored many islands in the Pacific Ocean.
   STUDENT A: What does “explored” mean?
   STUDENT B: “Explored” means “went to a new place and found out about it.”
   OR:
   STUDENT A: What does “explore” mean?
   STUDENT B: “Explore” means “(to) go to a new place and find out about it.”*
2. I think Carol’s mad.
   STUDENT A: What does “mad” mean?
   STUDENT B: “Mad” can mean “crazy” or “angry.”
3. Water is essential to all forms of life on earth.
4. Why do soap bubbles float?
5. The water on the streets and sidewalks evaporated in the morning sun.
6. It’s raining. Perhaps we should take a taxi.
7. Some fish bury themselves in the sand on the ocean bottom and live their entire lives there.
8. He gently put his hand beneath the baby’s head.
9. I grabbed my briefcase and started running for the bus.
10. On the average, how many times a minute do people blink?

*Sometimes the infinitive form (to + verb) is used in definitions of verbs: “to explore” means “to go to a new place and find out about it.”
**PART II:** Ask for the meaning of nouns.

11. We walked hand in hand through the orchard.
   STUDENT A: **What is** an orchard?
   STUDENT B: An orchard is a place where fruit trees grow.
   OR:
   STUDENT A: **What does** “orchard” **mean?**
   STUDENT B: “Orchard” means “a place where fruit trees grow.”

12. Sometimes children have nightmares.
   STUDENT A: **What are** nightmares?
   STUDENT B: Nightmares are very bad dreams.
   OR:
   STUDENT A: **What does** “nightmare(s)” **mean?**
   STUDENT B: “Nightmare(s)” means “very bad dream(s).”

13. Would you like to see the photographs from our vacation?

14. While we were eating at the outdoor restaurant, I noticed a bug in my soup.

15. Mrs. Hall often wears pearls.

16. My daughter is at the university. She wants to be an archaeologist.

17. People throughout the world enjoy fables.

18. Mark and Olivia went to Hawaii on their honeymoon.

19. The margins on your composition should be at least one inch wide.*

20. I’m not very good at small talk, so I avoid social situations like cocktail parties.

21. If you want to use a computer, you have to learn the keyboard.

22. Mr. Weatherbee liked to have hedges between his house and his neighbors’ houses. He planted the bushes close together so that people couldn’t see through them.

◊ **PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY:** Questions with why. *(Chart 6–2)*

**Directions:** Create dialogues between Speakers A and B. In each dialogue:
A: says the sentence in the book.
B: asks WHY? or WHY NOT? and then asks the full why-question.
A: makes up an answer to the question.

**Example:**
A: I can’t go with you tomorrow.
**Dialogue:**
A: I can’t go with you tomorrow.
   B: Why? Why can’t you go with me tomorrow?
   A: Because I have to study for a test.**

1. A: I ate two breakfasts this morning.
2. A: I don’t like to ride on airplanes.
3. A: I’m going to sell my guitar.
4. A: I didn’t go to bed last night.
5. A: I’m happy today.
6. A: I had to call the police last night.
7. A: I can’t explain it to you.
8. A: I’m not speaking to my cousin.

*One inch = approximately two and a half centimeters.

**See Chart 9–6 for the use of because. “Because I have to study for a test” is an adverb clause. It is not a complete sentence. In this dialogue, it is the short answer to a question.
PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Questions with who, who(m), and what. (Chart 6–3)

Directions: Make questions with WHO, WHO(M), and WHAT. Write “S” if the question word is the subject. Write “O” if the question word is the object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Who (m) did you ask?</td>
<td>I asked someone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Someone will help us.</td>
<td>I will ask someone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Eric is talking to someone on the phone.</td>
<td>Someone is knocking on the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Something surprised them.</td>
<td>Something will change Ann’s mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Something will change Ann’s mind.</td>
<td>Mike learned something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Tina can talk about something.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Who, who(m), and what. (Chart 6–3)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by making QUESTIONS. Use the information in the long answer in parentheses to make the question.

1. A: **Who taught you to play chess?**
   B: My mother. (My mother taught me to play chess.)

2. A: ____________________________________________
   B: A bank robbery. (Robert saw a bank robbery.)

3. A: ____________________________________________
   B: Robert did. (Robert got a good look at the bank robber.)

4. A: ____________________________________________
   B: A toy for my brother’s children. (I’m making a toy for my brother’s children.)

5. A: ____________________________________________
   B: Joe. (That calculator belongs to Joe.)

6. A: ____________________________________________
   B: A bag of candy. (I have a bag of candy in my pocket.)

7. A: ____________________________________________
   B: A mouse. (The cat killed a mouse.)

8. A: ____________________________________________
   B: Curiosity. (Curiosity killed the cat.)*

*Curiosity is the desire to learn about something. “Curiosity killed the cat” is an English saying that means we can get into trouble when we want to know too much about something that doesn’t really concern us.
9. A: _____________________________________________
   B: My father. (I got a letter from my father.)

10. A: ___________________________________________
    B: My sister. (My sister wrote a note on the envelope.)

11. A: ___________________________________________
    B: Gravity. (Gravity makes an apple fall to the ground from a tree.)

◇ PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: What + a form of do. (Chart 6–4)

Directions: Use the information in parentheses to make QUESTIONS with WHAT + A FORM OF DO to complete each dialogue. Use the SAME VERB TENSE OR MODAL that is used in the parentheses.

1. A: **What is Alex doing?**
   B: Watching a movie on TV. (Alex is watching a movie on TV.)

2. A: **What should I do if someone calls while you’re out?**
   B: Just take a message. (You should take a message if someone calls while I’m out.)

3. A: ___________________________________________
   B: They explore space. (Astronauts explore space.)

4. A: I spilled some juice on the floor. ___________________________________________
   B: Wipe it up with a paper towel. (You should wipe it up with a paper towel.)

5. A: ___________________________________________
   B: Play tennis at Waterfall Park. (I’m going to play tennis at Waterfall Park Saturday morning.)

6. A: ___________________________________________
   B: I see my doctor. (I see my doctor when I get sick.)

7. A: ___________________________________________
   B: Carry this suitcase. (You can carry this suitcase to help me.)

8. A: ___________________________________________
   B: She smiled. (Sara smiled when she heard the good news.)
Directions: Use the information in parentheses to make questions with **WHAT + A FORM OF DO** to complete each dialogue. Use the **SAME VERB TENSE OR MODAL** that is used in the parentheses.

1. A: ______________________
   B: I think she plans to look for a job in hotel management. (Emily is going to look for a job in hotel management after she graduates.)

2. A: ______________________
   B: Can you make twelve photocopies of this report? (You can make twelve photocopies of this report to help me get ready for the meeting.)

3. A: ______________________
   B: Ran down the stairs and out of the building. (I ran down the stairs and out of the building when the fire alarm sounded.)

4. A: ______________________
   B: Let's go to the shopping mall, okay? (I would like to go to the shopping mall after school today.)

5. A: ______________________
   B: Make this coin stand on edge. (I'm trying to make this coin stand on edge.)

6. A: ______________________
   B: He needs to hand in all of his homework. (Kevin needs to hand in all of his homework if he wants to pass advanced algebra.)

7. A: ______________________
   B: He's an airplane mechanic. (Nick repairs airplanes for a living.)

8. A: Did you say something to that man over there? Why does he look angry?
   B: I accidentally ran into him and stepped on his foot.

   A: ______________________
   B: Said something nasty. (He said something nasty when I bumped into him.)

   A: ______________________
   B: Apologized. (I apologized.)

   A: ______________________
   B: Walked away without saying a word. (Then he walked away without saying a word.)

   A: What an unpleasant person!
   B: I didn't mean to step on his foot. It was just an accident.

Directions: Create dialogues between Speakers A and B. Speaker A should ask a question that will produce B's given answer. The question should contain **WHAT + A FORM OF DO**.

**Example:** B: Study in the corner of the cafeteria.

**Dialogue:** A: What are you going to do after class today?
   B: Study in the corner of the cafeteria.

   1. B: Watch TV.
   2. B: Washing his dog.
   4. B: Writing dialogues.
   5. B: Go to a movie.
PRACTICE 15—GUIDED STUDY: What kind of. (Chart 6–5)

Directions: Find people who own the following things. Ask them questions using WHAT KIND OF.

Example: a camera
First, ask a classmate, friend, or family member: Do you have a camera?
If the answer is yes, ask next: What kind of camera do you have?*
Then write the information you have gotten, for example:
Maria has a 35 millimeter Kodak camera.

1. a camera 6. a computer
2. a TV 7. a watch
3. a bicycle 8. a dog
4. a car 9. a VCR
5. a refrigerator 10. ???

PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Which vs. what. (Chart 6–6)

Directions: Complete the questions with WHICH or WHAT.

1. A: This hat comes in brown and in gray. Which color do you think your husband would prefer?
   B: Gray, I think.
2. A: I've never been to Mrs. Hall's house. What color is it?
   B: Gray.
3. A: I have two dictionaries. Which one do you want?
   B: The Arabic–English dictionary.
4. A: Yes, may I help you?
   B: Please.
   A: What are you looking for?
   B: An Arabic–English dictionary.
   A: Right over there in the reference section.
   B: Thanks.
5. A: How many languages do you speak other than your native language?
   B: Italian and English.
   A: Which of those two languages do you speak more fluently?
   B: English.
6. A: How did you get on your last test?
   B: I don't want to tell you. It was really awful.
7. A: What job do you think I should take?
   B: The one at the small computer company. That's the best of the three job offers you've had.
8. A: Here's the remote control if you want to watch TV for a while.
   B: Thanks, I think I will.
   A: Push this button to turn it on.
   B: Okay. And which button should I push to change channels?

*If the answer is no, ask another question from the list.
PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY:  Who vs. whose. (Chart 6–7)

Directions: Complete the questions with WHO or WHOSE.

1. A: ____________ is driving to the game tonight?
   B: Heidi is.

2. A: ____________ car are we taking to the game?
   B: Heidi’s.

3. A: This notebook is mine. ____________ is that? Is it yours?
   B: No, it’s Sara’s.

4. A: There’s Ms. Adams. ____________ is standing next to her?
   B: Mr. Wilson.

5. A: ____________ was the first woman doctor in the United States?
   B: Elizabeth Blackwell, in 1849.

6. A: ____________ suitcase did you borrow for your trip?
   B: Andy’s.

7. A: ____________ motorcycle ran into the telephone pole?
   B: Bill’s.

8. A: Okay! ____________ forgot to put the ice cream back in the freezer?
   B: I don’t know. Don’t look at me. It wasn’t me.

PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Asking questions. (Charts 6–1 → 6–7)

Directions: Pair up with a classmate.

STUDENT A: Choose any one of the possible answers below and ask a question that would produce that answer.

STUDENT B: Decide which of the answers STUDENT A has in mind and answer his/her question.
   Pay special attention to the form of STUDENT A’s question. Correct any errors.

(If you don’t have a classmate to pair up with, write dialogues in which the given phrases are the answers to questions.)
Example:
STUDENT A: What’s Maria’s favorite color?
STUDENT B: (Student B reviews the list of possible answers below and chooses the appropriate one.) Pink.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS
Sure! Thanks!
Call the insurance company.
Next week.
A rat.
George.
Cooking dinner.
Turkey.

Provisionally.
Probably.
The teacher’s.
Not that one. The other one.
A Panasonic or a Sony.
Pink.
No, a friend of mine gave them to me a few days ago.

◊ PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: Using how. (Chart 6-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any of the words in the given list.

busy fresh safe soon
expensive hot serious well

1. A: How ______ hot does it get in Chicago in the summer?
   B: Very ______ hot. It can get over 100°. (100°F = 37.8°C)

2. A: How ______ will dinner be ready? I’m really hungry.
   B: In just a few more minutes.

3. A: Look at that beautiful vase! Let’s get it.
   B: How ______ is it?
   A: Oh my gosh! Never mind. We can’t afford it.

4. A: Sorry to interrupt, Ted, but I need some help. How ______ are you today? Do you have time to read over this report?
   B: Well, I’m always ______, but I’ll make time to read it.

5. A: How ______ is Toshi about becoming an astronomer?
   B: He’s very ______. He already knows more about the stars and planets than his high school teachers.

6. A: How ______ is a car with an airbag?
   B: Well, there have been bad accidents where both drivers walked away without injuries because of airbags.

7. A: Tomatoes for sale! Hey, lady! Wanna* buy some tomatoes? Tomatoes for sale!
   B: Hmm. They look pretty good. How ______ are they?
   A: Whaddaya* mean “How ______ are they?” Would I sell something that wasn’t ______? They were picked from the field just this morning.

*“Wanna” and “whaddaya” aren’t usually written as words. They represent spoken English:
   “wanna” = “want to” (Wanna buy some tomatoes? = Do you want to buy some tomatoes?)
   “whaddaya” = “what do you” (Whaddaya mean? = What do you mean?).
8. A: Do you know Jack Young?
B: Yes.
A: Oh? How _________ do you know him?
B: Very _________. He's one of my closest friends. Why?
A: He's applied for a job at my store.

◊ PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Using how far and how long (Charts 6-10 and 6-12)

Directions: Complete the questions with far or long.

1. A: How _______ is it to the nearest police station?
   B: Four blocks.
2. A: How ______ long does it take you to get to work?
   B: Forty-five minutes.
3. A: How _______ is it to your office from home?
   B: About twenty miles.
4. A: How _______ is it from here to the airport?
   B: Ten kilometers.
5. A: How _______ does it take to get to the airport?
   B: Fifteen minutes.
6. A: How _______ above sea level is Denver, Colorado?
   B: One mile. That’s why it’s called the Mile High City.
7. A: How _______ does it take to fly from Chicago to Denver?
   B: Around three hours.
8. A: How _______ did it take you to build your own boat?
   B: Four years.
9. A: How _______ did you walk?
   B: Two miles.
10. A: How _______ did you walk?
    B: Two hours.

◊ PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: Using how. (Chart 6-8)

Directions: Complete the questions with often, far, long, or many.

1. A: How _______ do you eat out at a restaurant?
   B: About once a week.
2. A: How _______ did you sleep last night?
   B: Six hours.
3. A: How _______ hours did you sleep last night?
   B: Six.
4. A: How _______ did you walk yesterday?
   B: About four miles.
5. A: How _______ miles did you walk yesterday?
   B: About four.
6. A: How _______ kilometers did you walk yesterday?
   B: About six.
7. A: How ____________ did your father teach at the university?  
   B: Forty-four years.
8. A: How ____________ years did your father teach at the university?  
   B: Forty-four.
9. A: How ____________ do you play softball in the summer?  
   B: Sometimes three or four times a week.
10. A: How ____________ times a week do you play softball in the summer?  
    B: Sometimes three or four times a week.
11. A: How ____________ does it take to get a haircut at Bertha’s Beauty Boutique?  
    B: Half an hour.
12. A: How ____________ do you get a haircut?  
    B: About every six weeks, I’d guess.
13. A: How ____________ is it from the earth to the moon?  
    B: Approximately 239,000 miles or 385,000 kilometers.
14. A: How ____________ times a day do you brush your teeth?  
    B: At least three.
15. A: How ____________ does a snake shed its skin?  
    B: From once a year to more than six times a year, depending on the kind of snake.
16. A: How ____________ is it from your desk to the door?  
    B: I’d say about four regular steps or two giant steps.
17. A: How ____________ does it take to get over a cold?  
    B: As they say, a cold is three days coming, three days here, and three days going.

◊ PRACTICE 22—GUIDED STUDY: Using how. (Charts 6–8 → 6–13)

Directions: Make questions for the given answers. Use how in each question.

Example: It’s very important.
Written: How important is good health?

1. Very expensive.
2. I took a taxi.
3. Four hours.
4. He’s nineteen.
5. In five minutes.
6. With a knife.
7. Every day.
8. Three blocks.
10. With two t’s.
11. It gets below zero.
12. Her grades are excellent.
Directions: Using the information in parentheses, make QUESTIONS for the given answers.

1. A: **When are you going to buy a new bicycle?**  
   B: Next week. (I’m going to buy a new bicycle next week.)

2. A: **How are you going to pay for it?**  
   B: With my credit card. (I’m going to pay for it with my credit card.)

3. A:  
   B: Ten years. (I had my old bike for ten years.)

4. A:  
   B: Four or five times a week. (I ride my bike four or five times a week.)

5. A:  
   B: I usually ride my bike. (I usually get to work by riding my bike.)

6. A:  
   B: Yes. (I’m going to ride my bike to work tomorrow.)

7. A:  
   B: I decided I would rather walk. (I didn’t ride my bike to work today because I decided I would rather walk.)

8. A:  
   B: Two weeks ago. (Jason got his new bike two weeks ago.)

9. A:  
   B: Billy. (Billy broke Jason’s new bike.)

10. A:  
    B: Jason’s new bike. (Billy broke Jason’s new bike.)

11. A:  
    B: Jason’s new bike. (Jason’s new bike is broken.)

12. A:  
    B: He ran into a brick wall. (Billy broke Jason’s bike by running into a brick wall.)
13. A: 
   B: Yes, it does. (My bike has a comfortable seat.)

14. A: 
   B: A ten-speed. (I have a ten-speed bicycle.)

15. A: 
   B: The blue one. (The blue bicycle is mine, not the red one.)

16. A: 
   B: Inside my apartment. (I keep my bicycle inside my apartment at night.)

17. A: 
   B: David. (That bike belongs to David.)

18. A: 
   B: Suzanne's. (I borrowed Suzanne's bike.)

19. A: 
   B: In the park. (Rita is in the park.)

20. A: 
   B: Riding her bike. (She's riding her bike.)

21. A: 
   B: 25 miles. (Rita rode her bike 25 miles* yesterday.)

22. A: 
   B: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E. (You spell "bicycle" B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.)

\* PRACTICE 24—GUIDED STUDY. Cumulative review. (Charts 6-1 → 6-13)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing QUESTIONS for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses to form the questions.

1. A: When will the clean clothes be dry?  
   B: In about an hour. (The clean clothes will be dry in about an hour.)

2. A:  
   B: I went to a baseball game. (I went to a baseball game Saturday afternoon.)

3. A:  
   B: The small paperback. (I bought the small paperback dictionary, not the large one with the hard cover.)

4. A:  
   B: Four hours. (It took me four hours to clean my apartment before my parents came to visit.)

5. A:  
   B: Stand on a chair. (You can reach the top shelf by standing on a chair.)

6. A:  
   B: Whole wheat bread. (I like whole wheat bread the best.)

7. A:  
   B: Because I was in the middle of dinner with my family. (I didn't answer the phone when it rang because I was in the middle of dinner with my family.)

8. A:  
   B: Maria and her sister. (I'm going to the show with Maria and her sister.)

*25 miles = 40.225 kilometers.
9. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Eric. (Eric repaired the radio.)

10. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: It's not bad. It rarely gets below zero. (It rarely gets below zero in my hometown in the winter.)

11. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: He's playing tennis. (Jack is playing tennis.)

12. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Anna. (He is playing tennis with Anna.)

13. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Serving the ball. (Anna is serving the ball.)

14. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: A tennis ball. (She is throwing a tennis ball in the air.)

15. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Rackets. (Anna and Jack are holding rackets.)

16. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: A net. (A net is between them.)

17. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: On a tennis court. (They are on a tennis court.)

18. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: For an hour and a half. (They have been playing for an hour and a half.)

19. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Jack. (Jack is winning right now.)

20. A: ____________________________________________  
   B: Anna. (Anna won the last game.)

Questions ☞ 123
PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY:  Cumulative review. (Charts 6–1 → 6–13)

Directions: Make dialogues from the given words. Include both Speaker A and Speaker B.

Example: . . . usually get up?

Written: A: What time do you usually get up?
B: 6:30.

1. . . . should I meet you?
2. . . . fruit do you like best?
3. . . . is south of the United States?
4. . . . times a week do you . . . ?
5. . . . do tomorrow?
6. . . . is it from . . . to . . . ?
7. . . . killed . . . ?
8. . . . you breathing hard?
9. . . . do for a living?
10. . . . spell “happened”?
11. . . . take to get to our hotel from the airport?
12. . . . didn’t you call me when . . . ?

PRACTICE 26—GUIDED STUDY:  Cumulative review. (Charts 6–1 → 6–13)

Directions: In small groups (or by yourself), make up questions about some or all of the following topics. What would you like to know about these topics? What are you curious about? Share your questions with your classmates. Maybe some of them can answer some of your questions.

Example: tigers

Questions: How long do tigers usually live? Where do they live? What do they eat? Do they kill and eat people? How big is a tiger? Is it bigger than a lion? Can a tiger climb a tree? Do tigers live alone or in groups? Do they have natural enemies? Are human beings their only enemy? Will tigers become extinct soon? How many tigers are there in the world today? How many tigers were there one hundred years ago?

TOPICS:
1. world geography
2. the universe
3. the weather
4. dinosaurs
5. birds
6. (a topic of your own choosing)

PRACTICE 27—GUIDED STUDY:  What about and how about. (Chart 6–14)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with your own words.

1. A: ___________________________?
   B: Nine or nine-thirty.
   A: That’s too late for me. How about ___________________________?
   B: Okay.

2. A: ___________________________?
   B: No, Tuesday’s not good for me.
   A: Then what about ___________________________?
   B: Okay. That’s fine.

3. A: There’s room in the car for one more person. Do you think __________________ would like to go to __________________ with us?
   B: __________________ can’t go with us because __________________.
   A: Then how about __________________?
   B: __________________.
4. A: Do you like fish?
   B: Yes, very much. How about ____________________________?
   A: Yes, I like fish a lot. In fact, I think I’ll order fish for dinner tonight. That sounds good.
       What about ____________________________?
   B: No, I think I’ll have ____________________________.

◊ PRACTICE 28—SELFSTUDY: Tag questions. (Chart 6–15)

Directions: Complete the TAG QUESTIONS with the correct verb.

1. SIMPLE PRESENT
   a. You like strong coffee, don’t you?
   b. David goes to Ames High School, ______________ he?
   c. Kate and Sara live on Tree Road, ______________ they?
   d. Jane has the keys to the storeroom, ______________ she?
   e. Jane’s in her office, ______________ she?
   f. You’re a member of this class, ______________ you?
   g. Jack doesn’t have a car, ______________ he?
   h. Ann isn’t from California, ______________ she?

2. SIMPLE PAST
   a. Paul went to Florida, ______________ he?
   b. You didn’t talk to the boss, ______________ you?
   c. Tom’s parents weren’t at home, ______________ they?
   d. That was Pat’s idea, ______________ it?

3. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE, BE GOING TO, and PAST PROGRESSIVE
   a. You’re studying hard, ______________ you?
   b. Tom isn’t working at the bank, ______________ he?
   c. It isn’t going to rain today, ______________ it?
   d. Susan and Kevin were waiting for us, ______________ they?
   e. It wasn’t raining, ______________ it?

4. MODAL AUXILIARIES
   a. You can answer these questions, ______________ you?
   b. Kate won’t tell anyone our secret, ______________ she?
   c. Sam should come to the meeting, ______________ he?
   d. Alice would like to come with us, ______________ she?
   e. I don’t have to come to the meeting, ______________ I?
   f. Steve had to leave early, ______________ he?
PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Tag questions. (Chart 6-15)

Directions: Add TAG QUESTIONS.

1. Mr. Adams was born in England, wasn't he?
2. Flies can fly upside down, can they?
3. All birds lay eggs, don't they?
4. Mike isn't married, is he?
5. You would rather have a roommate than live alone, wouldn't you?
6. These gloves are yours, are they?
7. That's Brian's algebra book, isn't it?
8. Fire can't melt a diamond, can it?
9. You should call your mom today, shouldn't you?
10. Ms. Boxlight will be here tomorrow, won't she?
11. Tony Wah lives in Los Angeles, doesn't he?
12. You didn't forget to finish your homework, did you?
13. Tomorrow isn't a holiday, is it?
14. I don't have to be at the meeting, do I?
15. This isn't your book, is it?
16. Jack and Elizabeth were in class yesterday, weren't they?
17. Jennifer won't be here for dinner tonight, will she?
18. Lightning can kill swimmers when it strikes water. It kills the fish in the water, too, can't it?

PRACTICE 30—GUIDED STUDY: Tag questions. (Chart 6-15)

Directions: Make sentences with TAG QUESTIONS. Your sentences should express your opinion. In the example, the speaker believes that Li is a common name in China.

Example: I think that Li (is/isn't) a common name in China.

Question: Li is a common name in China, isn't it?

1. I think that Athens (is/isn't) the capital of Italy.
2. I think that Athens (is/isn't) the capital of Greece.
3. I think that plants (can/can't) grow in deserts.
4. I think that deserts (are/aren't) complete wastelands.
5. I think that cactuses (thrive/don't thrive) in deserts.
6. I think that dinosaurs (weighed/didn't weigh) more than elephants.
7. I think that blue whales (are/aren't) larger than dinosaurs.
8. I think that whales (lay/don't lay) eggs.
9. I think that turtles (lay/don't lay) eggs.
10. I think that Abraham Lincoln (was/wasn't) the first president of the United States.
11. I think that we (will/won't) have a test on Chapter 6.
12. I think that . . . .
PRACTICE 31—GUIDED STUDY: Asking questions. (Chapter 6)

Directions: Pair up with a classmate or any other partner. Together create a long dialogue for the given situation. One of you is Speaker A and the other is Speaker B. The beginning of the dialogue is given.

1. SITUATION: The dialogue takes place on the telephone.
   Speaker A: You are a travel agent.
   Speaker B: You want to take a trip.
   DIALOGUE:
   A: Hello, Worldwide Travel Agency. May I help you?
   B: Yes, I need to make arrangements to go to (think of a place) . . . .
   A: Etc.
   B: Etc.

2. SITUATION: The dialogue takes place at a police station.
   Speaker A: You are a police officer.
   Speaker B: You are the suspect of a crime.
   DIALOGUE:
   A: Where were you at eleven o'clock on Tuesday night, the 16th of this month?
   B: I'm not sure I remember. Why do you want to know, Officer?
   Etc.

3. SITUATION: The dialogue takes place in an office.
   Speaker A: You are the owner of a small company.
   Speaker B: You are interviewing for a job in Speaker A's company.
   DIALOGUE:
   A: Come in, come in. I'm ( . . . ). Glad to meet you.
   B: How do you do? I'm ( . . . ). I'm pleased to meet you.
   A: Have a seat, ( . . . ).
   B: Thank you.
   A: So you're interested in working at (make up the name of a company)?
   Etc.

PRACTICE 32—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 6; Appendix 1)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition.

1. Ask Ann to help you. She knows something about geometry.
2. Something's the matter with Dan. He's crying.
3. Do whatever you want. It doesn't matter to me.
4. Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.
5. Are you looking forward to your trip to Israel?
6. A: Does this watch belong to you?
   B: Yes. Where did you find it? I searched for it everywhere.
7. I woke up frightened after I dreamed of falling off the roof of a building.
8. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father for a ride to school.
9. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father about his work. I don't know much about his new job, and I want to ask him about it.
10. Please empty that bowl of fruit and separate the fresh apples from the old apples.
CHAPTER 7
The Present Perfect and the Past Perfect

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Forms of the present perfect. (Charts 7-1 → 7-3)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with the given verbs and any words in parentheses. Use the PRESENT PERFECT.

1. *eat* A: (you, ever) Have you ever eaten pepperoni pizza?
   B: Yes, I ____________. I ____________ pepperoni pizza many times. OR:
   No, I ____________. I (never) ____________ pepperoni pizza.

2. *talk* A: (you, ever) ____________ to a famous person?
   B: Yes, I ____________. I ____________ to a lot of famous people. OR:
   No, I ____________. I (never) ____________ to a famous person.

3. *rent* A: (Erica, ever) ____________ a car?
   B: Yes, she ____________. She ____________ a car many times. OR:
   No, she ____________. She (never) ____________ a car.

4. *see* A: (you, ever) ____________ a shooting star?
   B: Yes, I ____________. I ____________ a lot of shooting stars. OR:
   No, I ____________. I (never) ____________ a shooting star.

5. *catch* A: (Joe, ever) ____________ a big fish?
   B: Yes, he ____________. He ____________ lots of big fish. OR:
   No, he ____________. He (never) ____________ a big fish.

6. *have* A: (you, ever) ____________ a bad sunburn?
   B: Yes, I ____________. I ____________ a bad sunburn several times. OR:
   No, I ____________. I (never) ____________ a bad sunburn.
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect. (Charts 7-1 → 7-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the PRESENT PERFECT of the verbs in the list and any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

- eat
- look
- save
- use
- give
- play
- sleep
- wear
- improve
- rise
- speak
- win

1. People have used sheep's wool to make clothing for centuries.
2. The night is over. It's daytime now. The sun ________________.
3. I (never) ________________ golf, but I'd like to. It looks like fun.
4. Our team is great. They ________________ all of their games so far this year. They haven't lost a single game.
5. Amy must be mad at me. She (not) ________________ one word to me all evening. I wonder what I did to make her angry.
6. The cat must be sick. He (not) ________________ any food for two days. We'd better call the vet.
7. Our teacher ________________ us a lot of tests and quizzes since the beginning of the term.
8. We put a little money in our savings account every month. We want to buy a car, but we (not) ________________ enough money yet. We'll have enough in a few more months.
9. (you, ever) ________________ ________________ outdoors for an entire night? I mean without a tent, with nothing between you and the stars?
10. My aunt puts on a wig whenever she goes out, but I (never) ________________ a wig in my whole life.
11. Paul's health ________________ a lot since he started eating the right kinds of food, exercising regularly, and handling the stress in his life. He's never felt better.
12. I can't find my keys. I ________________ everywhere—in all my pockets, in my briefcase, in my desk. They're gone.

PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect vs. the simple past. (Chart 7–4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST or the PRESENT PERFECT.

1. A: When are you going to call Jane?
   B: I (call, already) ________________ her. I (call) ________________ her a half an hour ago.
2. A: When are you going to begin working at the candy store?
   B: I (begin, already) ________________ working there. I (begin) ________________ yesterday morning.
3. A: Are you going to eat lunch soon?
   B: I (eat, already) ___________________________. I (eat) __________________ lunch an hour ago.

4. A: When are you going to get a new computer?
   B: I (buy, already) ___________________________ one. I (buy) ______________ it last week.

5. A: When is Steve going to leave for the concert?
   B: He (leave, already) ___________________________. He (leave) ______________ an hour ago.

6. A: Will you please lock the door?
   B: I (lock, already) ___________________________ it. I (lock) ______________ it when I got home.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Irregular verbs. (Charts 2–3, 2–4, and 7–4)

Directions: This is a review of IRREGULAR VERBS. Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST and the PRESENT PERFECT of the given verbs.

1. begin I ____________ a new diet and exercise program last week. I ______________ lots of new diet and exercise programs in my lifetime.

2. bend I ____________ down to pick up my young son from his crib this morning. I ______________ down to pick him up many times since he was born.

3. broadcast The radio ______________ news about the terrible earthquake in Iran last week. The radio ______________ news about Iran every day since the earthquake occurred.

4. catch I ____________ a cold last week. I ______________ a lot of colds in my lifetime.

5. come A tourist ______________ into Mr. Nasser’s jewelry store after lunch. A lot of tourists ______________ into his store since he opened it last year.

6. cut I ______________ some flowers from my garden yesterday. I ______________ lots of flowers from my garden so far this summer.

7. dig The workers ______________ a hole to fix the leak in the water pipe. They ______________ many holes to fix water leaks since the earthquake.

8. draw The artist ______________ a picture of a sunset yesterday. She ______________ many pictures of sunsets in her lifetime.

9. feed I ______________ birds at the park yesterday. I ______________ birds at the park every day since I lost my job.

10. fight We ______________ a war last year. We ______________ several wars since we became an independent country.
11. forget I _______________ to turn off the stove after dinner. I _______________ to turn off the stove a lot of times in my lifetime.

12. hide The children _______________ in the basement yesterday. They _______________ in the basement often since they discovered a secret place there.

13. hit The baseball player _______________ the ball out of the stadium yesterday. He _______________ a lot of homeruns since he joined our team.

14. hold My husband _______________ the door open for me when we entered the restaurant. He _______________ a door open for me many times since we met each other.

15. keep During the discussion yesterday, I _______________ my opinion to myself. I _______________ my opinions to myself a lot of times in my lifetime.

16. lead Mary _______________ the group discussion at the conference. She _______________ group discussions many times since she started going to conferences.

17. lose Eddie _______________ money at the racetrack yesterday. He _______________ _______________ money at the racetrack lots of times in his lifetime.

18. meet I _______________ two new people in my class yesterday. I _______________ a lot of new people since I started going to school here.

19. ride I _______________ the bus to work yesterday. I _______________ the bus to work many times since I got a job downtown.

20. ring The doorbell _______________ a few minutes ago. The doorbell _______________ _______________ three times so far today.
21. see
I __________________ a good movie yesterday. I __________________ a lot of good movies in my lifetime.

22. steal
The fox __________________ a chicken from the farmer’s yard last night. The fox __________________ three chickens so far this month.

23. stick
I __________________ a stamp on the corner of the envelope. I ________________ lots of stamps on envelopes in my lifetime.

24. sweep
I __________________ the floor of my apartment yesterday. I __________________ the floor of my apartment lots of times since I moved in.

25. take
I __________________ a test yesterday. I __________________ lots of tests in my life as a student.

26. upset
The Smith children __________________ Mr. Jordan when they broke his window. Because they are careless and noisy, they __________________ Mr. Jordan many times since they moved in next door.

27. withdraw
I __________________ some money from my bank account yesterday. I __________________ more than three hundred dollars from my bank account so far this month.

28. write
I __________________ a letter to a friend last night. I __________________ lots of letters to my friends in my lifetime.

◊ PRACTICE 5—GUIDED STUDY: Irregular verbs. (Charts 2–3, 2–4, and 7–4)

Directions: This is a review of IRREGULAR VERBS. Complete the sentences with the SIMPLE PAST or the PRESENT PERFECT of the given verbs.

1. go
a. I __________________ to every play at the local theater so far this year.
b. My whole family __________________ to the play last weekend.

2. give
a. Jane __________________ me a ride home from work today.
b. (she, ever) __________________ you a ride home since she started working in your department?

3. fall
a. I __________________ down many times in my lifetime, but never hard enough to really hurt myself or break a bone.
b. Mike __________________ down many times during football practice yesterday.

4. break
a. (you, ever) __________________ a bone in your body?
b. I __________________ my leg when I was ten years old. I jumped off the roof of my house.

5. shake
a. In my entire lifetime, I __________________ hands with a famous movie star.
b. In 1990, I __________________ hands with a famous soccer player.
6. hear
a. I ______________________ you practicing your trumpet late last night.
b. In fact, I ______________________ you practicing every night for two weeks.

7. fly
a. Mike is a commercial airline pilot. Yesterday he ______________________ from Tokyo to Los Angeles.
b. Mike ______________________ to many places in the world since he became a pilot.

8. wear
a. Carol really likes her new leather jacket. She ______________________ it every day since she bought it.
b. She ______________________ her new leather jacket to the opera last night.

9. build
a. (you, ever) ______________________ a piece of furniture?
b. My daughter ______________________ a table in her woodworking class at the high school last year.

10. teach
a. Ms. Kent ______________________ math at the local high school since 1982.
b. She ______________________ in Hungary last year on an exchange program.

11. find
a. In your lifetime, (you, ever) ______________________ something really valuable?
b. My sister ______________________ a very expensive diamond ring in the park last year.

12. drive
a. After I took Danny to school, I ______________________ straight to work.
b. I’m an experienced driver, but I (never) ______________________ a bus or a big truck.
13. sing  
   a. I _______________________ a duet with my mother at the art benefit last night.
   b. We _______________________ together ever since I was a small child.

14. run  
   a. I (never) ________________________ in a marathon race, and I don’t intend to.
   b. I’m out of breath because I ________________________ all the way over here.

15. tell  
   a. Last night, my brother _______________________ me a secret.
   b. He _______________________ me lots of secrets in his lifetime.

16. stand  
   a. When I visited the U.N. last summer, I _______________________ in the main gallery and felt a great sense of history.
   b. Many great world leaders _______________________ there over the years.

17. spend  
   a. I _______________________ all of my money at the mall yesterday.
   b. I don’t have my rent money this month. I (already) ________________________ it on other things.

18. make  
   a. I consider myself fortunate because I _______________________ many good friends in my lifetime.
   b. I _______________________ a terrible mistake last night. I forgot that my friend had invited me to his apartment for dinner.

19. rise  
   a. The price of flour _______________________ a lot since 1990.
   b. When his name was announced, Jack _______________________ from his seat and walked to the podium to receive his award.

20. feel  
   a. I _______________________ terrible yesterday, so I stayed in bed.
   b. I _______________________ terrible for a week now. I’d better see a doctor.

◊ PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Since vs. for. (Chart 7-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with SINCE or FOR.

1. David has worked for the power company ________________________ 1990.
2. His brother has worked for the power company ________________________ five years.
3. I have known Peter Gow ________________________ September.
4. I’ve known his sister ________________________ three months.
5. Jonas has walked with a limp ________________________ many years.
6. He’s had a bad leg ________________________ he was in the war.
7. Rachel hasn’t been in class ________________________ last Tuesday.
8. She hasn’t been in class ________________________ three days.
9. I’ve had a toothache ________________________ yesterday morning.
10. I’ve had this toothache ________________________ thirty-six hours.
11. My vision has improved ________________________ I got new reading glasses.
12. I’ve had a cold ________________________ almost a week.
13. Jake hasn’t worked ________________________ last summer when the factory closed down.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. I **have known** Mark Miller since we **were** in college.

2. Jeremy **change** his major three times since he **start** school.

3. Ever since* I **be** a child, I **be** afraid of snakes.

4. I can’t wait to get home to my own bed. I **sleep, not** well since I **leave** home three days ago.

5. Ever since Danny **meet** Nicole, he **be, not** able to think about anything or anyone else. He’s in love.

6. Otto **have** a lot of problems with his car ever since he **buy** it. It’s a lemon.

7. A: What **you, eat** since you **get** up this morning?
   B: I **eat** a banana and some yogurt. That’s all.

8. I’m eighteen. I have a job and am in school. My life is going okay now, but I **have** a miserable home life when I **leave** home at the age of fifteen, I **take** care of myself. I **have** some hard times, but I **learn** how to stand on my own two feet.

Directions: Write sentences about yourself using SINCE, FOR, or NEVER with the PRESENT PERFECT.

Example: have (a particular kind of watch)

Written: I’ve had my Seiko quartz watch for two years. OR:
I’ve had my Seiko quartz watch since my eighteenth birthday.

Example: smoke cigars/cigarettes/a pipe

Written: I’ve never smoked cigarettes. OR:
I’ve smoked cigarettes since I was seventeen.

1. know (a particular person) 6. wear glasses/contact lenses
2. live in (this city) 7. have (a particular article of clothing)
3. study English 8. be interested in (a particular subject)
4. be in this class/at this school/with this company 9. be married
5. have long hair/short hair/a mustache 10. have a driver’s license

*Ever since has the same meaning as since.*
PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 7)

Directions: Following is a conversation between two people: Ann and Ben. Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. BEN: I (need) ___ need ___ to earn some extra money for my school expenses. Got any ideas?
2. ANN: (you, have, ever) ___ ___ a job at a restaurant?
3. BEN: Yes, I (have) ___ have ___. I (work) ___ ___ at several restaurants since I (start) ___ ___ going to college.
   ANN: When was the last time you worked at a restaurant?
4. BEN: I (have) ___ ___ a job as a dishwasher last fall.
   ANN: Where?
   BEN: At the Bistro Cafe.
5. ANN: How long (you, work) ___ ___ there?
   BEN: For two months.
6. ANN: (you, enjoy) ___ ___ your job as a dishwasher at the Bistro?
7. BEN: No, I (work) ___ ___ . It (be) ___ ___ hard work for low pay.
8. ANN: Where (you, work) ___ ___ right now?
9. BEN: I (have, not) ___ ___ a job right now.
10. ANN: (you, want) ___ ___ a part-time or full-time job?
11. BEN: I (plan) ___ ___ to look for a part-time job, maybe twenty hours a week.
12. ANN: I (go) ___ ___ to Al’s Place tomorrow to see about a job. The restaurant (look) ___ ___ for help. Why don’t you come along with me?
13. BEN: Thanks. I think I (do) ___ ___ that. I (look, never) ___ ___ ___ ___ for a job at Al’s Place before. Maybe the pay will be better than at the Bistro.
14. ANN: I (know, not) ___ ___ . We (find) ___ ___ ___ ___ out when we (go) ___ ___ ___ ___ there tomorrow.

PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect progressive. (Charts 7-6 and 7-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the dialogues between Speaker A and Speaker B. Use the PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE.

1. Eric is studying. He started to study at seven o’clock. It is now nine o’clock.
   A: How long ___ ___ Eric been studying ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
   B: He ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ for _ ___ two hours ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___.

2. Kathy is working at the computer. She began to work at the computer at two o’clock. It is now three o’clock.
   A: How long ___ ___ Kathy been working at the computer ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
   B: She ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ since ___ two o’clock ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___.
3. It began to rain two days ago. It is still raining.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: It ________________________________ for ________________________________.

4. Liz is reading. She began to read at ten o’clock. It is now ten-thirty.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: She ________________________________ for ________________________________.

5. Boris began to study English in 1990. He is still studying English.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: He ________________________________ since ________________________________.

6. Three months ago, Nicole started to work at the Silk Road Clothing Store.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: She ________________________________ for ________________________________.

   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: She ________________________________ since ________________________________.

8. Mr. Fisher is driving a Chevy. He bought it twelve years ago.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: He ________________________________ for ________________________________.

9. Mrs. Taylor is waiting to see her doctor. She arrived at the waiting room at two o’clock. It is now three-thirty.
   A: How long ________________________________?
   B: She ________________________________ for ________________________________.

10. Ted and Erica started to play tennis at two o’clock. It’s now four-thirty.
    A: How long ________________________________?
    B: They ________________________________ since ________________________________.

◊ PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect progressive. (Charts 7-6 and 7-7)

Directions: Choose the correct verb form.

1. Where have you been? I ______ for you for over an hour!
   A. am waiting
   B. have been waiting

2. I’m exhausted! I ______ for the last eight hours without a break.
   A. am working
   B. have been working

3. Shhh! Susan _______. Let’s not make any noise. We don’t want to wake her up.
   A. is sleeping
   B. has been sleeping

4. Annie, go upstairs and wake your brother up. He ______ for over ten hours. He has chores to do.
   A. is sleeping
   B. has been sleeping

5. Erin has never gone camping. She ______ in a tent.
   A. has never slept
   B. has never been sleeping
6. This is a great shirt! I ____ it at least a dozen times, and it still looks like new.
   A. have washed  B. have been washing

7. Aren’t you about finished with the dishes? You ____ dishes for thirty minutes or more. How long can it take to wash dishes?
   A. have washed  B. have been washing

8. We ____ to the Steak House restaurant many times. The food is excellent.
   A. have gone  B. have been going

◇ PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Verb tenses. (Charts 7-2 → 7-7)

Directions: Make sentences about your life using the given time expressions. Use the SIMPLE PAST, PRESENT PERFECT, or PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE.

Example: for the last two weeks
Written: I’ve had a cold for the last two weeks.

1. since I was a child  6. never
2. for a long time  7. since last Tuesday
3. two years ago  8. for a number of years*
4. so far today  9. a week ago today
5. many times in my lifetime  10. for the last ten minutes

◇ PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Verb forms. (Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

Dear Adam,

(1) Hi! How are you? Remember me? Just a joke! I (write, not) ____________________________

(2) to you for at least six months, but that’s not long enough for you to forget me! I think about

(3) writing to you often, but I (be, not) ____________________________ a good correspondent for the

(4) last few months. You (hear, not) ____________________________ from me for such a long time

(5) because I (be) ____________________________ really busy. For the last few months, I (work)

(6) ____________________________ full-time at a shoe store and (go) ____________________________ to school

(7) at the local community college to study business and computers. When I (write) ____________________________

(8) to you six months ago—last April, I think—I (go) ____________________________ to the university

(9) full-time and (study) ____________________________ anthropology. A lot of things (happen)

(10) ____________________________ since then.

(11) At the end of the spring semester last June, my grades (be) ____________________________ terrible. As a result, I (lose) ____________________________ my scholarship and my parents’ support. I really (mess)

(12) up when I (get) ____________________________ those bad grades. When I (show)

(13) ____________________________ my grade report to my parents, they (refuse) ____________________________ to help

(14) me with my living expenses at school anymore. They (feel) ____________________________ that I was

(15) wasting my time and their money, so they (tell) ____________________________ me to get a job. So last

* a number of years = many years.
June, I (start) working at a shoe store: Imperial Shoes at Southcenter Mall.

It (be, not) a bad job, but it (be, not) wonderful either. Every day, I (fetch) shoes from the back room for people to try on, boxes and boxes of shoes, all day long.

I (meet) some pretty weird people since I (start) this job. A couple of weeks ago, a middle-aged man (come) into the store.

He (want) to try on some black leather loafers. I (bring) the loafers, and he (put) them on. While he (walk) around to see if they fit okay, he (pull) from his pocket a little white mouse with pink eyes and (start) talking to it. He (look) right at the mouse and (say), "George, (you, like) this pair of shoes?" When the mouse (twitch) its nose, the man (say) "Yes, so do I." Then he (turn) to me and (say) "We'll take them." Can you believe that!?

Most of the people I meet are nice—and normal. My favorite customers (be) people who (know) what they want when they (enter) the store. They (come) in, (point) at one pair of shoes, politely (tell) me their size, (try) the shoes on, and then (buy) them, just like that. They (agonize, not) for a long time over which pair to buy.

I (learn) one important thing from working at the shoe store: I (want, not) to sell shoes as a career. I (need) a good education that (prepare) me for a job that I can enjoy for the rest of my life. And even though I love studying anthropology, I (decide) that a degree in business and computers will provide the best career opportunities.

I (want, always) to be independent, and now I (be) expenses now. Ever since I (lose) my scholarship and (make) my parents mad, I (be) completely on my own.

I'm glad to report that my grades at present (be) excellent, and right now I (enjoy, really) my work with computers. In the future, I (continue) to take courses in anthropology whenever I can fit them into my schedule, and I (study) anthropology on my own for the rest of my life, but I (pursue) a career in business. Maybe there is some way I can combine anthropology, business, and computers. Who knows?

There, I (tell) you everything I can think of that is at all important in my life at the moment. I think I (grow) up a lot during
the last six months. I (understand) that my education is
important. Losing my scholarship (make) my life more difficult, but I
feel that I (take, finally) charge of my life. It's a good feeling.
Please write. I'd love to hear from you.
Jessica

PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Verb forms. (Charts 7-4 and 7-5)

Directions: Think of a friend you haven’t spoken to or written to since the beginning of this term. Write this friend a letter about your activities from the start of this school term to the present time. Begin your letter as follows:

Dear (. . .),
I’m sorry I haven’t written for such a long time. Lots of things have happened since I last wrote to you.

PART I: Placement of MIDSENTENCE ADVERBS IN STATEMENTS.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add ALWAYS to the following sentences.

1. Kate _______Ø__________ is _______ always _______ late.
2. Mike _______always________ finishes _______Ø________ his work on time.
3. Gina _______Ø__________ finished _______Ø________ her work early.
4. Nick __________________ will ____________ finish his work on time.
5. Rick __________________ has ____________ helped me with my work.
6. Bill __________________ helped ____________ me with my work.
7. They __________________ are ____________ helpful.
8. They __________________ help ____________ me when I need it.
9. They __________________ have ____________ helped me.
10. Sara __________________ can ____________ help you if you ask her to.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add USUALLY to the following sentences.

11. They __________________ are ____________ very helpful.
12. They __________________ help ____________ me when I need it.
13. They __________________ have ____________ helped me.
14. Sara __________________ can ____________ help you if you ask her to.

PART II: Placement of MIDSENTENCE ADVERBS in QUESTIONS.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add USUALLY to the following sentences.

15. Do _______Ø__________ you ____________ work hard?
16. Is _______Ø__________ Mike ____________ at home in the evenings?
17. Did _______Ø__________ your mom ____________ read to you at bedtime?
18. Were ______________ you ______________ in bed by nine?
19. Can ______________ students ______________ understand Prof. Milano's lectures?

Directions: Choose the correct place to add EVER to the following sentences.
20. Do ______________ you ______________ work hard?
21. Is ______________ Mike ______________ at home in the evenings?
22. Did ______________ your mom ______________ read to you at bedtime?
23. Were ______________ you ______________ in bed by nine?
24. Can ______________ students ______________ understand Prof. Milano's lectures?

PART III: Placement of MIDSENTENCE ADVERBS in NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add PROBABLY to the following sentences.
25. Janet ______________ won’t ______________ attend a meeting.
26. Frank ______________ isn’t ______________ in his office.
27. Emily ______________ doesn’t ______________ know the answer.
28. Brian ______________ hasn’t ______________ finished his homework yet.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add EVER to the following sentences.
29. Janet ______________ won’t ______________ give me a straight answer.
30. Frank ______________ isn’t ______________ in his office.

Directions: Choose the correct place to add ALWAYS to the following sentences.
31. Emily ______________ doesn’t ______________ know the right answer in class.
32. Brian ______________ hasn’t ______________ finished his homework on time.

◊ PRACTICE 16—GUIDED STUDY: Frequency adverbs. (Chart 7–8)

Directions: Choose the appropriate FREQUENCY ADVERB to give a sentence with the same meaning. Put the frequency adverb in the correct place.

1. Alice drives to work every day without exception. (always, generally)
   → Alice ______________ always drives ______________ to work.
2. Jake is tired all of the time. (always, frequently)
   → Jake ______________ is always ______________ tired.
3. Scott goes swimming at the beach only once a year. (sometimes, rarely)
   → Scott ______________ swimming at the beach.
4. Have you met David French at any time in your life? (just, ever)
   → Have you ______________ David French?
5. Karen isn’t late for work at any time. (generally, never)
   → Karen ______________ late for work.
6. Eric is late for work about once a month. (usually, sometimes)
   → Eric ______________ late for work.
7. Danny is absent from a lot of classes because of illness. *(occasionally, frequently)*
   → Danny ___________________________ absent because of illness.

8. Kathy is a happy, optimistic person most of the time. *(generally, always)*
   → Kathy ___________________________ a happy, optimistic person.

9. It seems to me that very, very few of my wishes come true. *(seldom, occasionally)*
   → My wishes ___________________________ true.

10. Polar bears are huge white bears that live along the northern coasts of Canada, Greenland, and Russia. For the most part, polar bears hunt seals for food. *(generally, rarely)*
    → Polar bears ___________________________ seals for food.

11. Very few polar bears have ever killed a human being. *(often, rarely)*
    → Polar bears ___________________________ human beings.

12. Human beings have killed large numbers of polar bears for their pelts. *(frequently, always)*
    → Human beings ___________________________ polar bears for their pelts.

13. Wild polar bears can live to be thirty-three years old. Polar bears in captivity in zoos may live a little longer. *(usually, seldom)*
    → Polar bears ___________________________ past thirty-five years of age.

◊ PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Already, still, yet, anymore. *(Chart 7–9)*

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I haven’t finished my composition yet. I’m ___ working on it.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

2. Top Rock Videos used to be my favorite TV show, but I stopped watching it a couple of years ago. I don’t watch it ___.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

3. I don’t have to take any more math classes. I’ve ___ taken all the required courses.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore
4. I used to nearly choke on an airplane because of all the smoke in the cabin. But smoking is now forbidden by law on all domestic flights. You can’t smoke in an airplane _____.
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

5. I’m not quite ready to leave. I haven’t finished packing my suitcase _____.
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

6. “Don’t you have a class at two?”
   “Yeah, why?”
   “Look at your watch.”
   “Oh my gosh, it’s ____ past two! Bye!”
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

7. Don’t sit there! I painted that chair yesterday and the paint isn’t completely dry _____.
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

8. 1448 South 45th Street is Joe’s old address. He doesn’t live there _____.
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

9. Mr. Wood is eighty-eight years old, but he ____ goes into his office every day.
   A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

10. “Are you going to drive to Woodville with us for the street festival Saturday?”
    “I don’t know. I might. I haven’t made up my mind _____.
    A. already   B. still   C. yet   D. anymore

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Adverb placement. (Charts 7-8 and 7-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: I . . . not . . . because I’ve already . . .

Possible responses:
   I’m not hungry because I’ve already eaten.
   I’m not going to go to the movie because I’ve already seen it.
   I don’t have to take the English test because I’ve already taken it.

1. I used to . . . , but . . . anymore.
2. I can’t . . . because I haven’t . . . yet.
3. Are . . . still . . . ?
4. . . . because I’ve already . . .
5. She didn’t . . . because she probably hasn’t . . .
6. I still . . . , but . . . yet.
7. Dan doesn’t . . . because he has already . . .
8. I can . . . because I’ve finally . . .
10. I don’t . . . anymore, but . . . still . . .

◊ PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: The past perfect. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Identify which action took place first (1st) in the past and which action took place second (2nd).

1. The tennis player jumped in the air for joy. She had won the match.
   a. 1st The tennis player won the match.
   b. 2nd The tennis player jumped in the air.

The Present Perfect and the Past Perfect ♦ 143
2. Before I went to bed, I checked the front door. My roommate had already locked it.
   a. 2nd I checked the door.
   b. 1st My roommate locked the door.

3. I looked for Bob, but he had left the building.
   a. Bob left the building.
   b. I looked for Bob.

4. I laughed when I saw my son. He had emptied a bowl of noodles on top of his head.
   a. I laughed.
   b. My son emptied a bowl of noodles on his head.

5. Oliver arrived at the airport on time, but he couldn’t get on the plane. He had left his ticket at home.
   a. Oliver left his ticket at home.
   b. Oliver arrived at the airport.

6. I handed Betsy today’s newspaper, but she didn’t want it. She had read it during her lunch hour.
   a. I handed Betsy the newspaper.
   b. Betsy read the newspaper.

7. After Carl arrived in New York, he called his mother. He had promised to call her as soon as he got in.
   a. Carl made a promise to his mother.
   b. Carl called his mother.

8. Stella was alone in a strange city. She walked down the avenue slowly, looking in shop windows. Suddenly, she turned her head and looked behind her. Someone had called her name.
   a. Stella turned her head and looked behind her.
   b. Someone called her name.
PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect vs. the past perfect. (Chart 7–10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the PRESENT PERFECT or the PAST PERFECT form of the verb in parentheses.

1. A: Oh no! We’re too late. The train (leave, already) __________ has already left __________.
   B: That’s okay. We’ll catch the next train to Athens.

2. Last Thursday, we went to the station to catch a train to Athens, but we were too late. The train (leave, already) __________ had already left __________.

3. A: Go back to sleep. It’s only six o’clock in the morning.
   B: I am not sleepy. I (sleep, already) __________________ for seven hours.
   I’m going to get up.

4. I woke up at six, but I couldn’t get back to sleep. I wasn’t sleepy. I (sleep, already) __________________ for seven hours.

5. A: I’ll introduce you to Professor Newton at the meeting tonight.
   B: You don’t need to. I (meet, already) __________________ him.

6. Jack offered to introduce me to Professor Newton, but it wasn’t necessary. I (meet, already) __________________ him.

7. A: Do you want to go to the movie tonight?
   B: What are you going to see?
   A: Distant Drums.
   B: I (see, already) __________________ it. Thanks anyway.

8. I didn’t go to the movie with Erin last Tuesday night. I (see, already) __________________ it.

9. A: Jane? Jane! Is that you? How are you? I haven’t seen you for ages!
   B: Excuse me? Are you talking to me?
   A: Oh. You’re not Jane. I’m sorry. It is clear that I (make) __________________ a mistake. Please excuse me.

10. Yesterday I approached a stranger who looked like Jane Moore and started talking to her. But she wasn’t Jane. It was clear that I (make) __________________ a mistake. I was really embarrassed.

PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: The past progressive vs. the past perfect. (Chart 7–10)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Amanda didn’t need to study the multiplication tables in fifth grade. She __B__________ them.
   A. was learning  B. had already learned

2. I enjoyed visiting Tommy’s class. It was an arithmetic class. The students __A__________ their multiplication tables.
   A. were learning  B. had already learned

3. While I ______ up the mountain, I got tired. But I didn’t stop until I reached the top.
   A. was walking  B. had walked
4. I was very tired when I got to the top of the mountain. I ____ a long distance.
   A. was walking  B. had walked

5. I knocked. No one answered. I turned the handle and pulled sharply on the door, but it did not open. Someone ____ it.
   A. was locking  B. had locked

6. “Where were you when the earthquake occurred?”
   “In my office. I ____ to my assistant. We were working on a report.”
   A. was talking  B. had already talked

7. “Ahmed’s house was destroyed in the earthquake.”
   “I know! It’s lucky that he and his family ____ for his parents’ home before the earthquake struck.”
   A. were leaving  B. had already left

8. We drove two hundred miles to see the circus in Kansas City. When we got there, we couldn’t find the circus. It had left town. We ____ all the way to Kansas City for nothing.
   A. were driving  B. had driven

◊ PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: The present perfect, past progressive, and past perfect. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in parentheses. Use the PRESENT PERFECT, PAST PROGRESSIVE, or PAST PERFECT.

1. When I went to bed, I turned on the radio. While I (sleep) ____________, somebody turned it off.

2. You’re from Jakarta? I (be, never) ____________ there. I’d like to go there someday.

3. I started to tell Rodney the news, but he stopped me. He (already, hear) ____________ it.

4. When Gina went to bed, it was snowing. It (snow, still) ____________ when she woke up in the morning.

5. Rita called me on the phone to tell me the good news. She (pass) ____________ her final exam in English.

6. I couldn’t think. The people around me (make) ____________ too much noise. Finally, I gave up and left to try to find a quiet place to work.

7. Are you still waiting for David? (he, come, not) ____________ yet? He’s really late, isn’t he?

8. Otto was in the hospital last week. He (be, never) ____________ a patient in a hospital before. It was a new experience for him.

9. A couple of weeks ago Mr. Fox, our office manager, surprised all of us. When he walked into the office, he (wear) ____________ a bright red jacket. Everyone stopped and stared. Mr. Fox is a conservative dresser. Before that time, he (wear, never) ____________ anything but a blue or gray suit. And he (wear, not) ____________ that jacket again since that time. He wore it only once.
PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. My mother began to drive cars when she was fourteen. Now she is eighty-nine, and she still drives. She ______ cars for seventy-five years.
   A. has been driving  B. drives  C. drove  D. was driving

2. In every culture, people ______ jewelry since prehistoric times.
   A. wear  B. wore  C. have worn  D. had worn

3. It’s hard for many young people to find jobs today. As a result, many young adults in their twenties and even early thirties ______ with their parents.
   A. have still lived  B. are still living  C. still lived  D. were still living

4. Australian koala bears are interesting animals. They ______ practically their entire lives in trees without ever coming down to the ground.
   A. are spending  B. have been spending  C. spent  D. spend

5. If you continue to work hard and try your best, I ______ you. But if you stop working, I’m through.
   A. will help  B. am helping  C. help  D. have helped

6. It’s raining hard. It ______ an hour ago and ______ yet.
   A. starts . . . doesn’t stop  B. started . . . hasn’t stopped
   C. has started . . . didn’t stop  D. was starting . . . isn’t stopping

7. Alex’s bags are almost ready for his trip. He ______ for Syria later this afternoon.
   A. leave  B. left  C. has left  D. is leaving

8. I heard a slight noise, so I walked to the front door to investigate. I looked down at the floor and saw a piece of paper. Someone ______ a note under the door to my apartment.
   A. has pushed  B. is pushing  C. had pushed  D. pushed

9. I walked slowly through the market. People ______ all kinds of fruits and vegetables. I studied the prices carefully before I decided what to buy.
   A. have sold  B. sell  C. had sold  D. were selling

10. The first advertisement on radio was broadcast in 1922. Since that time, companies ______ tens of billions of dollars to advertise their products on radio and television.
    A. are spending  B. have spent  C. spent  D. spend

PRACTICE 24—GUIDED STUDY: Verb tense review. (Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Were you at the race yesterday? I ______ you there.
   A. haven’t seen  B. didn’t see  C. wasn’t seeing  D. don’t see

2. Nicky, please don’t interrupt me. I ______ to Grandma on the phone. Go play with your trucks.
   A. talk  B. have talked  C. am talking  D. have been talking

3. Now listen carefully. When Aunt Martha ______ tomorrow, give her a big hug.
   A. arrives  B. will arrive  C. arrived  D. is going to arrive
4. I _____ my glasses three times so far this year. One time I dropped them on a cement floor. Another time I sat on them. And this time I stepped on them.
   A. broke       B. was breaking     C. have broken     D. have been breaking

5. Kate reached to the floor and picked up her glasses. They were broken. She _____ on them.
   A. stepped      B. had stepped       C. was stepping    D. has stepped

6. Sarah gets angry easily. She _____ a bad temper ever since she was a child.
   A. has            B. will have         C. had            D. has had

7. Now, whenever Sarah starts to lose her temper, she _____ a deep breath and _____ to ten.
   A. takes . . . counts         C. took . . . counted
   B. has taken . . . counted    D. is taking . . . counting

8. I unlocked my door and walked into my apartment. I was surprised to see my nephew there. He _____ in the middle of the front room. He _____ in through an open window in the bathroom. I demanded to know why he was in my apartment.
   A. stood . . . was coming      C. was standing . . . came
   B. stood . . . came            D. was standing . . . had come

9. Ever since I told Ted about my illness, he _____ me. Why are people like that?
   A. is avoiding       B. avoided         C. avoids          D. has been avoiding

10. The phone rang, so I _____ it up and _____ hello.
    A. picked . . . had said      C. was picking . . . said
    B. picked . . . said          D. was picking . . . had said

◊ PRACTICE 25—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 7; Appendix 1)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition.

1. Please don’t argue. I insist _____ lending you the money for your vacation.
2. That thin coat you’re wearing won’t protect you _____ the bitter, cold wind.
3. A: What’s the matter? Don’t you approve _____ my behavior?
   B: No, I don’t. I think you are rude.
4. A: Can I depend _____ you to pick up my mother at the airport tomorrow?
   B: Of course you can!
5. A: The police arrested a thief in my uncle’s store yesterday.
   B: What’s going to happen _____ him? Will he go to jail?
6. My friend Ken apologized _____ me _____ forgetting to pick me up in his car after the movie last night. I forgave him _____ leaving me outside the theater in the rain, but I’m not going to rely _____ him for transportation in the future.
7. A: Thank you _____ helping me move to my new apartment last weekend.
   B: You’re welcome.
8. It isn’t fair to compare Mr. Carlson _____ Ms. Anders. They’re both good teachers, but they have different teaching methods.
9. I’ve had a bad cold for a week and just can’t get rid _____ it.
10. Excuse me _____ interrupting you, but I have a call on the other line. Could I get back to you in a second?
CHAPTER 8
Count/Noncount Nouns and Articles

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Identify count and noncount nouns.
• Write the word ONE in the blank if possible.
  NOTE: One is a number. It is used with singular count nouns.
• If it is not correct to use the word one, write a slash (/) in the blank.
  NOTE: One cannot be used with noncount nouns. A noncount noun is called a "noncount noun" because you can't "count" it with numbers one, two, three, etc.

1. I have _______ furniture in my apartment.
2. I have _______ table in my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing _______ ring on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing _______ jewelry on her left hand.
5. I have _______ homework to do tonight.
6. I have _______ assignment to do.
7. I have _______ job to finish.
8. I have _______ work to do.
9. I asked _______ question.
10. I was looking for _______ information.
11. I learned _______ new word today.
12. I learn _______ new vocabulary every day.

◊ PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns: a/an and some.
(Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with A/AN (for count nouns) or SOME (for noncount nouns).

1. I bought _______ furniture for my apartment.
2. I bought _______ table for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing _______ ring on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing _______ jewelry on her left hand.
5. I have _______ homework to do tonight.
6. I have _______ assignment to do.
7. I have _______ job to finish.
8. I have _______ work to do.
9. I asked __________ question.
10. I was looking for __________ information.
11. I learned __________ new word today.
12. I learn __________ new vocabulary every day.

◊ PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns: adding -s. (Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Add -s if possible. Otherwise, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. I bought some furniture / for my apartment.
2. I bought some table ___ for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing some ring ___ on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing some jewelry ___ on her left hand.
5. I have some homework ___ to do tonight.
6. I have some assignment ___ to do.
7. I have some job ___ to finish.
8. I have some work ___ to do.
9. I asked some question ___.
10. I was looking for some information ___.
11. I learned some new word ___ today.
12. I learn some new vocabulary ___ every day.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns: using two. (Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Change SOME to TWO if possible. Otherwise, write nothing.

1. I bought some furniture for my apartment. (no change)
   two
2. I bought some tables for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing some rings on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing some jewelry on her left hand.
5. I have some homework to do tonight.
6. I have some assignments to do.
7. I have some jobs to finish.
8. I have some work to do.
9. I asked some questions.
10. I was looking for some information.
11. I learned some new words today.
12. I learn some new vocabulary every day.
PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns: using *a lot of*. (Charts 8–1 and 8–2)

Directions: Change *SOME* to *A LOT OF* if possible. Otherwise, write nothing.

*a lot of*
1. I bought *some furniture* for my apartment.

*a lot of*
2. I bought *some tables* for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing *some rings* on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing *some jewelry* on her left hand.
5. I have *some homework* to do tonight.
6. I have *some assignments* to do.
7. I have *some jobs* to finish.
8. I have *some work* to do.
9. I asked *some questions*.
10. I was looking for *some information*.
11. I learned *some new words* today.
12. I learn *some new vocabulary* every day.

PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns: using *too many* and *too much*. (Charts 8–1 and 8–2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *MANY* or *MUCH*.

1. I bought too *much* furniture for my apartment.
2. I bought too *many* tables for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing too *many* rings on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing too *much* jewelry on her left hand.
5. I can’t go to a movie tonight. I have too *much* homework to do.
6. I have too *many* assignments to do.
   I can’t finish all of them.
7. I have too *many* jobs to finish. I can’t do all of them.
8. I have too *much* work to do. I can’t finish all of it.
9. The child asked too *many* questions. I couldn’t answer all of them.
10. I can’t remember everything I read in the encyclopedia. There is too *much* information for me to remember all of it.
11. Sam’s writing is wordy. He uses too *many* words when he writes.
12. The teacher asked us to learn too *many* new *vocabulary*. I couldn’t remember all the new words.
**PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY:** Count and noncount nouns: using a few and a little. (Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with A FEW or A LITTLE.

1. I bought ________ furniture for my apartment.
2. I bought ________ tables for my apartment.
3. Rita is wearing ________ rings on her left hand.
4. Rita is wearing ________ jewelry on her left hand.
5. I have ________ homework to do tonight.
6. I have ________ assignments to do.
7. I have ________ jobs to finish.
8. I have ________ work to do.
9. I asked ________ questions.
10. I was looking for ________ information.
11. I learned ________ new words today.
12. I learn ________ new vocabulary every day.

**PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY:** A vs. an: singular count nouns. (Charts 8-1 and 8-2)

Directions: Write A or AN in the blanks.

1. _______ game
2. _______ rock
3. _______ store
4. _______ army
5. _______ egg
6. _______ island
7. _______ ocean
8. _______ umbrella
9. _______ university*
10. _______ horse
11. _______ hour**
12. _______ star
13. _______ eye
14. _______ new car
15. _______ old car
16. _______ used car
17. _______ uncle
18. _______ house
19. _______ honest mistake
20. _______ hospital
21. _______ hand
22. _______ aunt
23. _______ ant
24. _______ neighbor

*A university, a unit, a uniform, a union: these nouns begin with a consonant sound, so a (not an) is used. An uncle, an umbrella, an umpire, an urge: these nouns begin with a vowel sound, so an (not a) is used.

**If the “h” is silent, an is used: an hour, an honor, an honest person. Usually the “h” is pronounced and a is used: a holiday, a hotel, a hero, a high point, a home, etc.
PRACTICE 9—SELFSTUDY: A/an vs. some. (Charts 8–1 → 8–3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with SOME or A/AN.

1. I wrote _______ a letter.
2. I got _______ mail.
3. We bought _______ equipment for our camping trip.
4. You need _______ tool to cut wood.
5. I ate _______ food.
6. I had _______ apple.
7. I wore _______ old clothing.
8. I wore _______ old shirt.
9. Jim asked me for _______ advice.
10. I gave Jim _______ suggestion.
11. I read _______ interesting story in the paper.
12. The paper has _______ interesting news today.
13. I read _______ poem after dinner.
15. I know _______ song from India.
16. I know _______ Indian music.
17. I learned _______ new idiom.
18. I learned _______ new slang.

PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 8–1 → 8–3)

Directions: Add final -S/ES if possible. Otherwise, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. I’m learning a lot of grammar /.
2. We’re studying count and noncount noun s.
3. Olga knows several language s.
4. Olga has learned a lot of English .
5. Sara doesn’t like to wear makeup .
6. We enjoyed the scenery in the countryside.
7. Colorado has high mountain s.
8. City streets usually have a lot of traffic .
9. The streets are full of automobile s.
10. I had sand / in my shoes from walking on the beach.
11. The air was full of dust / from the wind storm.
12. Florida is famous for its white sand beach .
13. I’ve learned a lot of slang / from my new friends.
14. I made a lot of mistake / on my last composition.
15. I have some important information / for you.
16. I have some important fact for you.
17. My favorite team has won a lot of game this year.
18. Thailand and India have a lot of hot weather.
19. We heard a lot of thunder during the storm.
20. I drink a lot of water when the weather is hot.
21. Both of my parent have very good health.
22. A circle has 360 degree.
23. Professor have a lot of knowledge about their fields of study.
24. Everyone in my family wished me a lot a luck.
25. I thanked my two neighbor for their help.
26. Sometimes factory cause pollution.
27. Parents take pride in the success of their children.
28. I admire people who use their intelligence to the fullest extent.

◊ PRACTICE 11—GUIDED STUDY: Count and noncount nouns. (Chart 4–1 and 8–1 → 8–3)

Directions: Add final -s/-es as necessary. Do not make any other changes. The number in parentheses at the end of each section is the number of nouns that need final -s/-es.

Plants

1. Plants are the oldest living thing on earth. (2) = (2 nouns need final -s/-es)
2. Scientist divide living thing into two group: plant and animal. Generally speaking, plant stay in one place, but animal move around. (7)
3. Flower, grass, and tree grow every place where people live. Plant also grow in desert, in ocean, on mountaintop, and in polar region. (7)
4. Plant are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build house from them. Plant are also important to our health. We get many kind of beneficial drug from plant. In addition, plant provide beauty and enjoyment to all our life. (8)
5. Crop are plant that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crop. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy field of corn or wheat. Natural disaster such as flood and storm have caused farmer many problem since people first began to grow their own food. (9)
6. Food is a necessity for all living thing. All animal and plant need to eat. Most plant take what they need through their root and their leaf. The majority of insect live solely on plant. Many bird have a diet of worm and insect. Reptile eat small animal, egg, and insect. (15)

*See Chart 4–1 for variations in the spelling of words with a final -s.
**Some nouns have irregular plurals. See Chart 4–1.
PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 8–1 → 8–3)

Directions: Choose one or more of the given topics. MAKE A LIST of the things you see. Use expressions of quantity when appropriate.

Example: I’m sitting in my office. These are the things I see:
- two windows
- three desk lamps
- a lot of books—around 200 books about English grammar
- office equipment—a Macintosh computer, a printer, a photocopy machine
- typical office supplies—a stapler, paper clips, pens, pencils, a ruler, disks
- some photographs—three pictures of my daughter, one of my husband, one of my parents, two photos of my editors, and several pictures of good friends
- Etc.

1. Sit in any room of your choosing. List the things you see (including things other people are wearing if you wish).
2. Look out a window. List the things and people you see.
3. Go to a place outdoors (a park, a zoo, a city street) and list what you see.
4. Travel in your imagination to a room you lived in when you were a child. List everything you can remember about that room.

PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: How many and how much. (Charts 8–1 → 8–3; 4–1; and 6–2)

Directions: Complete the questions with MANY or MUCH. Add final -s/-es if necessary to make a noun plural. (Some of the count nouns have irregular plural forms.) If a verb is needed, choose the correct one from the parentheses. If final -s/-es is not necessary, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. How _______ letter ______es (is, are) there in the English alphabet?
2. How _______ mail ______ did you get yesterday?
3. How _______ man ______ men (has, have) a full beard at least once in their life?
4. How _______ family ______es (is, are) there in your apartment building?
5. How _______ word ______ (is, are) there in this sentence?
6. How _______ sentence ______ (is, are) there in this exercise?
7. How _______ chalk ______ (is, are) there in the classroom?
8. How _______ English ______ does Stefan know?
9. How _______ English literature ______ have you studied?
10. How _______ English word ______ do you know?
11. How _______ gasoline ______ does it take to fill the tank in your car? (British: How _______ petrol ______ does it take to fill the tank?)
12. How _______ homework ______ did the teacher assign?
13. How _______ grandchild ______ does Mrs. Cunningham have?
14. How _______ page ______ (is, are) there in this book?
15. How _______ library ______ (is, are) there in the U.S.?²

¹Answer: twenty-six (26) = There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
²Answer: approximately fifteen thousand (15,000).
16. How ________ bone______ (is, are) there in the human body?\(^3\)
17. How ________ tooth______ does the average person have?\(^4\)
18. How ________ water______ do you drink every day?
19. How ________ cup______ of tea do you usually drink in an average day?
20. How ________ tea______ do you usually drink in an average day?
21. How ________ glass______ of water do you drink every day?
22. How ________ fun______ did you have at the amusement park?
23. How ________ education______ does Ms. Martinez have?
24. How ________ soap______ should I use in the dishwasher?
25. How ________ island______ (is, are) there in Indonesia?\(^5\)
26. How ________ people______ (was, were) there on earth 2,000 years ago?\(^6\)
27. How ________ human being______ (is, are) there in the world today?\(^7\)
28. How ________ people______ will there be by the year 2030?\(^8\)
29. How ________ zero______ (is, are) there in a billion?\(^9\)
30. How ________ butterfly______ can you see in one hour on a summer day in a flower garden?

◊ PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: A few vs. a little. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with A FEW or A LITTLE. Add a final -S to the noun if necessary. Otherwise, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. Let’s listen to ________ a little ________ music / during dinner.
2. Let’s sing ________ a few ________ song s around the campfire.
3. We all need ________ help______ at times.
4. Ingrid is from Sweden, but she knows ________ English______.
5. I need ________ more apple______ to make a pie.
6. I like ________ honey______ in my coffee.
7. I have a problem. Could you give me ________ advice______?
8. I need ________ suggestion______.
9. He asked ________ question______.
10. We talked to ________ people______ on the plane.
11. Please give me ________ more minute______.
12. Ann opened the curtains to let in ________ light______ from outdoors.
13. I have ________ homework______ to do tonight.

\(^3\)Answer: two hundred and six (206).
\(^4\)Answer: thirty-two (32).
\(^5\)Answer: more than thirteen thousand seven hundred (13,700).
\(^6\)Answer: approximately two hundred and fifty million (250,000,000).
\(^7\)Answer: around six billion (6,000,000,000).
\(^8\)Answer: estimated at more than twelve billion (12,000,000,000).
\(^9\)Answer: nine (9).
PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY:  
How many and how much. (Charts 8-1 → 8-4; 4-1; and 6-2)

Directions:  
Make questions with HOW MANY or HOW MUCH. Use the information in parentheses to form Speaker A's question.

1. A: How
   How many children do the Millers have?
   B: Three. (The Millers have three children.)

2. A: How
   How much money does Jake make?
   B: A lot. (Jake makes a lot of money.)

3. A: How
  十一
   B: Eleven. (There are eleven players on a soccer team.)

4. A: How
   Just a little. (I have just a little homework tonight.)

5. A: How
   5,280. (There are 5,280 feet in a mile.)*

6. A: How
   1,000. (There are 1,000 meters/metres in a kilometer/kilometre.)

7. A: How
   Three. (I took three suitcases on the plane to Florida.)

8. A: How
   A lot. (I took a lot of suntan oil with me.)

9. A: How
   Two pairs. (I took two pairs of sandals.)

10. A: How
    One tube. (I took one tube of toothpaste.)

11. A: How
    Just a short time, only two hours. (The flight took two hours.)

12. A: How
    Three. (I've been in Florida three times.)

13. A: How
    A lot. (There are a lot of apples in the two baskets.)

    A lot. (There is a lot of fruit in the two baskets.)

*1 foot = 30 centimeters/centimetres; 1 mile = 1.6 kilometers/kilometres.
Directions: What units of measure are usually used with the following nouns? More than one unit of measure can be used with some of the nouns.

**PART I:** You are going to the store. What are you going to buy? Choose from these units of measure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bag</th>
<th>bottle</th>
<th>box</th>
<th>can (tin)*</th>
<th>jar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a can of olives</td>
<td>8. a jar of sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a box of breakfast cereal</td>
<td>9. a jar of wine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a jar of mineral water</td>
<td>10. a jar of corn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a jar of jam or jelly</td>
<td>11. a jar of peas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a can of tuna fish</td>
<td>12. a jar of flour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. a jar of crackers</td>
<td>13. a jar of soda pop**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. a jar of soup</td>
<td>14. a jar of paint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART II:** You are hungry and thirsty. What are you going to have? Choose from these units of measure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bowl</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>piece</th>
<th>slice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15. a cup/glass of green tea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. a bowl of breakfast cereal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. a bowl of cantaloupe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. a piece of bread</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. a piece of apple pie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. a piece of orange juice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. a slice of soup</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. a slice of candy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. a slice of beer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. a slice of noodles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. a slice of mineral water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. a slice of popcorn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. a slice of cheese on a cracker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. a slice of rice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. a slice of strawberries and ice cream</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY:** Units of measure with noncount nouns. (Chart 8–5)

Directions: What units of measure are usually used with the following nouns? More than one unit of measure can be used with some of the nouns.

You are going to the store. What are you going to buy? Choose from these units of measure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bag</th>
<th>bottle</th>
<th>box</th>
<th>can (tin)</th>
<th>jar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a jar of pickles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a jar of aspirin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a jar of laundry detergent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a jar of instant coffee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a jar of sardines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. a jar of sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. a jar of peanut butter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. a jar of soy sauce</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. a jar of uncooked noodles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. a jar of refried beans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a can = a tin in British English.

**Soda pop** refers to sweet carbonated beverages (also called "soft drinks"). This kind of drink is called "soda" in some parts of the United States, but "pop" in other parts of the country.
PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: *How many and how much.*  
(Charts 8-1 → 8-3; 4-1; and 6-2)

Directions: Pair up with another student.

**PART I:** Pretend you are going on a trip. Make a list of ten or so things you are going to take. Exchange your list with your partner. Using your partner’s list, ask **how many** or **how much** of each item she/he is going to take on her/his trip.

*Example:*  
STUDENT A’s list: suitcases, money, a passport, shoes, etc.

STUDENT B: How many suitcases are you going to take?
STUDENT A: Two.
STUDENT B: How much money?
STUDENT A: Three hundred dollars.
STUDENT B: How many passports?
STUDENT A: Just one, of course.
STUDENT B: How many pairs of shoes?
STUDENT A: Etc.

**PART II:** Look at the shopping list.

STUDENT A: Ask your partner **how many** or **how much** of each item she/he is going to buy.

STUDENT B: Make up a reasonable answer.

**PART III:** Pretend you are going on a shopping trip. Make a list of ten or so things you are going to buy. Exchange your list with your partner. Using your partner’s list, ask questions using **how many**, **how much**, **what kind of**, or any other question that occurs to you.

PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Count and noncount nouns.  
(Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: In several paragraphs, describe the perfect meal. Use your imagination. If you use the name of a dish that your reader is probably unfamiliar with, describe it in parentheses.

*Example:*

I’m going to imagine for you the perfect meal. I am on a terrace high on a hillside in Nepal. When I look out, I see snow-capped mountains in the distance. The valley below is hazy and beautiful. I’m with my friends Olga and Roberto. The table has a white tablecloth and a vase of blue flowers. I’m going to eat all of my favorite kinds of food.

First the waiter is going to bring escargots. (Escargots are snails cooked in butter and seasoned with garlic and other herbs). Etc.
Directions: Complete the sentence in COLUMN A with words from COLUMN B. The completed sentences will be common sayings in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ignorance is <strong>D</strong></td>
<td>A. the best teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Honesty is <strong>A</strong></td>
<td>B. the best medicine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Time is <strong>C</strong></td>
<td>C. power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Laughter is <strong>D</strong></td>
<td>D. bliss.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Beauty is <strong>E</strong></td>
<td>E. in the eye of the beholder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Knowledge is <strong>G</strong></td>
<td>F. money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Experience is <strong>F</strong></td>
<td>G. the best policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Directions: In groups (or by yourself), complete the lists with ABSTRACT NOUNS.

a. Name six good qualities you admire in a person.
   1. ___________ patience ________
   2. ___________ patience ________
   3. ___________ patience ________
   4. ___________ patience ________
   5. ___________ patience ________
   6. ___________ patience ________

b. Name five bad qualities people can have.
   1. ___________ greed ________
   2. ___________ greed ________
   3. ___________ greed ________
   4. ___________ greed ________
   5. ___________ greed ________

c. What conditions, goals, and values is it important for a country to have?
   1. ___________ prosperity ________
   2. ___________ prosperity ________
   3. ___________ prosperity ________
   4. ___________ prosperity ________
   5. ___________ prosperity ________

d. Certain bad conditions exist in the world. What are they?
   1. ___________ hunger ________
   2. ___________ hunger ________
   3. ___________ hunger ________

After you finish the lists, answer this question: How many of the nouns in your lists can be made plural with a final -s/-es? Add -s/-es to the nouns if possible.

**"Ignorance is bliss" is a saying. It means: If you know about problems, you have to worry about them and solve them. If you don't know about problems, you can avoid them and be happy (bliss = happiness). Many people do not believe that this saying is true. What do you think?**
PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: Using a or Ø for generalizations. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Write a or Ø in the blank before each singular noun. Then write a sentence with the plural form of the noun if possible.

**SINGULAR SUBJECTS**

1. **A** bird has feathers.
2. **Ø** corn is nutritious.
3. **Ø** milk is white.
4. **Ø** flower is beautiful.
5. **Ø** water is a clear liquid.
6. **Ø** horse is strong.
7. **Ø** jewelry is expensive.
8. **Ø** honey comes from bees.
9. **Ø** shirt has sleeves.
10. **Ø** soap produces bubbles.

**PLURAL SUBJECTS**

1. **Birds** have feathers.
2. (none possible)
3. (none possible)
4. (none possible)
5. (none possible)
6. (none possible)
7. (none possible)
8. (none possible)
9. (none possible)
10. (none possible)

PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Using a or some. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Write a or SOME in the blank before each singular noun. Then write a sentence with the plural form of the noun if possible.

**SINGULAR OBJECTS**

1. I saw **a** bird.
2. I ate **some** corn.
3. Would you like **some** milk?
4. I picked **a** flower.
5. I drank **a** water.
6. I fed grass to **the** horse.
7. Pat is wearing **some** jewelry.
8. I bought **some** honey.
9. Tom bought **a** new shirt.
10. I need **some** soap to wash the dishes.

**PLURAL OBJECTS**

1. I saw **some** birds.
2. (none possible)
3. (none possible)
4. (none possible)
5. (none possible)
6. (none possible)
7. (none possible)
8. (none possible)
9. (none possible)
10. (none possible)

PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: A/an vs. the: singular count nouns. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with A/AN or THE.

1. A: **A** dog makes a good pet.
   B: I agree.
2. A: Did you feed **the** dog?
   B: Yes, I did.
3. A: Let’s listen to _________ radio.
   B: Okay. I’ll turn it on.

4. A: Does your car have _________ radio?
   B: Yes, and _________ tape player.

5. My dorm room has _________ desk, _________ bed, _________ chest of drawers, and two chairs.

6. A: Jessica, where’s the stapler?
   B: On _________ desk. If it’s not there, look in _________ top drawer.

7. A: Sara, put your bike in _________ basement before dark.
   B: Okay, Dad.

8. Our apartment building has _________ basement. Sara keeps her bike there at night.

9. Every sentence has _________ subject and _________ verb.

10. Look at this sentence: Jack lives in Miami. What is _________ subject and what is _________ verb?

11. A: I can’t see you at four. I’ll be in _________ meeting then. How about four-thirty?
    B: Fine.

12. A: What time does _________ meeting start Tuesday?
    B: Eight.

13. Jack’s car ran out of gas. He had to walk _________ long distance to find _________ telephone and call his brother for help.

14. _________ distance from _________ sun to _________ earth is 93,000,000 miles.

15. A: Jake, _________ telephone is ringing. Can you get it?
    B: Sure.

16. A: I have _________ question.
    B: Okay. What do you want to know?

17. A: Ms. Ming, you have to help me!
    B: Calm down. What’s _________ problem?

18. A: I wrote _________ poem. Would you like to read it?
    B: Sure. What’s it about?

19. A: Was _________ lecture interesting?
    B: Yes. _________ speaker gave _________ interesting talk.

20. A: Where should we go for _________ cup of coffee after class?
    B: Let’s go to _________ cafe around _________ corner from the First National Bank.
Directions: Write Ø or THE in the blanks.

1. A: Ø dogs make good pets.
   B: I agree.

2. A: Did you feed the dogs?
   B: Yes, I did.

3. A: Ø fruit is good for you.
   B: I agree.

4. A: The fruit in this bowl is ripe.
   B: Good. I think I’ll have a piece.

5. As every parent knows, children require a lot of time and attention.

6. A: Frank, where are children?
   B: Next door at the Jacksons.

7. paper is made from trees or other plants.

8. paper in my notebook is lined.

   B: Here you are. Anything else? Want some more chicken, too?

10. potatoes are vegetables.

11. nurses are trained to care for sick and injured people.

12. When I was in Memorial Hospital, nurses were wonderful.

13. frogs are small animals without tails that live on land or in water. Turtles also live on land or in water, but they have tails and hard shells.

14. A: Nicole, what are those animals doing in here!?
   B: We’re playing. Frogs belong to Jason. Turtles are mine.
15. There are many kinds of ________ books. We use ________ textbooks and ________ workbooks in school. We use ________ dictionaries and ________ encyclopedias for reference. For ________ entertainment, we read ________ novels and ________ poetry.

16. ________ books on this desk are mine.

17. All of our food comes from ________ plants. Some food, such as ________ fruit and ________ vegetables, comes directly from ________ plants. Other food, such as ________ meat, comes indirectly from ________ plants.

18. I’m not very good at keeping houseplants alive. ________ plants in my apartment have to be tough. They survive in spite of me.

19. A: What do you want to be when you grow up?
   B: ________ engineer.
   A: Really? Why?
   B: Because ________ engineers build ________ bridges.
   A: That’s right. And where do they build bridges?
   B: Across ________ rivers, across ________ valleys, across ________ highways, across ________ railroad tracks, and across ________ other places I can’t think of right now.

20. There was a bad earthquake in my city. I couldn’t drive from my side of the city to the other side because ________ bridges across the river were unsafe. All of them had been damaged in the quake.

**PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Using the for second mention. (Chart 8–6)**

Directions: Write A/AN, SOME, or THE in the blanks.

1. I had ________ banana and ________ apple. I gave ________ banana to Mary. I ate ________ apple.

2. I had ________ bananas and ________ apples. I gave ________ bananas to Mary. I ate ________ apples.

3. I drank ________ coffee and ________ milk. ________ coffee was hot. ________ milk was cold.

4. I have ________ desk and ________ bed in my room. ________ desk is hard. ________ bed is hard, too, even though it’s supposed to be soft.

5. I forgot to bring my things with me to class yesterday, so I borrowed ________ pen and ________ paper from Joe. I returned ________ pen, but I used ________ paper for my homework.
6. I bought _______ bag of flour and _______ sugar to make _______ cookies. _______ sugar was okay, but I had to return _______ flour. When I opened _______ flour, I found _______ little bugs in it. I took it back to the people at the store and showed them _______ little bugs. They gave me _______ new bag of flour. _______ new bag didn’t have any bugs in it.

7. Yesterday while I was walking to work, I saw _______ birds in _______ tree. I also saw _______ cat under _______ tree. _______ birds didn’t pay any attention to _______ cat, but _______ cat was watching _______ birds intently.

8. Once upon a time, _______ princess fell in love with _______ prince. _______ princess wanted to marry _______ prince, who lived in a distant land. She summoned _______ messenger to take _______ things to _______ prince to show him her love. _______ messenger took _______ jewels and _______ robe made of yellow and red silk to _______ prince. _______ princess anxiously awaited _______ messenger’s return. She hoped that _______ prince would send her _______ tokens of his love. But when _______ messenger returned, he brought back _______ jewels and _______ beautiful silk robe that _______ princess had sent. Why? Why? she wondered. Then _______ messenger told her: _______ prince already had _______ wife.
PRACTICE 27—GUIDED STUDY: Using the for second mention. (Chart 8–6)

Directions: Write A/AN, SOME, or THE in the blanks.

1. One day last month while I was driving through the countryside, I saw ________ man
2. and ________ truck next to ________ covered bridge. ________ bridge crossed
3. ________ small river. I stopped and asked ________ man, "What's the matter? Can I be
4. of help?"
5. "Well," said ________ man, "my truck is about a half inch* too tall. Or ________
6. top of ________ bridge is a half inch too short. Either way, my truck won't fit under
7. ________ bridge."

8. "Hmmm. There must be ________ solution to this problem," I said.
9. "I don't know. I guess I'll have to turn around and take another route."
10. After a few moments of thought, I said, "Aha! I have ________ solution!"
11. "What is it?" said ________ man.
12. "Let a little air out of your tires. Then ________ truck won't be too tall and you can
13. cross ________ bridge over ________ river."
14. "Hey, that's ________ great idea. Let's try it!" So ________ man let a little air out
15. of ________ tires and was able to cross ________ river and be on his way.

PRACTICE 28—SELFSTUDY: Summary: A/an vs. Ø vs. the. (Chart 8–6)

Directions: Write A/AN, Ø, or THE in the blanks.

1. A: What would you like for breakfast?
   B: ________ egg and some toast.
   A: How would you like ________ egg?
   B: Fried, sunny side up.

*One-half inch = 1.27 centimeters.
2. __0__ eggs are nutritious.

3. It is __________ scientific fact: __________ steam rises when __________ water boils.

4. A: I’m looking for __________ tape player. Where is it?
   B: It’s on one of __________ shelves next to my desk.
   A: Ah! There it is. Thanks.
   B: You’re welcome.
   A: Hmmm. I don’t think it works. Maybe __________ batteries are dead.

5. __________ chalk is __________ necessity in a classroom.

6. A: Where’d __________ plumber go? __________ sink’s still leaking!
   B: Relax. He went to shut off __________ water supply to __________ house. He’ll fix __________ leak when he gets back.

7. __________ water is essential to human life, but don’t drink __________ water in the Flat River. It’ll kill you! __________ pollution in that river is terrible.

8. A: How did you get here? Did you walk?
   B: No, I took __________ taxi.

9. A: We’re ready to go, kids. Get in __________ car.
   B: Just __________ minute! We forgot something.
   A: Marge, can you get __________ kids in __________ car, please?
   B: Just __________ minute, Harry. They’re coming.

10. __________ newspapers are __________ important source of __________ information.

11. __________ sun is __________ star. We need __________ sun for __________ heat, __________ light, and __________ energy.

12. __________ ducks are my favorite farm animals.

13. A: Where’s __________ letter I wrote to Ted?
   B: It’s gone. __________ strong wind blew it on __________ floor, and __________ dog tore it up. I threw __________ scraps in __________ wastebasket.

14. __________ efficient transportation system is __________ essential part of a healthy economy.

15. A: Did you set __________ alarm?
   B: Yes.
   A: Did you lock __________ door?
   B: Yes.
   A: Did you check __________ stove?
   B: Yes.
   A: Did you close all __________ windows?
   B: Yes.
   A: Then let’s turn out __________ lights.
   B: Goodnight, dear.
16. Karen is ________ exceptionally talented person.

17. A: Can I have some money, Dad?
   B: What for?
   A: I want to go to the movies with my friends and hang around the mall.
   B: What you need is a job! __________ money doesn't grow on __________ trees, you know.

18. A doctor cures __________ sick people. __________ farmer grows __________ crops.
    __________ architect designs __________ buildings. __________ artist creates
    __________ new ways of looking at __________ world and __________ life.

19. __________ earthquakes are __________ relatively rare events in central Africa.

20. My city experienced __________ earthquake recently. I was riding my bicycle when
    __________ ground beneath me trembled so hard that it shook me off my bike.

◊ PRACTICE 29—GUIDED STUDY: Summary: A/an vs. Ø vs. the. (Chart 8–6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with A/an, Ø, or THE.

1. __________ good food keeps us healthy and adds __________ pleasure to our lives.

2. A: What is your favorite food?
   B: __________ ice cream—it’s cold, sweet, and smooth.

3. __________ pizza originated in Italy. It is a pie with __________ cheese, __________
   tomatoes, and other things on top. __________ “pizza” is __________ Italian word for
   __________ “pie.”

   B: There’re only two pieces left. You take __________ big piece, and I’ll take __________
   small one.

5. We had __________ steamed rice, __________ fish, and __________ vegetables for lunch
   yesterday. __________ rice was cooked just right. __________ fish was very tasty.
   __________ vegetables were fresh.
6. A: Well, are you ready to leave?
B: Let me take just one last sip of coffee. I’ve really enjoyed this meal.
A: I agree. _______ food was excellent—especially _______ fish. And _______ service was exceptionally good. Let’s leave _______ waitress _______ good tip.
B: I usually tip around fifteen percent, sometimes eighteen percent.

7. Only one of _______ continents in _______ world is uninhabited. Which one?

8. Last week, I took _______ easy exam. It was in my economics class. I had _______ right answers for all of _______ questions on _______ exam. My score was 100%.

9. Generally speaking, anyone who goes to _______ job interview should wear _______ nice clothes.

10. A mouse has _______ long, thin, almost hairless tail. _______ rats also have _______ long, skinny tails.

11. Years ago, people used _______ wood or _______ coal for _______ heat, but now most people use _______ gas, _______ oil, or _______ electricity.

12. _______ good book is _______ friend for _______ life.

13. _______ gold is _______ excellent conductor of _______ electricity. It is used in many of the electrical circuits on _______ spaceship.

14. A: Where’s Alice?
B: She’s in _______ kitchen making _______ sandwich.

15. In ancient times, people did not use _______ coins for money. Instead they used _______ shells, _______ beads, or _______ salt. The first coins were made around 2600 years ago. Today, most money is made from _______ paper.

16. Ted, pass _______ salt, please. And _______ pepper. Thanks.

17. _______ different countries have _______ different geography. Italy is located on _______ peninsula. Japan is _______ island nation.

18. There are some wonderful small markets in my neighborhood. You can always get _______ fresh fish at Mr. Rico’s fish market.

19. A: I saw _______ good program on TV last night.
B: Oh? What was it?
A: It was _______ documentary about wildlife in Alaska. It was really interesting. Did you see it, too?
B: No, I watched _______ old movie. It wasn’t very good. I wish I’d known about _______ documentary. I would have watched it.

20. _______ modern people, just like their ancestors, are curious about _______ universe. Where did _______ moon come from? Does _______ life exist on other planets? What is _______ star? How large is _______ universe? How long will _______ sun continue to burn?
PRACTICE 30—SELFSTUDY: Object pronouns: one vs. it. (Charts 8-7 and 8-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with ONE or IT.

1. A: Do you need a pen?
   B: No. I already have _____ one _____.
2. A: Where is my pen?
   B: Mike has _____ it _____.
3. A: Do you have a car?
   B: No. I don’t have enough money to get ________.
4. A: Does Erica like her new car?
   B: Does she like ________? She loves ________!
5. A: Do you have a bicycle?
   B: Yes.
   A: Can I use ________ this afternoon?
6. A: Does Tom have a bicycle?
   B: No, but I think Eric has ________.
7. A: Do you see an empty table?
   B: Yes. I see ________ over there in the corner.
8. A: This table is empty.
   B: Let’s take ________.
9. A: Do you have a dictionary?
   B: No, but I think Yoko has ________.
10. A: Where's my dictionary?
    B: I don’t know. I haven’t seen ________.

PRACTICE 31—GUIDED STUDY: Object pronouns: one vs. it. (Charts 8-7 and 8-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with ONE or IT.

1. A: Where's my pencil?
   B: Jason has ________.
2. A: I need a pencil.
   B: Jason has an extra ________. Ask him.
3. I don't have a small calculator. I need to buy ________ for my math class.
4. A: Do you have a small calculator?
   B: Yes.
   A: May I borrow ________ for a minute?
5. A: Are you going to take a sandwich along with you for lunch?
   B: No. I'll get ________ at the deli around the corner from the office.
6. I made a sandwich for James's lunch, but he forgot to take ________ to school.
7. Westville Hospital is the name of our new hospital. We built __________ two years ago.
8. Our village doesn’t have a hospital. We hope to build __________ in the next five years.
9. When I moved into my new apartment, I wanted to hang my paintings on the wall. I didn’t have a hammer, so I went to the hardware store and bought __________.
10. My friend Ralph helped me hang my paintings on the wall. When I handed him the hammer, he dropped __________ on his toe.

◊ PRACTICE 32—SELFSTUDY: Some/any vs. it/them. (Charts 8–7 and 8–8)

Directions: Select the appropriate completion from the italicized words.

1. A: Where did you get all of this new furniture?
   B: I bought __________.

2. A: Does Jones Department Store sell bedroom furniture?
   B: No, but you can find __________ at Charlie’s Bargain Warehouse.

3. A: What are you eating?
   B: Cheese. Would you like __________? There’s plenty.

4. A: Here’s the cheese you wanted me to buy.
   B: Thanks. Put __________ in the refrigerator, please.

5. A: Where did you get these magazines?
   B: I got __________ at the newstand on Pyle Street.

6. A: Do you read a lot of magazines?
   B: Not usually, but I often pick __________ up at the airport before I get on a flight. I always read magazines when I fly.

7. A: How about some hot tea?
   B: Thanks, but I don’t want __________ right now.

8. A: Here’s some hot tea. Would you like some sugar or lemon?
   B: No, but I’d like to put a little milk in __________.
PRACTICE 33—GUIDED STUDY: *Some/any vs. it/them.* (Charts 8–7 and 8–8)

Directions: Select the appropriate completion from the *italicized* words.

1. A: Where are the scissors—the ones with the orange handles?
   B: I put *some, it, them* in the top drawer.

2. A: Do you have any scissors?
   B: No, but I think Aunt Ella has *some, it, them.* Ask her.

3. A: Do you have any dog shampoo?
   B: No, but I think Aunt Ella has *some, it, them.* Ask her.

4. A: What are those?
   B: What do you mean? They’re scissors, of course.
   A: Where did you get *some, it, them?*
   B: I borrowed *some, it, them* from Aunt Ella.

5. A: What’s that?
   B: It’s shampoo especially for dogs. It kills fleas.
   A: Where did you get *some, it, them?*
   B: I borrowed *some, it, them* from Aunt Ella. My dog has fleas. I’m going to give her a bath and kill *some, it, them.*
   A: Look at the label. Read *some, it, them.* What does it say?
   B: It says “Flea Shampoo” on the label.
   A: That means you’re supposed to give the fleas a bath, not the dog!
   B: Oh sure! Ha-ha. Stop joking around and help me give the dog a bath.

6. A: I’m going to the post office this afternoon.
   B: Really? Could you take these letters with you and mail *some, it, them* for me? Thanks.

7. A: Is the mail here?
   B: Yes.
   A: Did I get *any, it, them?*
8. A: Take this letter and give some, it, them to Alison.
   B: Okay.

9. A: Could you save those newspapers for me? I'd like to read some, it, them later.
   B: Sure.
   A: I especially want to read the local paper. Be sure to save some, it, them for me.
   B: Don't worry.

10. A: Does your son Kevin like to read books?
    B: He hasn't read any, it, them in a long time.
    A: Maybe you should buy some, it, them for him. Children like to have their own books.
    B: I bought him a book for his last birthday. He never read some, it, them.

◊ PRACTICE 34—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions. (Chapter 8; Appendix 1)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition.

1. The twins may look alike, but Robby's behavior is very different from Tim's.

2. I'm sorry I was feeling sorry myself. I didn't mean anything I said.

3. I spoke to my brother your problem, and he said that there was nothing he could do to help you.

4. All right, children, here is your math problem: add ten twelve, subtract two that total; divide ten that answer; and multiply the result five. What is the final answer?

5. I feel pretty good about my final examination in English. I'm hoping a good grade, and I'm anxious to get my paper back.

6. Please try to concentrate my explanation. I can't repeat it.

7. A: Did you hear the plans to build a new hotel in the middle of town? It's wonderful!
   B: Yes, I heard, but I disagree you. I think it's terrible! It means the town will be full of tourists all the time.

8. A: Have you heard your friend in Thailand recently?
   B: Yes. She's having a difficult time. She's not accustomed hot weather.

9. A: I must tell you a crazy thing that happened last night. Have you heard?
   B: What? What happened?
   A: A hundred monkeys escaped the zoo.
   B: You've got to be kidding! How did that happen?
Directions: Complete each sentence with the appropriate preposition.

1. I’m ready _______ the test. I studied hard.
2. It’s important for you to believe _______ your own abilities. Tell yourself, “I can do it!”
3. _______ the past, people traveled from Europe _______ North and South America only by boat.
4. I applied _______ a job at a florist’s. I like to arrange flowers.
5. I will not discuss this _______ you. It’s private information.
6. It’s not polite to laugh _______ other people’s mistakes.
7. Carol’s house is full _______ people. Is she having a party?
8. Listen _______ me!
9. Jack arrived _______ the bus stop just after the bus had left.
10. I arrived _______ this city _______ September third.
11. Your grades are wonderful. Your mother and I are very proud _______ you.
12. I’m looking forward _______ my holiday in Spain.
14. The army protected the president _______ his enemies. The rebels attacked the presidential palace. They tried to get rid _______ the president by force.
15. A: What are you doing under the sink?
   B: I’m looking _______ my ring. It went down the drain, and I’ve taken the pipe out.
16. A: Did you hear _______ my promotion?
   B: Yes. They told me to report to you _______ noon tomorrow.
17. I’m a little afraid _______ flying, so when I was buying an airplane ticket, I asked _______ a seat near the front because I thought it was safer near the main door. The person behind me insisted _______ having a seat near the back, because he thought it was safer there. The next person paid _______ his ticket only after they assured him that he could have a seat over the wing, which he felt was the safest location on the airplane. It’s very confusing. _______ the future, I think I’ll just sit wherever they put me.
18. The people of the Hawaiian islands are famous _______ their warm hospitality. When we visited the islands, everyone we met was extremely nice _______ us.
19. A: Barbara is telling Ben something _______ you. I think she’s complaining _______ you. Is she angry _______ you?
   B: I borrowed some money _______ her a long time ago, and I never paid her back.
   I’d better try to see her _______ the morning and give her the money I owe her.
   I’d also better apologize _______ her _______ waiting so long.
20. My chemistry examination consisted _______ all of the things I didn’t understand during the semester. I couldn’t concentrate _______ it at all. I’m sure that I didn’t pass.
CHAPTER 9
Connecting Ideas

◊ PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Connecting ideas with and. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Underline the words that are connected with AND. Label these words as NOUNS, VERBS, or ADJECTIVES.

1. The farmer has a cow, a goat, and a black horse.

2. Danny is a bright and happy child.

3. I picked up the telephone and dialed Steve's number.

4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.

5. My feet were cold and wet.

6. Sara is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.

7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.

8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Punctuating a series with and. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Add COMMAS where necessary.

1. Rivers streams lakes and oceans are all bodies of water.
   → Rivers, streams, lakes, and oceans are all bodies of water. OR
   Rivers, streams, lakes and oceans are all bodies of water.

2. My oldest brother my neighbor and I went shopping yesterday.

3. Ms. Parker is intelligent friendly and kind.

4. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue Dan Joe and Mary?

5. In the early 1600s, the Chinese made wallpaper by painting birds flowers and landscapes on large sheets of rice paper.

6. Can you watch television listen to the radio and read the newspaper at the same time?

7. Lawyers doctors teachers and accountants all have some form of continuing education throughout their careers.

8. Gold is beautiful workable indestructible and rare.

9. My mother father grandfather and sisters welcomed my brother and me home.

10. My husband imitates animal sounds for our children. He moos like a cow roars like a lion and barks like a dog.

PRACTICE 3—GUIDED STUDY: Punctuating a series with and. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Make a list for each of the topics below. Then write sentences using this list. Use AND in your sentence.

Example: three things you are afraid of
   List: heights
         poisonous snakes
         guns

Possible sentences:
   → I'm afraid of heights, poisonous snakes, and guns.
   → Three of the things I'm afraid of are heights, poisonous snakes, and guns.
   → Heights, poisonous snakes, and guns make me feel afraid.

1. your three favorite sports
2. three adjectives that describe a person whom you admire
3. four cities that you would like to visit
4. three characteristics that describe (name of this city)
5. three or more separate things you did this morning
6. the five most important people in your life
7. three or more things that make you happy
8. three or more adjectives that describe the people in your country
Directions: Each of the following sentences contains two independent clauses. Find the SUBJECT (S) and VERB (V) of each clause. Add a COMMA or a PERIOD. CAPITALIZE as necessary.

1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
   S V S V
2. Birds fly, fish swim.
3. Dogs bark, lions roar.
4. Dogs bark, lions roar.
5. A week has seven days a year has 365 days.
6. A week has seven days and a year has 365 days.
7. Bill raised his hand and the teacher pointed at him.
8. Bill raised his hand the teacher pointed at him.

Directions: Add COMMAS where appropriate.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time but she didn't listen.
   → I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn't listen.
2. I talked to Tom for a long time and asked him many questions.
   → (no change)
3. I talked to Bob for a long time and he listened carefully to every word.
   → I talked to Bob for a long time, and he listened carefully to every word.
4. Please call Jane or Ted.
5. Please call Jane and Ted.
6. Please call Jane Ted or Anna.
7. Please call Jane Ted and Anna.
8. I waved at my friend but she didn't see me.
9. I waved at my friend and she waved back.
10. I waved at my friend and smiled at her.
11. Was the test hard or easy?
12. My test was short and easy but Ali's test was hard.
PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Using and, but, or, and so. (Charts 9-1 → 9-3)

Directions: Write in the correct completion.

1. I was tired, _______ I went to bed.
   A. but   B. or   C. so

2. I sat down on the sofa _________ opened the newspaper.
   A. but   B. and   C. so

3. The students were on time, _________ the teacher was late.
   A. but   B. or   C. so

4. I would like one pet. I'd like to have a dog _________ a cat.
   A. but   B. and   C. or

5. Our children are happy _________ healthy.
   A. but   B. and   C. or

6. I wanted a cup of tea, _________ I heated some water.
   A. but   B. and   C. so

7. The phone rang, _________ I didn’t answer it.
   A. but   B. and   C. so

8. You can have an apple _________ an orange. Choose one.
   A. but   B. and   C. or

PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY: Using and, but, or, and so. (Charts 9-1 → 9-3)

Directions: Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. I washed and dried the dishes. → (no change)

2. I washed the dishes and my son dried them.
   → I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.

3. I called their house but no one answered the phone.

4. He offered me an apple or a peach.

5. I bought some apples peaches and bananas.

6. I was hungry so I ate an apple.

7. Bill was hungry and ate two apples.

8. My sister is generous and kind-hearted.

9. My daughter is affectionate shy independent and smart.

10. It started to rain so we went inside and watched television.
PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Using and, but, or, and so. (Charts 9-1 → 9-3)

Directions: Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. Gina wants a job as an air traffic controller. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English so it is important for Gina to be fluent in the language.
2. Why do people with different cultural backgrounds sometimes fear and distrust each other?
3. Mozart was a great composer but he had a short and difficult life. During the last part of his life, he was penniless sick and unable to find work but he wrote music of lasting beauty and joy.
4. Nothing in nature stays the same forever. Today's land sea climate plants and animals are all part of a relentless process of change continuing through millions of years.
5. People and animals must share the earth and its resources.
6. According to one researcher, the twenty-five most common words in English are: the and a to of I in was that it he you for had is with she has on at have but me my and not.

PRACTICE 9—SELFSTUDY: Separating sentences: periods and capital letters. (Charts 9-1 → 9-3)

Directions: Add periods and capital letters as necessary.

1. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies they live throughout the world.
   → There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
2. I like to get mail from my friends and family it is important to me.
3. We are all connected by our humanity we need to help each other we can all live in peace.
4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong the streets became raging streams luckily no one died in the flood.
5. People have used needles since prehistoric times the first buttons appeared more than two thousand years ago zippers are a relatively recent invention the zipper was invented in 1890.

Directions: Add COMMAS, PERIODS, and CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary.

1. African elephants are larger than Asiatic elephants. Elephants native to Asia are easier to train and have gentler natures than African elephants.

2. Asiatic elephants live in jungles and forests in India Indonesia Malaysia Thailand India China and other countries in southeastern and southern Asia.

3. Elephants eat roots leaves bushes grass branches and fruit they especially like berries dates corn and sugar cane.

4. Elephants spend a lot of time in water and are good swimmers they take baths in rivers and lakes and like to roll around in muddy water they like to give themselves a shower by shooting water from their trunks.

5. After a bath, they often cover themselves with dirt the dirt protects their skin from the sun and insects.

6. Most elephants live in herds an older female (called a matriarch) leads a herd.

7. A female elephant is pregnant for approximately twenty months and almost always has only one baby a young elephant stays close to its mother for the first ten years of its life.
8. Elephants live peacefully together in herds but some elephants (called rogues) leave the herd and become mean; these elephants usually are in pain from decayed teeth, a disease, or a wound.

9. Elephants are intelligent animals; a well-trained elephant can kneel, stand up, or turn around on command.

10. Elephants are in danger of extinction so it is important to stop the illegal killing of elephants; they are killed most often for their ivory.

◊ PRACTICE 11—GUIDED STUDY: Punctuating with commas and periods.
(Charts 9-1 → 9-3)

Directions: Add commas, periods, and capital letters as necessary.

(1) A few days ago, a friend and I were driving from Benton Harbor to Chicago. We were in a lot of traffic, but it was moving smoothly. We didn’t experience any delays for the first hour but near Chicago we ran into some highway construction; the traffic wasn’t moving at all; my friend and I sat in the car and waited; we talked about our jobs, our families, and the terrible traffic; slowly the traffic started to move; we noticed a black sports car at the side of the road; the right blinker was blinking; the driver obviously wanted to get back into the line of traffic; car after car passed without letting the black sports car get in line; I decided to do a good deed; so I motioned for the black car to get in line ahead of me; the driver of the black car waved thanks to me; and I waved back at him; all cars had to stop at a toll booth a short way down the road; I held out my money to pay my toll; but the tolltaker just smiled and waved me on; she told me that the man in the black sports car had already paid my toll; wasn’t that a nice way of saying thank you?
PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Using auxiliary verbs after but and and. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with AUXILIARY VERBS.

PART I: Auxiliaries after but.
1. Debra reads a lot of books, but her brothers ____________.
2. Sam isn’t in the school play this year, but Adam ____________.
3. I will be at home this evening, but my roommate ________________.
4. Ducks like to swim, but chickens ____________.
5. That phone doesn’t work, but this one ____________.
6. Joe is at home, but his parents ________________.
7. I can’t swim, but my dog ________________.
8. Jack has visited my home, but Linda ________________.
9. I’m not going to graduate this year, but my best friend ________________.
10. My dog crawls under the bed when it thunders, but my cat ________________.

PART II: Auxiliaries after and.
11. Debra reads a lot of books, and her sisters ____________ too.
12. Horses are domesticated animals, and camels ________________ too.
13. Red isn’t a dull color, and orange ____________ either.
14. Jack didn’t go to the picnic, and Paul ________________ either.
15. I work at an airplane factory, and my brother ________________ too.
16. Dick won’t work late every evening, and Jean ________________ either.
17. Fatima is in class today, and Pedro ____________ too.
18. I can’t sing, and my wife ____________ either.

◊ PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Using auxiliary verbs after but and and. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with auxiliary verbs.

1. I like rock music, and my roommate ____________ too.
2. My son enjoys monster movies, but I ____________.
3. Paul can’t speak Spanish, and Larry ____________ either.
4. My neighbor walks to work every morning, but I ____________.
5. Carl can touch his nose with his tongue, but most people ____________.
6. I am exhausted from the long trip, and my mother ____________ too.
7. I don’t have a dimple in my chin, but my brother ____________.
8. I visited the museum yesterday, and my friend ____________ too.
9. Water isn’t solid, but ice ____________.
10. Clouds aren’t solid, and steam ____________ either.

◊ PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Using too, so, either, or neither after and. (Chart 9-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

PART I: Complete the sentences with an auxiliary + too or either.

1. Snow is white, and clouds ____________.
2. I can’t cook, and my roommate ____________.
3. Squirrels have long tails, and cats ____________.
4. I like movies, and my wife ____________.
5. I don’t like salty food, and my wife ____________.
6. Sugar isn’t expensive, and salt ____________.
7. Sugar is sweet, and honey ____________.
8. Rosa Gomez wasn’t in class yesterday, and Mr. Nazari ____________.
9. Andy didn’t know the answer to the question, and Tina ____________.
10. I couldn’t understand the substitute teacher, and Yoko ____________.
11. Everyone in the room laughed at my foolish mistake, and I ____________.
12. Fish can’t walk, and snakes ____________.
13. I like to fix things around the house, and Ted ____________.
14. I’d rather stay home this evening, and my husband ____________.
PART II: Complete the sentences with SO or NEITHER + an AUXILIARY.

15. Pasta is a famous Italian dish, and ________ so is ________ pizza.
16. Anteaters don't have teeth, and ________ neither do ________ most birds.
17. I didn't go to the bank, and ________ my husband.
18. Turtles are reptiles, and ________ snakes.
19. My sister has dark hair, and ________ I.
20. Gorillas don't have tails, and ________ human beings.
21. I'm studying English, and ________ Mr. Chu.
22. I'm not a native speaker of English, and ________ Mr. Chu.
23. Wood burns, and ________ paper.
24. Mountain climbing is dangerous, and ________ auto racing.
25. I've never seen a monkey in the wild, and ________ my children.
26. When we heard the hurricane warning, I nailed boards over my windows and ________ all of my neighbors.
27. My brother and I studied chemistry together. I didn't pass the course, and ________ he.
28. Ostriches can't fly, and ________ penguins.

◇ PRACTICE 15—GUIDED STUDY: Using so or neither to respond. (Chart 9-5)

Directions: Pair up with another student (or friend, roommate, etc.).

STUDENT A: With your book open, say the given sentence. Complete the sentence with your own words if necessary.

STUDENT B: Respond to A's statement by using SO or NEITHER. Your book is closed.

Example: I'm confused.

STUDENT A: I'm confused.
STUDENT B: So am I.*

*This exercise is designed to practice the use of so and neither in conversational responses. If, however, STUDENT B doesn't want to agree with, echo, or support STUDENT A's statement, there are alternative responses. For example:

STUDENT A: I'm confused.
STUDENT B: You are? What's the matter?
STUDENT A: Frogs don't have tails.
STUDENT B: Really? Is that so? Hmmm. I didn't know know that. Are you sure?
STUDENT A: Ivar's Seafood Restaurant is a good place to eat in Seattle.
STUDENT B: Oh? I've never eaten there.
Example: Frogs don’t have tails.
STUDENT A: Frogs don’t have tails.
STUDENT B: Neither do human beings.

Example: (Name of a restaurant) is a good place to eat in (this city).
STUDENT A: Ivar’s Seafood Restaurant is a good place to eat in Seattle.
STUDENT B: So is Hong Kong Gardens.

1. I’m thirsty.
2. I’d like (a kind of drink).
3. I studied last night.
4. I study grammar every day.
5. I’ve never been in (name of a country).
6. I don’t like (a kind of food).
7. . . . is a (big/small) country.
8. (Name of a student) is from (name of a country).
9. Soccer is . . . .
10. (Name of a student) has (dark/red/black/etc.) hair.
11. I like (a kind of) weather.
12. Monkeys climb trees.
13. Ice is cold.
14. ( . . . ) has a part in her/his hair.
15. (name of a country) is a large country.

Directions: Switch roles.
16. I (write/don’t write) a lot of letters.
17. I (get/don’t get) a lot of mail.
18. San Francisco is a seaport.
19. Fish live in water.
20. I’ve never seen an iceberg.
21. Swimming is an Olympic sport.
22. I (like/don’t like) the weather today.
23. I’d rather go to (name of a place) than (name of a place).
24. (name of a city) is in South America.
25. Oxygen is colorless.
26. Elephants are big animals.
27. (name of a country) is in Africa.
28. I’ve never had caviar* (or name of another exotic food) for breakfast.
29. Denmark has no volcanoes.
30. I don’t have (red/gray/white) hair.

*Caviar = fish eggs (an expensive delicacy in some cultures).
PRACTICE 16—GUIDED STUDY: Using too, so, either, or neither. (Chart 9-5)

Directions: Create dialogues (either with a partner or in writing) between A and B. STUDENT A uses the given verb to make a statement (not a question). STUDENT B reacts to A’s idea by using TOO, SO, EITHER, or NEITHER in a response.

Example: would like
STUDENT A: I’d like to sail around the world someday.
STUDENT B: So would I. OR I would too.*

Example: didn’t want
STUDENT A: Toshi didn’t want to give a speech in front of the class.
STUDENT B: Neither did Ingrid. OR Ingrid didn’t either.*

1. don’t have 7. can fly
2. can’t speak 8. would like
3. enjoy 9. didn’t go
4. isn’t going to be 10. are
5. haven’t ever seen 11. is sitting
6. will be 12. wasn’t

PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Adverb clauses with because. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: Underline the ADVERB CLAUSES. Find the SUBJECT (S) and VERB (V) of the adverb clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Johnny was late for work because he missed the bus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I closed the door because the room was cold.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Because I lost my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Joe didn’t bring his book to class because he couldn’t find it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 18—SELFSTUDY: Adverb clauses with because. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: Add PERIODS, COMMAS, and CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot we felt more comfortable then.
   → I opened the window because the room was hot. We felt more comfortable then.
2. I can’t use my bicycle because it has a flat tire. → (no change)
3. Because his coffee was cold Jack didn’t finish it he left it on the table and walked away.
   → Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn’t finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.

*This practice asks you to use too, so, either or neither in conversational responses. Other responses are, of course, possible. For example:
A: I’d like to sail around the world someday.
B: Really? Why?
A: Toshi didn’t want to give a speech in front of the class.
B: Oh? Why not?
4. Annie is very young because she is afraid of the dark she likes to have a light on in her bedroom at night.
5. My sister went to a doctor because she hurt her right knee.
6. Marilyn has a cold because she's not feeling well today she's not going to go to her office.

◊ PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Adverb clauses with because. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: Add PERIODS, COMMAS, and CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary.

1. Because the weather was bad we canceled our trip into the city we stayed home and watched TV.
2. Mark is an intelligent and ambitious young man because he hopes to get a good job later in life he is working hard to get a good education now.
3. Many species of birds fly to warm climates in the winter because they can't tolerate cold weather.
4. Frank put his head in his hands he was angry and upset because he had lost a lot of work on his computer.

◊ PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Because vs. so. (Charts 9-3 and 9-6)

Directions: Give sentences with the same meaning. Use COMMAS as appropriate.

PART I: Restate the sentence, using so.

1. Jack lost his job because he never showed up for work on time.
   → Jack never showed up for work on time, so he lost his job.
2. Because I was sleepy, I took a nap.
3. I opened the window because the room was hot.
4. Because it was raining, I stayed indoors.

PART II: Restate the sentence, using BECAUSE.

5. Jason was hungry, so he ate.
   → Because Jason was hungry, he ate. OR Jason ate because he was hungry.
6. I was tired, so I went to bed.
7. The water in the river is polluted, so we can't go swimming.
8. My watch is broken, so I was late for my job interview.
PRACTICE 21—GUIDED STUDY: Using *because*. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

*Example:* My friend and I didn’t . . . because . . .
   → My friend and I didn’t go to the party *because* we didn’t know anyone who was going to be there.

1. Because I . . . , I . . .
2. Sometimes people . . . because they . . .
3. Parents . . . because . . .
4. Because my parents . . . , . . .
5. . . had a problem. He couldn’t . . . because . . .
6. Because cats . . . , . . .
7. My friend . . . yesterday. He didn’t . . . because . . .
8. Because . . . and . . . , they . . .

PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: Using *because* and *even though*. (Charts 9-6 and 9-7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Even though I was hungry, I [B] a lot at dinner.
   A. ate       B. didn’t eat
2. Because I was hungry, I [ ] a lot at dinner.
   A. ate       B. didn’t eat
3. Because I was cold, I [ ] my coat.
   A. put on     B. didn’t put on
4. Even though I was cold, I [ ] my coat.
   A. put on     B. didn’t put on
5. Even though Mike [ ] sleepy, he stayed up to watch the end of the game on TV.
   A. was       B. wasn’t
6. Because Linda ______ sleepy, she went to bed.
   A. was  B. wasn't

7. Because Kate ran too slowly, she ______ the race.
   A. won  B. didn't win

8. Even though Jessica ran fast, she ______ the race.
   A. won  B. didn't win

9. I ______ the test for my driver's license because I wasn't prepared.
   A. failed  B. didn't fail

10. I went to my daughter's school play because she ______ me to be there.
    A. wanted  B. didn't want

11. I bought a new suit for the business trip even though I ______ it.
    A. could afford  B. couldn't afford

12. Even though I had a broken leg, I ______ to the conference in New York.
    A. went  B. didn't go

◊ PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Using even though and although. (Chart 9-7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. Even though ostriches have wings, ______.
   A. their feathers are large  B. they are big birds  C. they can't fly

2. Although ______, the hungry man ate every bit of it.
   A. an apple is both nutritious and delicious  B. the cheese tasted good to him  C. the bread was old and stale

3. The nurse didn't bring Mr. Hill a glass of water even though ______.
   A. she was very busy  B. she forgot  C. he asked her three times

   A. he is married  B. he is afraid of flying  C. the flight attendant welcomed him aboard

5. Even though I looked in every pocket and every drawer, ______.
   A. my keys were under the bed  B. my roommate helped me look for my keys  C. I never found my keys

◊ PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Using even though/although and because.
(Charts 9-6 and 9-7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. It was a hot summer night. We went inside and shut the windows because ______.
   A. the rain stopped  B. we were enjoying the cool breeze  C. a storm was coming
2. Cats can't see red even though _____.
   A. it's a bright color
   B. many people like to wear that color
   C. many flowers are bright red

3. Although _____, my daughter and her friends went swimming in the lake.
   A. it was cold outside
   B. they love to play in the water
   C. the water was warm

4. Because _____, I joined my daughter and her friends in the lake.
   A. I don't know how to swim
   B. I like to swim
   C. it was cold outside

5. My partner and I worked late into the evening. Even though _____, we stopped at our
   favorite restaurant before we went home.
   A. we were very hungry
   B. we were very polite
   C. we were very tired

---

◊ PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY: Using even though/although and because.
(Charts 9-6 and 9-7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

Example: I gave him the money because _____.
   A. I didn’t have any
   B. he had a lot of money
   C. I owed it to him

1. My brother came to my graduation ceremony although _____.
   A. he was sick
   B. he was eager to see everyone
   C. he was happy for me

2. Jack hadn’t heard or read about the murder even though _____.
   A. he was the murderer
   B. it was on the front page of every newspaper
   C. he was out of town when it occurred

3. We can see the light from an airplane high in the sky at night before we can hear the plane
   because _____.
   A. light travels faster than sound
   B. airplanes travel at high speeds
   C. our eyes work better than our ears at night

4. Although _____, he finished the race in first place.
   A. John was full of energy and strength
   B. John was leading all the way
   C. John was far behind in the beginning

5. Snakes don’t have ears, but they are very sensitive to vibrations that result from noise. Snakes
   can sense the presence of a moving object even though _____.
   A. they have ears
   B. they feel vibrations
   C. they can’t hear
6. In mountainous areas, melting snow in the spring runs downhill into streams and rivers. The water carries with it sediment, that is, small particles of soil and rock. In the spring, mountain rivers become cloudy rather than clear because _____.
   A. mountain tops are covered with snow
   B. the water from melting snow brings sediment to the river
   C. ice is frozen water

7. Foxes can use their noses to find their dinners because _____.
   A. they have a keen sense of smell
   B. mice and other small rodents move very quickly
   C. they have keen vision

8. When she heard the loud crash, Marge ran outside in the snow although _____.
   A. her mother ran out with her
   B. she wasn’t wearing any shoes
   C. she ran as fast as she could

9. Even though his shoes were wet and muddy, Brian _____.
   A. took them off at the front door
   B. walked right into the house and across the carpet
   C. wore wool socks

10. Robert ate dinner with us at our home last night. Although _____, he left right after dinner.
    A. he washed the dishes
    B. there was a good movie at the local theater
    C. I expected him to stay and help with the dishes

11. Alex boarded the bus in front of his hotel. He was on his way to the art museum. Because he _____, he asked the bus driver to tell him where to get off.
    A. was late for work and didn’t want his boss to get mad
    B. was carrying a heavy suitcase
    C. was a tourist and didn’t know the city streets very well
12. When I attended my first business conference out of town, I felt very uncomfortable during the social events because _______.
   A. we were all having a good time
   B. I didn’t know anyone there
   C. I am very knowledgeable in my field

◊ PRACTICE 26—GUIDED STUDY: Punctuating with commas and periods.
(Charts 9-1→9-7)

Directions: Add COMMAS, PERIODS, and CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary. (There are four adverb clauses in the following passage. Can you find and underline them?)

(1) What is the most common substance on earth? It isn’t wood, iron, or sand. The most common substance on earth is water it occupies more than seventy percent of the earth’s surface it is in lakes rivers and oceans it is in the ground and in the air it is practically everywhere.

(2) Water is vital because life on earth could not exist without it people animals and plants all need water in order to exist every living thing is mostly water a person’s body is about sixty-seven percent water a bird is about seventy-five percent water most fruit is about ninety percent water.

(3) Most of the water in the world is saltwater ninety-seven percent of the water on earth is in the oceans because seawater is salty people cannot drink it or use it to grow plants for food only three percent of the earth’s water is fresh only one percent of the water in the world is easily available for human use.

(4) Even though water is essential to life human beings often poison it with chemicals from industry and agriculture when people foul water with pollution the quality of all life—plant life animal life and human life—diminishes life cannot exist without fresh water so it is essential for people to take care of this important resource.

◊ PRACTICE 27—SELFSTUDY: Separable vs. nonseparable. (Charts 9-8 and 9-9)

Directions: If the given phrasal verb is separable, mark SEPARABLE. If it is inseparable, mark INSEPARABLE.

1. CORRECT: I turned the light on.  
   CORRECT: I turned on the light.  
   turn on = ☒ SEPARABLE  
2. CORRECT: I ran into Mary.  
   (INCORRECT: I ran Mary into.)  
   run into = ☐ NONSEPARABLE
3. CORRECT: Joe looked up the definition.  look up = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   CORRECT: Joe looked the definition up.

4. CORRECT: I got off the bus.  get off = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   (INCORRECT: I got the bus off.)

5. CORRECT: I took off my coat.  take off = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   CORRECT: I took my coat off

6. CORRECT: I got in the car and left.  get in = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   (INCORRECT: I got the car in and left.)

7. CORRECT: I figured out the answer.  figure out = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   CORRECT: I figured the answer out.

8. CORRECT: I turned the radio off.  turn off = ☐ SEPARABLE  ☐ NONSEPARABLE
   CORRECT: I turned off the radio.

◊ PRACTICE 28—SELFSTUDY: Identifying phrasal verbs. (Charts 9-8 and 9-9)

Directions: Underline the second part of the phrasal verb in each sentence.

1. I figured the answer out.
2. The teacher called on me in class.
3. I made up a story about my childhood.
4. I feel okay now. I got over my cold last week.
5. The students handed their papers in at the end of the test.
6. I woke my roommate up when I got home.
7. I picked up a book and started to read.
8. I turned the radio on to listen to some music.
9. When I don’t know how to spell a word, I look it up in the dictionary.
10. I opened the telephone directory and looked up the number of a plumber.
11. I put my book down and turned off the light.

◊ PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Using phrasal verbs (separable). (Chart 9-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in the following list.

away  off  out
down  on  up
in

1. I’d like to listen to some music. Would you please turn the radio ________on______?
2. My husband makes _______________ bedtime stories for our children.
3. My arms hurt, so I put the baby _______________ for a minute, but he started crying right away, so I picked him _______________ again.
4. A: We need a plumber to fix the kitchen sink. Call one today.
   B: I will.
   A: Don’t put it ____________.
   B: I won’t. I’ll call today. I promise.
5. A: Why are you wearing your new suit?
   B: I just put it ____________ to see what it looked like.
   A: It looks fine. Take it ____________ and hang it up before it gets wrinkled.

6. A: I found this notebook in the wastebasket. It's yours, isn't it?
   B: Yes. I threw it _____________. I don't need it anymore.
   A: Okay. I thought maybe it had fallen in the wastebasket accidentally.

7. A: I need Jan's address again.
   B: I gave you her address just yesterday.
   A: I'm afraid I've lost it. Tell me again, and I'll write it _____________.
   B: Just a minute. I have to look it ____________ in my address book.

   B: What happened?
   A: We had a big test today. When I first looked it over, I realized that I couldn't figure ____________ any of the answers. What happened is that he'd handed ____________ the wrong test. We hadn't covered that material in class yet.

9. A: Wake ____________! It's six o'clock! Rise and shine!
   B: What are you doing!? Turn the light ____________ and close the window curtain!
   A: My goodness but we're grumpy this morning. Come on. It's time to get up, dear. You don't want to be late.
PRACTICE 30—SELFSTUDY: Phrasal verbs. (Charts 9-8 and 9-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with PRONOUNS and PARTICLES. If the phrasal verb is SEPARABLE, circle SEP. If it is NONSEPARABLE, circle NONSEP.

1. I got my cold. → I got __________________ over it ___________________ SEP NONSEP
2. I made up the story. → I made __________________ up ___________________ SEP NONSEP
3. I put off my homework. → I put __________________ off ___________________ SEP NONSEP
4. I wrote down the numbers. → I wrote __________________ down ___________________ SEP NONSEP
5. I ran into Robert. → I ran __________________ into ___________________ SEP NONSEP
6. I figured the answer out. → I figured __________________ out ___________________ SEP NONSEP
7. I took off my shoes. → I took __________________ off ___________________ SEP NONSEP
8. I called on Susan. → I called __________________ on ___________________ SEP NONSEP
9. I turned off the lights. → I turned __________________ off ___________________ SEP NONSEP
10. I threw away the newspaper. → I threw __________________ away ___________________ SEP NONSEP

PRACTICE 31—SELFSTUDY: Phrasal verbs. (Charts 9-8 and 9-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with PARTICLES. Include PRONOUNS in the completions if necessary.

1. I had the flu, but I got __________________ over it a couple of days ago.
2. I was wearing gloves. I took __________________ before I shook hands with Mr. Zabidi.
3. Stacy needed to find the date that India became independent. She looked ________________ in the encyclopedia and wrote ________________ in her notebook.
4. The job was finished. I didn't need my tools anymore, so I put __________________.
5. It looked like rain, so I got my raincoat from the closet and put __________________ before I left the apartment.
6. A: Have you seen Dan this morning?
   B: Not this morning. But I ran __________________ at the movie last night.
7. A: Janet's car was stolen this morning!
   B: That's incredible! How did it happen?
   A: She had stopped at the store to pick ________________ some groceries. When she returned to her car in the parking lot, she was carrying three bags. She put ________________ to get her keys out of her purse. At that moment, a man grabbed the keys out of her hand, got ________________ her car, started the engine, and drove away.
8. A: Why do you look so worried?
   B: I don't have my homework. My mother threw ____________ with the trash this morning. If Ms. Anthony calls ____________ in class to answer homework questions, I'll have to tell her what happened.
   A: She'll never believe your story. She'll think you made ____________.

9. A: You're all wet!
   B: I know. A passing truck went through a big puddle and splashed me.
   A: You'd better take those clothes ____________ and put ____________ something clean and dry before you go to work.
CHAPTER 10
Gerunds and Infinitives

PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Identifying gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 10-1 → 10-2)

Directions: Find and underline the gerunds and infinitives in the following sentences. Circle GER for GERUNDS. Circle INF for INFINITIVES.

1. GER
   Ann promised to wait for me.

2. INF
   I kept walking even though I was tired.

3. INF
   Alex offered to help me.

4. INF
   Karen finished writing a letter and went to bed.

5. INF
   Don’t forget to call me tomorrow.

6. INF
   David was afraid of falling and hurting himself.

7. INF
   Working in a coal mine is a dangerous job.

8. INF
   It is easy to grow vegetables.

PRACTICE 2—GUIDED STUDY: Verb + gerund. (Chart 10-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences in COLUMN A by using a verb from COLUMN B and your own words. Don’t use a verb from COLUMN B more than one time.

Example: I often postpone + write

→ I often postpone writing thank you notes, and then I have to apologize for sending them late.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I often postpone</td>
<td>A. buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I enjoy</td>
<td>H. go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I’m considering</td>
<td>I. help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Would you mind</td>
<td>J. learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I finished</td>
<td>K. listen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I’ll never stop</td>
<td>L. love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Do you ever think about</td>
<td>M. make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. You should keep</td>
<td>N. open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sometimes I put off</td>
<td>O. play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P. take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Q. teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R. try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S. watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T. write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Use the given ideas to complete the sentences with a form of Go + the appropriate gerund to describe the activity.

1. I love to dance. Last night, my husband and I danced for hours.
   → Last night, my husband and I **went dancing**

2. Later this afternoon, Ted is going to take a long walk in the woods.
   → Ted **is going to go hiking** later today.

3. Yesterday Alice visited many stores and bought some clothes and makeup.
   → Yesterday, Alice **went shopping**

4. Let's go to the beach and jump in the water.
   → Let's **go swimming**

5. My grandfather takes his fishing pole to a farm pond every Sunday.
   → My grandfather **goes fishing** every Sunday.

6. When I visit a new city, I like to look around at the sights.
   → When I visit a new city, I like to **go sightseeing**

7. I love to put up a small tent by a stream, make a fire, and listen to the sounds of the forest through the night.
   → I love to **go camping**

8. I want to take the sailboat out on the water this afternoon.
   → I want to **go sailing** this afternoon.

9. Once a year, we take our skis to our favorite mountain resort and enjoy an exciting weekend.
   → Once a year, we **go skiing** at our favorite mountain resort.

10. Last year on my birthday, my friends and I went up in an airplane, put on parachutes, and jumped out of the plane at a very high altitude.
    → Last year, on my birthday, my friends and I
        **went skydiving**.
PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Verb + gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 10-2 → 10-4)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I would like B you and some of my other friends for dinner sometime.
   A. inviting B. to invite

2. I enjoyed ______ with my family at the lake last summer.
   A. being B. to be

3. Don agreed ______ me move out of my apartment this weekend.
   A. helping B. to help

4. My parents can’t afford ______ all of my college expenses.
   A. paying B. to pay

5. Liang-Sioh, would you mind ______ this letter on your way home?
   A. mailing B. to mail

6. Do you expect ______ this course? If so, you’d better work harder.
   A. passing B. to pass

7. Adam offered ______ for me tonight because I feel awful.
   A. working B. to work

8. I refuse ______ your proposal. I’ve made up my mind.
   A. considering B. to consider

9. I wish you would consider ______ my proposal. I know I can do the job.
   A. accepting B. to accept

10. I don’t think I’ll ever finish ______ this report. It just goes on and on.
    A. writing B. to write

11. I would enjoy ______ you in Cairo while you’re studying there.
    A. visiting B. to visit

12. The children seem ______ why they have to stay home tonight.
    A. understanding B. to understand

13. Don’t forget ______ all of the doors before you go to bed.
    A. locking B. to lock

14. I’m really sorry. I didn’t mean ______ your feelings.
    A. hurting B. to hurt

15. Why do you keep ______ me the same question over and over again?
    A. asking B. to ask

    A. looking B. to look

17. You need ______ harder if you want to get the promotion.
    A. trying B. to try

18. Why do you pretend ______ his company? I know you don’t like him.
    A. enjoying B. to enjoy

19. Let’s get together tonight. I want to talk about ______ a new business.
    A. opening B. to open

20. I have a secret. Do you promise ______ no one?
    A. telling B. to tell
21. The president plans _____ everyone a bonus at the end of the year.
   A. giving   B. to give

22. I have a good job, and I hope _____ myself all through school.
   A. supporting   B. to support

23. I can’t wait _____ work today. I’m taking off on vacation tonight.
   A. finishing   B. to finish

24. My neighbor and I get up at six every morning and go _____.
   A. jogging   B. to jog

◊ PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Verb + gerund or infinitive. (Charts 10-2 → 10-5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers. Both answers may be correct.

1. I want _____ the comedy special on TV tonight.
   A. watching   B. to watch

2. I’m a people-watcher. I like _____ people in public places.
   A. watching   B. to watch

   A. collecting   B. to collect

4. A group of Chinese scientists plan _____ their discovery at the world conference next spring.
   A. presenting   B. to present

5. Every time I wash my car, it starts _____.
   A. raining   B. to rain

6. Angela and I continued _____ for several hours.
   A. talking   B. to talk

7. I love _____ on the beach during a storm.
   A. walking   B. to walk

8. I would love _____ a walk today.
   A. taking   B. to take
9. Are you sure you don't mind _________ Johnny for me while I go to the store?
   A. watching  B. to watch

10. Annie hates _________ in the rain.
    A. driving  B. to drive

11. My roommate can't stand _________ to really loud rock music.
    A. listening  B. to listen

12. I don't like _________ in front of other people.
    A. singing  B. to sing

13. Would you like _________ to the concert with us?
    A. going  B. to go

14. Most children can't wait _________ their presents on their birthday.
    A. opening  B. to open

Directions: In writing, or orally in small groups, discuss what you like and don't like to do. Use the given ideas to make sentences that begin with:

I like  I don't like  I don't mind
I love  I hate
I enjoy I can't stand

1. cook
   → I like to cook | I like cooking | I hate to cook | I hate cooking | I don't mind cooking.

2. live in this city

3. wash dishes

4. fly

5. wait in airports

6. read novels in my spare time

7. eat a delicious meal slowly

8. drive on city streets during rush hour

9. speak in front of a large group

10. play cards for money

11. go to parties where I don't know a single person

12. listen to the sounds of the city while I'm trying to get to sleep

13. visit with friends I haven't seen in a long time

14. get in between two friends who are having an argument

15. travel to strange and exotic places
PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Gerunds vs. infinitives. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, GERUND or INFINITIVE, of the words in parentheses.

A: Have you made any vacation plans?
B: I was hoping (1. go) ___to go___ to an island off the Atlantic coast, but my wife wanted (2. drive) ___drive_____ down the Pacific coast. We’ve decided (3. compromise) ___compromise_____ by going to neither coast. We’ve agreed (4. find) ___find_____ a place where both of us want (5. go) ___go______. 

A: So where are you going?
B: Well, we’ve been considering (6. go) ___go______ (7. fish) ___fish___ in Canada. We’ve also discussed (8. take) ___take_____ a train across central and western Canada. We also have been talking about (9. rent) ___rent_____ a sailboat and (10. go) ___go______ (11. sail) ___sail_____ in the Gulf of Mexico.

A: Have you ever thought about (12. stay) ___stay_____ home and (13. relax) ___relax_____?
B: That’s not a vacation to me. If I stay home during my vacation, I always end up doing all the chores around home that I’ve put off (14. do) ___do______ for the past year. When I go on a holiday, I like (15. visit) ___visit_____ new places and (16. do) ___do______ new things. I enjoy (17. see) ___see_____ parts of the world I’ve never seen before.

A: What place would you like (18. visit) ___visit_____ the most?
B: I’d love (19. go) ___go______ (20. camp) ___camp_____ in New Zealand. My wife loves (21. camp) ___camp_____ in new places too, but I’m afraid she might refuse (22. go) ___go______ to New Zealand. She doesn’t like long plane flights.

A: Why don’t you just pick a spot on a map? Then call and make a hotel reservation.
B: Neither of us can stand (23. spend) ___spend_____ two whole weeks at a luxury hotel somewhere. I don’t mean (24. say) ___say____ anything bad about big hotels, but both of us seem (25. like) ___like_____ more adventurous vacations.

A: Well, keep (26. think) ___think_____ about it. I’m sure you’ll figure out a really great place for your vacation.
B: We’ll have to stop (27. think) ___think_____ about it sometime soon and make a decision.
B: I can't wait (28. find) ______________________ out where you decide (29. go) ______________________. I'll expect (30. hear) ______________________ from you when you make a decision. Don't forget (31. call) ______________________ me.

A: Hmmm. Maybe we should go (32. ski) ______________________ in Switzerland. Or perhaps we could go (33. water-ski) ______________________ on the Nile. Then there's the possibility of going (34. hike) ______________________ in the Andes. Of course, we'd probably enjoy (35. swim) ______________________ off the Great Barrier Reef of Australia. And we shouldn't postpone (36. explore) ______________________ the Brazilian rain forest much longer. Someday I'd really like (37. climb) ______________________ to the top of an active volcano and (38. look) ______________________ inside the crater. Or maybe we could . . . .

◊ PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Uncompleted infinitives. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Cross out the unnecessary words in Speaker B's responses.

1. A: Did you pay the electric bill?
   B: Not yet. But I'm going to ______________________ the electric bill.

2. A: Why didn't you go to class this morning?
   B: I didn't want to ______________________ to class this morning.

3. A: Did you call your mother?
   B: No, but I ought to ______________________ my mother.

4. A: Have you taken your vacation yet this year?
   B: No, I haven't, but I intend to ______________________ my vacation.
Directions: Complete the dialogues with your own words. Then explain the full meaning of the uncompleted infinitives.

1. A: Would you like to go to a movie with us tonight?
   B: I'd love to! (→ I'd love to go to a movie with you tonight.)

2. A: Does Yoko enjoy meeting new people?
   B: She seems to. (→ She seems to enjoy meeting new people.)

3. A: Did you _____________?
   B: No.
   A: Well, you ought to.

4. A: Why didn't _____________?
   B: I didn't want to.

5. A: Would you like to _____________?
   B: Yes, but I can't afford to.

6. A: Do you _____________?
   B: No, but I used to.

7. A: You should _____________.
   B: I intend to.

8. A: I'm not going _____________.
   B: But you have to!

9. A: Have you _____________?
   B: Not yet, but I'm planning to.

10. A: _____________?
    B: I'd really like to, but I can't.

Directions: Using the verbs in parentheses, complete the sentences with PREPOSITIONS and GERUNDS. Refer to the list of expressions with prepositions at the bottom of the page if necessary.*

1. I believe _____________ the truth no matter what. (tell)

2. I wish the weather would get better. I'm tired _____________ inside all the time. (have to be)

*EXPRESSIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS:
be afraid of  apologize for  believe in  concentrate on  dream about  be excited about  feel like  forgive someone for
be good at  have the (bad) habit of  be in danger of  be in the habit of  insist on  be interested in  look forward to  be nervous about
plan on  be responsible for  stop someone from  succeed in  talk into doing  thank someone for  be tired of  worry about
3. I don’t go swimming because I’m afraid __________________________. (drown)
4. Greg is nervous __________________________ his girlfriend’s parents for the first time. (meet)
5. I don’t know how to thank you __________________________ me. (help)
6. Are you interested __________________________ to a bullfight? (go)
7. I worked on it all night, but I didn’t succeed __________________________ the problem. (solve)
8. I just can’t get excited __________________________ Disneyland for the third time in two years. (visit)
9. Carlos has the irritating habit __________________________ gum very loudly. (chew)
10. Why do you constantly worry __________________________ your parents? (please)
11. Jonathan! Please concentrate __________________________ your assignment. (read)
12. Every summer, I look forward __________________________ a vacation with my family. (take)
13. Do you feel __________________________ me why you’re so sad? (tell)
14. I apologize __________________________, but I was trying to protect you from the truth. Sometimes the truth hurts. (lie)
15. Why do you always insist __________________________ for everything when we go out for dinner? (pay)
16. I’m in the habit __________________________ every morning, but I’m too tired today. (jog)
17. I want you to know that I’m sorry. I don’t know if you can ever forgive me __________________________ you so much trouble. (cause)
18. I’m not very good __________________________ names. (remember)
19. I’m not happy in my work. I often dream __________________________ my job. (quit)
20. How do you stop someone __________________________ something you know is wrong? (do)
21. You can’t convince me to change my mind. After what she did, you’ll never talk me __________________________ her. (forgive)
22. I’m too tired to cook, but I hadn’t planned __________________________ out tonight. (eat)
23. Who’s responsible __________________________ these coffee beans all over the floor? (spill)
24. You’d better be careful. You’re in danger __________________________ this class. (fail)
25. Anna made a lot of big mistakes at work. That’s why she was afraid __________________________ her job. (lose)*

*Note that lose is spelled with one “o.” The word loose, with two “o’s,” is an adjective meaning “not tight.” (e.g., My shirt is big and loose.) Pronunciation difference: lose = /luːz/; loose = /luːs/.
PRACTICE 11—GUIDED STUDY: Preposition + gerund. (Chart 10-7 and Appendix 1)

Directions: In writing or in groups, make up sentences that contain GERUNDS. Include the appropriate PREPOSITION in each.

Example: apologize to (. . .) + interrupt / be / call

→ You should apologize to Tarik for interrupting him.
→ I apologized to my friend for being late.
→ Rosa apologized to me for calling after midnight.

1. be nervous + speak / go / get
2. thank (. . .) + open / help / invite
3. feel like (. . .) + go / have / take
4. look forward + do / stop / skydive
5. apologize to (. . .) + sell / give / leave
6. worry + lose / not have / be
7. forgive (. . .) + lie / take / forget
8. be excited + go / meet / move
9. insist + answer / drive / fly
10. believe + help / tell / trust

PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Using by + gerund. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Describe what the people did by using BY + a GERUND.

1. Mary: How did you comfort the child?
   Sue: I held him in my arms.
   → Sue comforted the child ________ holding him in her arms.

2. Pat: How did you improve your vocabulary?
   Nadia: I read a lot of books.
   → Nadia improved her vocabulary ________ a lot of books.

3. Kirk: How did Grandma amuse the children?
   Sally: She told them a story.
   → Grandma amused the children ________ them a story.

4. Masako: How did you improve your English?
   Pedro: I watched TV a lot.
   → Pedro improved his English ________ TV a lot.

5. Jeffrey: How did you catch up with the bus?
   Jim: I ran as fast as I could.
   → Jim caught up with the bus ________ as fast as he could.

6. Sam: How did you recover from your cold?
   Abdul: I stayed in bed and took care of myself.
   → Abdul recovered ________ in bed and ________ care of himself.
7. Mr. Lee: How did you earn your children’s respect?
Mr. Fox: I treated them with respect at all times.

→ Mr. Smith earned his children's respect ________
   them with respect at all times.

◊ PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Using by + gerund. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences in Column A with by + an appropriate idea from Column B.

Example: I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of the bus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I arrived on time</td>
<td>A. tighten the loose screws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I put out the fire</td>
<td>B. count the rings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Giraffes can reach the</td>
<td>C. read the directions on the package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaves at the top</td>
<td>D. walk on the bottom of the riverbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I fixed the chair</td>
<td>E. pour water on it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sara was able to buy</td>
<td>F. work all through the night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an expensive stereo</td>
<td>G. stretch their long necks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>H. save her money for two years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A hippopotamus can</td>
<td>I. take a taxi instead of a bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross a river</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I figured out how</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cook the noodles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Pam finished her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>project on time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. You can figure out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how old a tree is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gerunds and Infinitives ◊ 207
PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Using with. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences using **with** and appropriate words from the following list.

- a broom
- a needle and thread
- a shovel
- a hammer
- a pair of scissors
- a spoon
- a key
- a saw
- a thermometer

1. I swept the floor ____________.
2. I sewed the button on my shirt ____________.
3. I cut the wood ____________.
4. I took my temperature ____________.
5. I stirred my coffee ____________.
6. I opened the locked door ____________.
7. I dug a hole in the ground ____________.
8. I nailed two pieces of wood together ____________.
9. I cut the meat ____________.
10. I cut the paper ____________.

PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: By vs. with. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **by** or **with**.

1. Alice greeted me ____________ a smile.
2. Ms. Williams goes to work every day ____________ bus.
3. I pounded the nail into the wood ____________ a hammer.
4. Tom went to the next city ____________ train.
5. I got in touch with Bill ____________ phone.
6. Akihiko eats ____________ chopsticks.
7. I didn’t notice that the envelope wasn’t addressed to me. I opened it ____________ mistake.
8. I sent a message to Ann ____________ fax.
9. Jack protected his eyes from the sun ____________ his hand.
10. Janice put out the fire ____________ a bucket of water.
11. I pay my bills ____________ mail.
12. I solved the math problem ____________ a calculator.
13. We traveled to Boston ____________ car.
14. The rider kicked the sides of the horse ____________ her heels.
15. Jim was extremely angry. He hit the wall ________ his fist.

16. At the beach, Julie wrote her name in the sand ________ her finger.

◊ PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Gerund as subject; it + infinitive. (Charts 10-9 → 10-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using a GERUND as the subject or IT + INFINITIVE. Add the word IS where appropriate. Use the verbs in the following list.

**complete**  **eat**  **live**  **learn**  **swim**

1. a. ________ easy for anyone ________ how to cook an egg.
   b. Learning ________ how to cook an egg ________ easy for anyone.

2. a. ________ nutritious food ________ important for your health.
   b. ________ important for your health ________ nutritious food.

3. a. ________ on the wrong side of the road ________ against the law.
   b. ________ against the law ________ on the wrong side of the road.

4. a. ________ fun for both children and adults ________ in the ocean.
   b. ________ in the ocean ________ fun for both children and adults.

5. a. ________ expensive ________ in a dormitory?
   b. ________ in a dormitory ________ expensive?

6. a. ________ difficult ________ these sentences correctly?
   b. ________ these sentences correctly ________ difficult?
PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Gerund as subject; it + infinitive. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Make sentences by combining ideas from Column A and Column B. Use GERUND SUBJECTS OR IT + INFINITIVE.

Example: Riding a bicycle is easy / dangerous / fun / relaxing. OR
It is easy / dangerous / fun / relaxing to ride a bicycle.

COLUMN A                   COLUMN B
1. ride a bicycle          A. against the law
2. read newspapers         B. boring
3. study grammar           C. dangerous
4. play tennis             D. easy
5. steal cars              E. educational
6. listen to a two-hour speech F. embarrassing
7. predict the exact time of an earthquake G. exciting
8. forget someone’s name H. frightening
9. walk alone through a dark forest at night I. fun
10. go fishing with your friends J. hard
11. know the meaning of every word in a dictionary K. important
12. be honest with yourself at all times L. impossible
13. change a flat tire M. relaxing
14. visit museums

PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: It + for (someone) + infinitive. (Chart 10-10)

Directions: Make sentences using IT + FOR (someone) + INFINITIVE by combining ideas from Columns A, B, and C. Add your own words if you wish.

Example: difficult
→ It is difficult for me to be on time for class.
   It is difficult for some people to learn how to swim.
   It's difficult for children to understand adults' behavior.

COLUMN A          COLUMN B                  COLUMN C
1. difficult       anyone                   spend time with friends
2. easy            children                 predict the exact time of an earthquake
3. fun             me                       change a flat tire
4. important       most people             be on time for class
5. impossible      some people             understand adults' behavior
6. enjoyable       students                 obey their parents
7. interesting     observe animals in their wild habitat
8. possible        visit new places
                       learn how to swim
                       live on the planet Mars
PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: *It* + *take*. (Charts 6-11 and 10-9 → 10-10)

Directions: Use your own words to complete the following sentences.

*Example*: It takes . . . hours to . . .

→ **It takes five hours to fly from Los Angeles to Honolulu.**

*Example*: It takes a lot of work for . . . to . . .

→ **It takes a lot of work for most small businesses to succeed.**

1. It takes time for . . . to . . .

2. It takes a lot of money to . . .

3. It takes . . . minutes to . . .

4. How long does it take to . . .?

5. It will take . . . years for . . . to . . .

6. It takes patience / courage / skill to . . .

7. It takes hard work for . . . to . . .

8. It takes stamina and determination to . . .

---

PRACTICE 20—GUIDED STUDY: *It* + *for (someone)* + infinitive. (Chart 10-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. It is easy for . . . to . . .

2. It’s traditional for . . . to . . .

3. It’s impossible for . . . to . . .

4. It takes (a length of time) for . . . to . . .

5. It’s sensible for . . . to . . .

6. Is it necessary for . . . to . . .?

7. It’s important for . . . to . . .

8. It’s difficult for . . . to . . .

---

PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: *In order* to. (Chart 10-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences in Column A by using the ideas in Column B. Connect the ideas with *IN ORDER* TO.

*Example*: I called the hotel desk (in order) to ask for an extra pillow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I called the hotel desk</td>
<td>A. keep their feet warm and dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I turned on the radio</td>
<td>B. reach the top shelf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I looked in the encyclopedia</td>
<td>C. listen to a ball game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. People wear boots</td>
<td>D. find the population of Malaysia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Andy went to Egypt ✔</td>
<td>E. ask for an extra pillow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ms. Lane stood on tiptoe</td>
<td>F. chase a stray dog away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The dentist moved the light closer to my face</td>
<td>G. help him pay the rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I clapped my hands and yelled</td>
<td>H. get some fresh air and exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Maria took a walk in the park</td>
<td>I. see the ancient pyramids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. I offered my cousin some money</td>
<td>J. look into my mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

PRACTICE 22—SELFSTUDY: Purpose: *to* vs. *for*. (Chart 10-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *TO* or *FOR*.

1. Sam went to the hospital ________ for an operation.

2. I hired a cab ________ to take me to the boat dock.

3. Frank stayed after school ______________ get some extra help from the teacher.
4. I play tennis twice a week _______ exercise and relaxation.
5. I sent a card to Carol _______ wish her a happy birthday.
6. Two police officers came to my apartment _______ ask me about my cousin.
7. Mr. Wong works in his garden _______ the pure pleasure of it.
8. I looked in the encyclopedia _______ information about Ecuador.
9. Jennifer used some medicine _______ cure an infection on her arm.
10. I lent Yvette money _______ her school expenses.
11. My three brothers, two sisters, and parents all came to town _______ attend my graduation.
12. I went to my boss _______ permission to take the rest of the day off.

◊ PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Too and enough + infinitive. (Chart 10-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences by choosing from the given words. Use TOO or ENOUGH and an INFINITIVE.

1. strong/lift  I'm not _______ strong enough to lift _______ a refrigerator.
2. weak/lift  Most people are _______ too weak to lift _______ a refrigerator without help.
3. full/hold  My suitcase is _______ any more clothes.
4. large/hold  My suitcase isn’t _______ all the clothes I want to take on my trip.
5. busy/answer  I was _______ _______ the phone. I let it keep ringing until the caller gave up.
PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Too and enough + infinitive. (Chart 10-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with TOO or ENOUGH. Write a slash (/) if nothing is needed in a blank.

1. Alan is _______ smart _______ / to make that kind of mistake.
2. Alan is _______ smart _______ to understand how to solve that problem.
3. My pocket is _______ big _______ enough to hold my wallet. I always carry my wallet there.
4. A horse is _______ big _______ for a person to lift.
5. I'm uncomfortable. This room is _______ hot _______. Why don't you open the window?
6. That watch is _______ expensive _______. I can't afford it.
7. Are you _______ tall _______ to reach that book for me? The green one on the top shelf. Thanks.
8. Ask John to help you move that box. He's ____________ strong ____________ to lift it.
9. I am ____________ busy ____________ to help you right now.
10. I think this problem is ____________ important ____________ to require our immediate attention.
11. Nora is not ____________ tired ____________ to finish the project before she goes home.
12. Our company is ____________ successful ____________ to start several new branches overseas.

◊ PRACTICE 25—SELFSTUDY: Gerunds vs. infinitives. (Charts 10-1 → 10-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses: GERUND or INFINITIVE.

1. It's difficult for me (remember) ____________ to remember phone numbers.
2. My cat is good at (catch) ____________ catching mice.
3. I bought a newspaper (look) ____________ at the ads for apartments for rent.
4. Tourists like (go) ____________ (swim) ____________ in the warm ocean in Hawaii.
5. I called my friend (invite) ____________ her for dinner.
6. Hillary talked about (go) ____________ to graduate school.
7. Sarosh found out what was happening by (listen) ____________ carefully to everything that was said.
8. Children, stop (draw) ____________ pictures on the tablecloth!
9. Professor Amani has a strong accent. It is difficult for his students (understand) ____________ him. He needs (improve) ____________ his pronunciation if he wants (be) ____________ a good lecturer. (lecture) ____________ requires good communication skills.
10. A: Hi! I'm home!
    B: Welcome back. Did you have a good trip?
    A: Yes, thanks. How's everything? How are my goldfish? I hope you didn't forget (feed) ____________ them.
    B: Oh, my gosh!
11. Dan's goldfish died when he was away on a trip because his roommate forgot (feed) ____________ them. Dan is considering (get) ____________ a new roommate.
12. My friend Akihiko has goldfish in a pond in his garden. He enjoys (feed) ________________ them one by one with chopsticks.

13. Michelle Yin Yin Ko works sixteen hours a day (earn) ________________ enough money (take) ________________ care of her elderly parents as well as her three children.

14. It takes care, patience, and a little luck (take) ________________ a really good photograph of wildlife.

15. No matter how wonderful a trip is, it’s always good (get) ________________ back home and (sleep) ________________ in one’s own bed.

    B: I keep (think) ________________ the phone will ring any second.
    A: I don’t mean (be) ________________ unsympathetic, but I think you’d better forget about Greg. It’s over.

17. It’s important to your health for you (work) ________________ at a job you like.
    If you hate (go) ________________ to your job, you should seriously think about (look) ________________ for a different kind of job. The stress of (do) ________________ work you hate day in and day out can damage your health.

◊ PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Gerunds vs. infinitives. (Chart 10-1 → 10-10)

Directions: Find and underline the GERUNDS and INFINITIVES in the following.

1. Jim offered to help me with my work.
2. My son isn’t old enough to stay home alone.
3. Do you enjoy being alone sometimes, or do you prefer to be with other people all the time?
4. I called my friend to thank her for the lovely gift.
5. Mary talked about going downtown tomorrow, but I’d like to stay home.
6. It is interesting to learn about earthquakes.
7. Approximately one million earthquakes occur around the world in a year’s time. Six thousand can be felt by humans. Of those, one hundred and twenty are strong enough to cause serious damage to buildings, and twenty are violent enough to destroy a city.
8. It’s important to respect the power of nature. A recent earthquake destroyed a bridge in California. It took five years for humans to build the bridge. It took nature fifteen seconds to knock it down.
9. Predicting earthquakes is difficult. I read about one scientist who tries to predict earthquakes by reading the daily newspaper's lost-and-found ads for lost pets. He believes that animals can sense an earthquake before it comes. He thinks they then begin to act strangely. Dogs and cats respond to the threat by running away to a safer place. By counting the number of ads for lost pets, he expects to be able to predict when an earthquake will occur.

◊ PRACTICE 27—GUIDED STUDY: Gerunds vs. infinitives. (Charts 10-1 → 10-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses: GERUND or INFINITIVE.

1. (study) _______________ English is fun.

2. My boss makes a habit of (jot)* _______________ quick notes to her employees when they've done a good job.

3. From the earth, the sun and the moon appear (be) _______________ almost the same size.

4. A: I don't like airplanes.
   B: Why? Are you afraid of (fly) _______________ ?
   A: No, I'm afraid of (crash) _______________.

5. I keep (forget) _______________ (call) _______________ my friend Louise. I'd better write myself a note.

6. People in the modern world are wasteful of natural resources. For example, every three months, people in North America throw away enough aluminum (build) _______________ an entire airplane.

7. I am so busy! I have just enough time (do) _______________ what I need (do) _______________, but not enough time (do) _______________ what I'd like (do) _______________.

8. (ask) _______________ others about themselves and their lives is one of the secrets of (get) _______________ along with other people. If you want (make) _______________ and (keep) _______________ friends, it is important (be) _______________ sincerely interested in other people's lives.

9. A: Have you called Amanda yet?
   B: No. I keep (put) _______________ it off.
   A: Why?

*· jot = write quickly and briefly.
B: She's mad at me for (forget) __________________________ (send) _____________________________ a card on her birthday.
A: It's silly for her (get) _____________________________ mad about something like that. Just call her and say you are sorry about (remember, not) _____________________________ to wish her a happy birthday. She can't stay mad at you forever.

10. In days of old, it was customary for a servant (taste) _____________________________ the king's food before the king ate (make) _____________________________ sure it was not poisoned.

11. One of my good friends, Larry, has the bad habit of (interrupt) _____________________________ others while they're talking.

12. I like (travel) _____________________________ to out-of-the-way places. I don't like (go) _____________________________ to usual tourist places when I'm on holiday.

13. Large bee colonies have 80,000 workers. These worker bees must visit fifty million flowers (make) _____________________________ one kilogram (2.2 pounds) of honey. It's no wonder that "busy as a bee" is a common expression.

14. Exercise is good for you. Why don't you walk up the stairs instead of (take) _____________________________ the elevator?

15. Stop (crack) _____________________________ those nuts with your teeth! Here. Use a nutcracker. Do you want (be) _____________________________ toothless by the time you're thirty?
Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses: GERUND or INFINITIVE.

1. A: Let's quit (argue) __________________. We're getting nowhere. Let's just agree
(disagree) __________________ and still (be) __________________ friends.
B: Sounds good to me. And I apologize for (raise) __________________ my voice. I
didn't mean (yell) __________________ at you.
A: That's okay. I didn't intend (get) __________________ angry at you either.

2. A: David, why did you want (sneak) __________________ into the movie theater without
(pay) __________________?
B: I don't know, Mom. My friends talked me into (do) __________________ it, I guess.
A: That's not a very good reason. You are responsible for your actions, not your friends.
B: I know. I'm sorry.
A: How does this make you feel? Do you like yourself for (try) __________________
(sneak) __________________ into the theater?
B: No. It doesn't make me feel good about myself.
A: You're young. We all have lessons like this to learn as we grow up. Just remember: It's
essential for you (have) __________________ a good opinion of yourself. It's very
important for all of us (like) __________________ ourselves. When we do something
wrong, we stop (like) __________________ ourselves, and that doesn't feel good. Do
you promise never (do) __________________ anything like that again?
B: Yes. I promise! I'm really sorry, Mom.

3. Different cultures have different gestures. When North Americans meet someone, they usually
offer a strong handshake and look the other person straight in the eye. In some countries,
however, it is impolite (shake) __________________ hands firmly, and (look)
____________________ the person in the eye is equally rude.

4. How close do you stand to another person when you are speaking? North Americans prefer
(stand) __________________ just a little less than an arm's length from someone. Many
people in the Middle East and Latin America prefer (move) __________________ in
closer than that during a conversation.

5. (Smile) __________________ at another person is a universal, cross-cultural gesture.
Everyone throughout the world understands the meaning of a smile.
6. A: What do you feel like (do) __________________ this afternoon?
   B: I feel like (go) __________________ (shop) __________________ at the mall.
   A: I feel like (go) __________________ to a used car lot and (pretend) __________________ (be) __________________ interested in (buy) __________________ a car.
   B: You’re kidding. Why would you want (do) __________________ that?
   A: I like cars. Maybe we could even take one out for a test drive. You know I’m planning (get) __________________ a car as soon as I can afford (buy) __________________ one. I can’t wait (have) __________________ my own car. Maybe we’ll find the car of my dreams at a used car lot. Come on. It sounds like fun.
   B: Nah. Not me. You go ahead. (pretend) __________________ (be) __________________ interested in (buy) __________________ a used car doesn’t sound like my idea of fun.

◇ PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Phrasal verbs (separable). (Chart 10-13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct PARTICLE from the list below.

away back down off on out up

1. When are you going to pay me ______ back the money you owe me?
2. Turn ______ the radio! It’s too loud! I can’t hear myself think.
3. Debra put ______ the fire in the wastebasket with a fire extinguisher.
4. After I wash and dry the dishes, I put them ______. In other words, I put them in the cupboard where they belong.
5. Before you buy shoes, you should try them ______ to see if they fit.
6. I can’t hear the TV. Could you please turn it ______? Thanks. No, don’t shut it ______! I want to hear the news. I wanted you to make it louder, not turn it off.
7. A: That’s mine! Give it ________!
   B: No, it’s not. It’s mine!
   C: Now children. Don’t fight.
8. A: I don’t hear anyone on the other end of the phone.
   B: Just hang ________. It’s probably a wrong number.
9. A: I hear that Tom asked you ________ for next Saturday night.
B: Yes, he did. He called a couple of hours ago. We're going to the symphony concert.
A: The concert's been called _________. Didn't you hear about it? The musicians are on strike.
B: No, I didn't. I'd better call Tom _________ and ask him what he wants to do.

◊ PRACTICE 30—SELFSTUDY: Phrasal verbs (separable). (Chart 10-13)
Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate pronouns and these particles:

away back down off on out up

1. When the children finished playing with their toys, they put _________.
2. If you don't want your shirt to get wrinkled, you'd better hang _________.
3. I wanted to see if the shoes were the right size, so I tried _________.
4. The radio was too loud, so I turned _________ a little.
5. I feel like talking to Jim. I think I'll call _________.
6. Rick poured some water on the campfire to put _________.
7. Whenever I borrow money, I make sure to pay _________ as soon as I can.
8. I can't hear the TV. Could you please turn _________? Thanks.
9. There's a phone message here from Mary. She sounds worried. You'd better call _________ as soon as possible.
10. If you leave your computer for a short while, you don't need to shut _________.
11. Because of crowd violence, the championship match was canceled. The authorities called _________.
12. No, Tommy, we're not going to buy that candy bar. Put _________ where you got it.
13. Tom invited Linda to go to a concert with him. In other words, he asked _________.
14. I'll lend you my grammar book, but be sure to give _________ to me before class tomorrow.
PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Active vs. passive. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Circle ACTIVE if the given sentence is active; circle PASSIVE if it is passive. Underline the VERB.

1. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Farmers grow corn.
2. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Corn is grown by farmers.
3. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Sara wrote the letter.
4. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The letter was written by Sara.
5. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The teacher explained the lesson.
6. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The lesson was explained by the teacher.
7. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Bridges are designed by engineers.
8. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Engineers design bridges.
9. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The mouse ate the cheese.
10. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The cheese was eaten by the mouse.
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Review of past participles. (Chart 2-3)

Directions: Write the PAST PARTICIPLES of the verbs. The list contains both regular and irregular verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td><strong>brought</strong></td>
<td>14. play</td>
<td>played</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
<td>15. read</td>
<td>read*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
<td>16. save</td>
<td>saved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td></td>
<td>17. send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. plan</td>
<td>planned</td>
<td></td>
<td>18. speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td></td>
<td>19. spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td></td>
<td>20. take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
<td>21. teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
<td>22. go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
<td>23. visit</td>
<td>visited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td></td>
<td>24. wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
<td>25. write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
<td>26. do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Passive form. (Charts 11-1, 11-2, and 11-6)

Directions: Use the given form of BE (was, is, going to be, etc.) and complete the sentences with the PAST PARTICIPLES of any verbs in the list in Practice 2.

1. was
   There’s no more candy. All the candy **was eaten** by the children.

2. is
   Arabic **Arabic** by the people of Syria and Iraq.

3. are
   Books **are** by authors.

4. was
   My friend **was** in an accident. He broke his nose.

5. is going to be
   Bombay, India, **is going to be** by thousands of tourists this year.

6. has been
   War and Peace is a famous book. It **has been** by millions of people.

*The simple past and past participle of read are pronounced “red,” as the color red.*
7. will be The championship game ______________________ in Milan next week.
8. can be Everyone ______________________ to read. I'll teach you if you'd like.
9. are going to be Our pictures ______________________ by a professional photographer at the wedding.
10. have been Oranges ______________________ by farmers in Jordan since ancient times.
11. is Special fire-resistant clothing ______________________ by firefighters.
12. will be A new bridge across the White River ______________________ by the city government next year.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Tense forms of the passive. (Chart 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the passive form of the given verbs.

PART I: Use the SIMPLE PRESENT with:

- collect
grow
understand

1. Taxes ______________________ by the government.
2. Small fish ______________________ by big fish.
3. Rice ______________________ by farmers in Korea.
4. I ______________________ for my work by my boss.
5. Books ______________________ by authors.
6. The meaning of a smile ______________________ by everyone.

PART II: Use the SIMPLE PAST with:

- build
collect
destroy
write

7. Yesterday the students' papers ______________________ by the teacher at the end of the test.
8. The Great Wall of China ______________________ by Chinese emperors over 2500 years ago.
9. The book War and Peace ______________________ by Leo Tolstoy, a famous Russian novelist.
10. Several small buildings ______________________ by the recent earthquake in Los Angeles.
PART III: Use the **PRESENT PERFECT** with:

read speak visit wear

11. The pyramids in Egypt **have** by millions of tourists through the years.
12. Spanish **have** by people in Latin America for nearly 600 years.
13. Mark Twain's books **have** by millions of people through the years.
14. Perfume **have** by both men and women since ancient times.

PART IV: Use **WILL** with:

discover visit

15. New information about the universe **will** by scientists in the twenty-first century.
16. Hawaii **will** by thousands of tourists this year.

PART V: Use **BE GOING TO** with:

elect hurt offer save

17. Your friend **is going** by your unkind remark when she hears about it.
18. New computer courses **will** by the university next year.
19. Tigers **will be saved** from extinction by people who care.
20. A new leader **will be elected** by the people in my country next month.

◊ **PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY:** Passive to active. (Charts 6-2, 11-1 and 11-2)

**Directions:** Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same verb tense.

1. Taxes are collected by the government. → **The government collects taxes.**
2. Small fish are eaten by big fish.
3. The meaning of a smile is understood by everyone.
4. *War and Peace* was written by Leo Tolstoy.
5. The pyramids in Egypt have been visited by millions of tourists.
6. New information about the universe will be discovered by scientists in the twenty-first century.
PRACTICE 6—SELFSTUDY: Passive to active. (Charts 6-2, 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same tense. Some of the sentences are questions.

1. The letter was signed by Mr. Rice. → Mr. Rice signed the letter.
2. Was the letter signed by Mr. Foster? → Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?
3. The fax was sent by Ms. Owens.
4. Was the other fax sent by Mr. Chu?
5. Will Adam be met at the airport by Mr. Berg?
6. Adam will be met at the airport by Mrs. Berg.
7. Have you been invited to the reception by Mrs. Jordan?
8. I have been invited to the reception by Mr. Lee.
9. Is the homework going to be collected by the teacher?
10. The homework is going to be collected by the teacher.

PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Passive to active. (Charts 6-2, 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same tense. Some of the sentences are questions.

1. Were you taught to read by your parents?
   → Did your parents teach you to read?
2. I was taught to read by my parents.
   → My parents taught me to read.
3. Was the riot stopped by the police?
4. Love and understanding are needed by all children.
5. The ball was kicked by the captain of the soccer team.
6. Was the chalkboard washed by a student?
7. My suitcase was inspected by a customs officer.
8. Are we going to be met at the train station by your cousin?
9. The plans for the new hospital have already been drawn by the architect.
10. The bear was chased up a tree by a dog.

PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Transitive vs. intransitive. (Chart 11-3)

Directions: Circle TRANSITIVE if the verb takes an object; circle INTRANSITIVE if it does not. Underline the object of the verb.

1. TRANSITIVE  INTRANSITIVE  Alex wrote a letter.
2. TRANSITIVE  INTRANSITIVE  Alex waited for Amy. (There is no object of the verb.)
3. TRANSITIVE  INTRANSITIVE  Rita lives in Mexico.
4. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Sam walked to his office.
5. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Kate caught the ball.
6. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE My plane arrived at six-thirty.
7. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Emily is crying.
8. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE A falling tree hit my car.
9. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE I returned the book to the library yesterday.
10. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE A bolt of lightning appeared in the sky last night.

 Prairie 9—Selfstudy: Active and Passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Underline the object of the verb if the given sentence has one. Then change the sentence to the passive. Some sentences cannot be changed to the passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. A noise awakened me.</td>
<td>I was awakened by a noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. It rained hard yesterday.</td>
<td>(no change)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Alice discovered the mistake.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. We stayed at a hotel last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I usually agree with my sister.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Many people die during a war.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. In the fairy tale, a princess kissed a frog.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I slept only four hours last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Anita fixed the chair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Did Susan agree with Prof. Hill?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Did the Koreans invent gunpowder?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. The /th/ sound doesn’t occur in my native language.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Research scientists will discover a cure for AIDS* someday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. A cloud of migrating butterflies appeared out of nowhere.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*AIDS = a disease (Auto Immune Deficiency Syndrome).
PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: The by-phrase. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: If the sentence contains a by-phrase, underline it. Then answer the question. If you don’t know the exact person or people who performed the action, write UNKNOWN.

(NOTE: Most of the sentences are passive, but some are active.)

1. The mail is usually delivered to Bob’s apartment around eleven o’clock.
   Who delivers the mail? unknown
2. The wastebasket was emptied by Fred.
   Who emptied the wastebasket? Fred
3. Paul carried the suitcases into the airport for his elderly father.
   Who carried the suitcases?
4. The Eiffel Tower was designed by Alexandre Eiffel.
   Who designed the Eiffel Tower?
5. The Eiffel Tower was erected in 1889.
   Who erected the Eiffel Tower?
6. Nicole visited the Eiffel Tower when she was in France last year.
   Who visited the Eiffel Tower?
7. Our classroom building was built in the 1950s.
   Who built the classroom building?
8. Our exam papers will be corrected by Ms. Brown.
   Who will correct the exam papers?
9. Coffee is grown in Brazil.
   Who grows coffee in Brazil?
10. Sara accepted Mike’s invitation to the international street fair next Saturday.
    Who accepted the invitation?
11. Eric Wong’s new book will be translated into many languages.
    Who will translate Eric Wong’s new book?
12. Rebecca’s bicycle was stolen yesterday from in front of the library.
    Who stole Rebecca’s bicycle?

PRACTICE 11—GUIDED STUDY: The by-phrase. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Underline the passive verbs. Answer the questions. If you don’t know the exact person or people who performed the action, write UNKNOWN.

1. Soft duck feathers are used to make pillows.
   Who uses duck feathers to make pillows? unknown
2. The mail was opened by Shelley.
   Who opened the mail? Shelley
3. All the tickets for the school play tonight have been sold.
   Who sold the tickets to the school play?
4. My flight was canceled because of the heavy fog.
   Who canceled the flight?
5. Aunt Mary’s favorite glass bowl was accidentally broken by her nephew David.
   Who broke the glass bowl?
6. Malawi is a country in southeastern Africa. A new highway is going to be built in Malawi next year.
   Who is going to build the new highway?
7. The invention of the printing press changed the world because it allowed many people instead of few to have copies of books. It was invented by Johannes Gutenberg around 1440. Before that, people wrote books by hand. Writing books by hand was a slow process. 
Who invented the printing press?

8. One of the most significant inventions in the history of civilization is the wheel. It was invented around five thousand years ago. It allowed people to pull things in carts instead of carrying everything on their backs or in their arms.
Who invented the wheel?

9. Yesterday there was almost a tragedy at the swimming pool. A young boy who didn't know how to swim jumped in the deep end. He panicked* when he couldn't swim to the side of the pool. He was saved from drowning by a lifeguard at the pool. It's lucky that she was alert.
Who saved the boy?

10. The name *Thailand* means "land of the free." The Thai people have never been ruled by a foreign power. Thailand is a constitutional monarchy. The prime minister is nominated by the National Assembly and then is appointed by the monarch. Senators are chosen by the prime minister and representatives are elected by the people.
Who nominates the prime minister?
Who appoints the prime minister?
Who chooses the senators?
Who elects the representatives?
What countries have ruled Thailand?

*To panic is a verb that means "to become suddenly and greatly frightened." Notice that a "k" is added before the -ed ending.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Almost everyone (enjoy) ___________ visiting a zoo. Today zoos are common.
2. The first zoo (establish) ________________ around 3500 years ago by an Egyptian queen for her personal enjoyment. Five hundred years later, a Chinese emperor (establish) ________________ a huge zoo to show his power and wealth. Later zoos (establish) ________________ for the purpose of studying animals.
3. Some of the early European zoos were dark holes or dirty cages. People (disgust) ________________ by the bad conditions and the mistreatment of the animals. In the nineteenth century, these early zoos (replace) ________________ by scientific institutions where animals (study) ________________ and (keep) ________________ in good condition. These research centers (become) ________________ the first modern zoos.
4. As early as the 1940s, scientists (understand) ________________ that many kinds of wild animals faced extinction. Since that time, zoos (become) ________________ a place to save many endangered species such as the rhinoceros. In the 1980s, the number of rhinos in the world (reduce) ________________ from 10,000 to 400. Some wildlife biologists fear that the species (become) ________________ extinct in the near future. Some scientists (believe) ________________ that half of the animal species in zoos will be in danger of extinction by the middle of the twenty-first century.
5. Because zoos want to treat animals humanely and encourage breeding, animals (put, now) ________________ in large, natural settings instead of small cages. They (watch) ________________ carefully for any signs of disease and (feed) ________________ a balanced diet. Most zoos (have) ________________ a hospital for animals and specially trained veterinarians.
6. Today food (prepare) ________________ in the zoo kitchen. The food program (design) ________________ to satisfy the animals’ particular needs. For example, some snakes (feed) ________________ only once a week, and some birds (feed) ________________ several times a day.
7. Today zoo animals (treat) ________________ well, and zoo breeding programs are important in the attempt to save many species of wildlife.
PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Progressive tenses in passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Underline the PROGRESSIVE VERB. Then complete the sentence with the correct PASSIVE form.

1. Some people are considering a new plan.
   → A new plan _______ is being considered _______.

2. The grandparents are watching the children.
   → The children ____________________________ by their grandparents.

3. Some painters are painting Mr. Rivera's apartment this week.
   → Mr. Rivera's apartment ____________________________ this week.

4. Many of the older people in the neighborhood were growing vegetables.
   → Vegetables ____________________________ by many of the older people in the neighborhood.

5. Eric's cousins are meeting him at the airport this afternoon.
   → Eric ____________________________ by his cousins at the airport this afternoon.

6. I watched while the movers were moving the furniture from my apartment to a truck.
   → I watched while the furniture ____________________________ from my apartment to a truck.

PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Progressive tenses in passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct PASSIVE form.

1. Mr. Rice is teaching our class today.
   → Our class _______ is being taught _______ by Mr. Rice today.

2. Scientists are still discovering new species of plants and animals.
   → New species of plants and animals ____________________________.

3. Everyone looked at the flag while they were singing the national anthem.
   → Everyone looked at the flag while the national anthem ____________________________.

4. Dogs usually wag their tails while people are petting them.
   → Dogs usually wag their tails while they ____________________________.

5. According to one scientific estimate, we are losing 20,000 species of plants and animals each year due to the destruction of rain forests.
   → According to one scientific estimate, 20,000 species of plants and animals ____________________________ each year due to the destruction of rain forests.
Directions: Circle **ACTIVE** if the sentence is active; circle **PASSIVE** if it is passive. **Underline** the verb.

1. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE People **have used** sundials since ancient times.
2. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Sundials **have been used** for almost three thousand years.
3. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Sundials, clocks, and watches are used to tell time.
4. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Some watches show the date as well as the time.
5. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE On digital watches, the time is shown by lighted numbers.
6. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE The first watches were made in Europe six hundred years ago.
7. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE The earliest watches were worn around a person's neck.
8. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Pocket watches became popular in the 1600s.
9. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Today most people wear wristwatches.
10. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Close to seventy million watches are sold in the United States each year.
11. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE How many watches are made and sold throughout the world in one year?
12. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Somewhere in the world, a watch is being sold at this very moment.
13. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Many different styles of watches can be bought today.
14. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Do you own a watch?
15. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Where was it made?
16. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Some watches can be worn underwater.
PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Passive modals. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the active modals to PASSIVE MODALS.

1. Someone must send this letter immediately.
   → This letter **must be sent** immediately.

2. You can find flowers in almost every part of the world.
   → Flowers **must be found** in almost every part of the world.

3. Someone ought to wash these dirty dishes soon.
   → These dishes **must be washed** soon.

4. People may cook carrots or eat them raw.
   → Carrots **must be cooked** or **must be eaten** raw.

5. Our air conditioner doesn't work. Someone has to fix it before the hot weather comes.
   → Our air conditioner **must be fixed** before the hot weather comes.

6. If the river floods, water might destroy the village.
   → The village **must be destroyed** if the river floods.

7. Someone may call off the picnic if it rains.
   → The picnic **must be canceled** if it rains.

8. You must keep medicine out of the reach of children.
   → Medicine **must be kept** out of the reach of children.

9. You shouldn't pronounce the "b" in "lamb."
   → The "b" in "lamb" **must not be pronounced**.

10. People should remove coffee stains on cotton immediately with cold water.
    → Coffee stains on cotton **must be removed** immediately with cold water.

PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Passive modals. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the words in the list with the MODALS in parentheses. All of the completions are PASSIVE.

- build
- know
- teach
- divide
- put off
- tear down
- kill
- sell
- write

1. Don't postpone things you need to do. Important work **shouldn't be put off** until the last minute. (should not)

2. Your application letter **must be written** in ink, not pencil. (must)

3. Dogs **can do tricks**. (can)
4. Mrs. Papadopolous didn’t want her son to go to war because he could _____________________________.

5. My son’s class is too big. It _______________________ into two classes. (ought to)

6. A: Hey, Tony. These bananas are getting too ripe. They ____________________________ today. Reduce the price. (must)

B: Right away, Mr. Rice.

7. It takes time to correct an examination that is taken by ten thousand students nationwide. The test results ____________________________ for at least four weeks. (will not)

8. The big bank building on Main Street was severely damaged in the earthquake. The structure is no longer strong or safe. The building _____________________________. Then a new bank ____________________________ in the same place. (has to, can)

◊ PRACTICE 18—SELFSTUDY: Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses; use ACTIVE or PASSIVE.

1. Flowers (love) __________________________ are loved throughout the world. Their beauty (bring) __________________________ brings joy to people’s lives. Flowers (use, often) __________________________ to decorate homes or tables in restaurants. Public gardens (can find) __________________________ in almost every country in the world.

2. Around 250,000 different kinds of flowers (exist) __________________________ in the world. The majority of these species (can find) __________________________ only in the tropics. Nontropical areas (have) __________________________ many fewer kinds of flowering plants than tropical regions.

3. Flowers may spread from their native region to other similar regions. Sometimes seeds (carry) __________________________ by birds or animals. The wind also (carry) __________________________ some seeds. In many cases throughout history, flowering plants (introduce) __________________________ into new areas by humans.

4. Flowers (appreciate) __________________________ mostly for their beauty, but they can also be a source of food. For example, honey (make) __________________________ from the nectar which (gather) __________________________ from flowers by bees. And some flower buds (eat) __________________________ as food; for example, broccoli and cauliflower are actually flower buds.

The Passive ◊ 233
5. Some very expensive perfumes (make) from the petals of flowers. Most perfumes today, however, (come, not) from natural fragrances. Instead, they are synthetic; they (make) from chemicals in a laboratory.

6. Some kinds of flowers (may plant) in pots and (grow) indoors. Most flowers, however, (survive) best outdoors in their usual environment.

◊ PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-7)

Directions: All of the sentences in the following passage are active. Some of the sentences should be passive because it is unknown or unimportant to know exactly who performs certain actions. Change sentences to the passive as appropriate. Discuss your reasons for making changes and for not making changes.

(1) Cheese has been a principal food throughout much of the world for thousands of years. **The first cheese was probably made** in Asia around four thousand years ago.

(2) Someone probably made the first cheese in Asia around four thousand years ago.

(3) Today people eat it in almost all the countries of the world. (4) People can eat it alone, or they may eat it with bread. (5) People can melt it and add it to noodles or vegetables.

(6) People can use it as part of a main course or as a snack. (7) Throughout most of the world, cheese adds enjoyment and nutrition to many people’s daily diets.

(8) Cheese is a milk product. (9) Cheesemakers make most cheese from cow’s milk, but they can make it from the milk of goats, camels, yaks and other animals, including zebras.

(10) Some kinds of cheese, such as cheddar, are common in many parts in the world, but you can find other kinds only in small geographical areas.

(11) Cheesemakers produce cheese in factories. (12) They have to treat the milk in special ways. (13) They must heat it several times during the process. (14) At the end, they add salt and they pack it into molds. (15) They age most cheese for weeks or months before they package and sell it. (16) They usually sell cheese to stores in large round pieces that they seal in wax.
(17) You can see these big rounds of cheese in food stores like delicatessens. (18) I like cheese and buy it often. (19) I don’t know all the names of different kinds of cheese. (20) Often I can’t pronounce the foreign name of the cheese I want. (21) When I go to the delicatessen near my apartment, I simply point to a kind of cheese that looks good to me. (22) I hold my thumb and forefinger wide apart if I want a lot of cheese or close together if I want just a little. (23) Frank and Anita, who work behind the cheese counter at the deli, always seem to give me just the right amount. (24) I’m glad cheese is nutritious because it’s one of my favorite kinds of food.

◊ PRACTICE 2C—SELFSTUDY: Stative passive. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form, ACTIVE or PASSIVE, of the verbs in parentheses. Include PREPOSITIONS as necessary. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT.

1. Loud noises _________ scare _____________ small children. (scare)
2. Most children _________ are scared of _____________ loud noises. (scare)
3. New ideas _________ interest _____________ me. (interest)
4. Jane _________ interest _____________ ecology. (interest)
5. My bad grades _________ disappoint _____________ my parents. (disappoint)
6. My parents _________ disappoint _____________ me because of my low grades. (disappoint)

The Passive ◇ 235
7. My boss ___________________________ my work. (please)
8. My work ___________________________ my boss. (please)
9. My progress in English ___________________________ me. (satisfy)
10. I ___________________________ my progress in English. (satisfy)

◊ PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate -ED or -ING form of the words in parentheses.

Ben is reading a book. He really likes it. He can’t put it down. He has to keep reading.

1. The book is really ___________________________. (interest)
2. Ben is really ___________________________. (interest)
3. The story is ___________________________. (excite)
4. Ben is ___________________________ about the story. (excite)
5. Ben is ___________________________ by the characters in the book. (fascinate)
6. The people in the story are ___________________________. (fascinate)
7. Ben doesn’t like to read books when he is ___________________________ and ___________________________. (bore, confuse)
8. Ben didn’t finish that last book he started because it was ___________________________ and ___________________________. (bore, confuse)
9. What is the most ___________________________ book you’ve read lately? (interest)
10. I just finished a ___________________________ mystery story that had a very ___________________________ ending. (fascinate, surprise)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate -ED or -ING form of the words in parentheses.

Julie was walking along the edge of the fountain outside her office building. She was with her co-worker and friend Paul. Suddenly she lost her balance and accidentally fell in.

1. Julie was really ________________________. (embarrass)
2. Falling into the fountain was really ________________________. (embarrass)
3. Her friend Paul was ________________________. (shock)
4. It was a ________________________ sight. (shock)
5. The people around the office building were very ________________________ when they saw Julie in the fountain. (surprise)
6. It was a ________________________ sight. (surprise)
7. The next day Julie was ________________________ because she thought she had made a fool of herself. (depress)
8. When she fell into the fountain, some people laughed at her. It was a ________________________ experience. (depress)
9. Her friend Paul told her not to lose her sense of humor. He told her it was just another ________________________ experience in life. (interest)
10. He said that people would be ________________________ in hearing about how she fell into a fountain. (interest)
PRACTICE 23—GUIDED STUDY: Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: I’m bored . . . .
→ I am bored by people who talk about themselves all the time.

Example: . . . is/are boring.
→ Self-centered people are boring.

1. I am interested in . . . .
2. . . . is/are interesting to me.
3. I am fascinated by . . . .
4. . . . is/are fascinating to me.
5. . . . is/are exciting.
6. . . . is/are confusing.
7. I was excited when . . . .
8. I was confused when . . . .
9. I was surprised when . . . .
10. I’ll be surprised if . . . .

PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Get + adjective and past participle. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate forms of GET and the words in the given list.

busy      dress      invite      tired
dark      dry       marry       well

dizzy      hungry      sunburn      wet

1. When I stayed out in the sun too long yesterday, I ____________________ sunburned.

2. If you’re sick, stay home and take care of yourself. You won’t ____________________ if you don’t take care of yourself.

3. Jane and Greg are engaged. They are going to ____________________ a year from now.

4. Sarah doesn’t eat breakfast, so she always ____________________ by ten or ten-thirty.

5. In the winter, the sun sets early. It ____________________ outside by six or even earlier.

6. Yes, I have an invitation to Joan and Paul’s wedding. Don’t worry. You’ll ____________________ to the wedding, too.

7. Put these socks back in the dryer. They didn’t ____________________ the first time.

8. Let’s stop working for a while. I’m ____________________ . I need to rest.

9. Sam is wearing one brown sock and one blue sock today. He ____________________ in a hurry this morning and didn’t pay attention to the color of his socks.

10. This work has to be done before we leave. We’d better ____________________ and stop wasting time.
11. Some people are afraid of heights. They ________________ and have trouble keeping their balance.

12. Sally ________________ when she stood near the pool of dolphins. They splashed her more than once.

◊ PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY: Get + adjective and past participle. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate forms of get and the words in the given list.

- cold
- crowd
- dirty
- crowd
- dirty
- drill
- dirty
- drill
- dirty
- drill

1. Sue has to vacate her apartment next week, and she hasn’t found a new place to live. She’s ________________.

2. Sitara always ________________ after she eats salty food.

3. Toshiro was in a terrible car wreck and almost ________________. He’s lucky to be alive.

4. The temperature is dropping. Brr! I’m ________________. Can I borrow your sweater?

5. We were in a strange city without a map. It was easy for us to ________________. We had to ask a shopkeeper how to get back to our hotel.

6. Did you ________________ when your team won the game? Did you clap and yell when they won?

7. Good restaurants ________________ around dinner time. It’s hard to find a seat because there are so many people.

8. When little Annie ________________, her father gave her a bottle and put her to bed.

9. It’s hard to work in a garage and stay clean. Paul’s clothes always ________________ from all the grease and oil.

10. Don’t waste your money gambling. You won’t ever ________________ that way.

11. Tarik was afraid his important papers or his jewelry might ________________, so he had a wall safe installed in his home.

12. I left when Ellen and Joe began to argue. I never ________________ in other people’s quarrels.
PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: *Used to* vs. *be accustomed to.* (Charts 2-9 and 11-11)

Directions: Choose the correct completions. **More than one** completion may be correct.

1. Frank has lived alone for twenty years. He **B. C.** alone.
   A. used to live  B. is used to living  C. is accustomed to living

2. I **A** with my family, but now I live alone.
   A. used to live  B. am used to living  C. am accustomed to living

3. Rita rides her bike to work every day. She ______ her bike to work.
   A. used to ride  B. is used to riding  C. is accustomed to riding

4. Tom rode his bike to work for many years, but now he takes the bus. Tom ______ his bike to work.
   A. used to ride  B. is used to riding  C. is accustomed to riding

5. Carl showers every day. He ______ a shower every day.
   A. used to take  B. is used to taking  C. is accustomed to taking

6. Carl ______ a bath only once a week, but now he showers every day.
   A. used to take  B. is used to taking  C. is accustomed to taking

—

PRACTICE 27—SELFSTUDY: *Used to* vs. *be used to.* (Charts 2-9 and 11-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *used to* or *be used to/be accustomed to* and the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Nick stays up later now than he did when he was in high school. He **go** used to go to bed at ten, but now he rarely gets to bed before midnight.

2. I got used to going to bed late when I was in college, but now I have a job and I need my sleep. These days I **am used** to going/am accustomed to going around ten-thirty.

3. I am a vegetarian. I **eat** meat, but now I eat only meatless meals.

4. Mrs. Wu has had a vegetable garden all her life. She **grow** her own vegetables.

5. Oscar has lived in Brazil for ten years. He **eat** Brazilian food. He doesn’t like any other kind.

6. Georgio moved to Germany to open his own restaurant. He **have** a small bakery in Italy.

7. I have taken the bus to work every day for the past five years. I **take** the bus.

8. Juanita travels by plane on company business. She **go** by train, but now the distances she needs to travel are too great.
PRACTICE 28—GUIDED STUDY: *Be used/acquainted to* and *get used/acquainted to*. (Chart 11-11)

Directions: Discuss or write about the following topics.

1. James graduated from high school last month. Three days after graduation, he got married. The next week he got a job at a paint store. Within two weeks, his life changed a lot. What did he have to get used to?

2. Jane is going to leave her parents' house next week. She is going to move in with two of her cousins who work in the city. Jane will be away from her home for the first time in her life. What is she going to have to get used to?

3. Think of a time you traveled in or lived in a foreign country. What weren't you used to? What did you get used to? What didn't you ever get used to?

4. Think of the first day of a job you have had. What weren't you used to? What did you get used to?

PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: *Be supposed to*. (Chart 11-12)

Directions: Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. INCORRECT: I'm supposed to call my parents tonight.

2. INCORRECT: We're not supposed to tell anyone about the surprise.

3. INCORRECT: You don't supposed to talk to Alan about the surprise.

4. INCORRECT: My friend was supposing to call me last night, but he didn't.

5. INCORRECT: Children supposed to respect their parents.

6. INCORRECT: Didn't you supposed be at the meeting last night?

PRACTICE 30—SELFSTUDY: *Be supposed to*. (Chart 11-12)

Directions: Make sentences with *BE SUPPOSED TO* by combining the subjects in Column A with the ideas in Column B. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT.

Example: Doctors are supposed to care about their patients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Doctors</td>
<td>A. listen to their parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Visitors at a zoo</td>
<td>B. buckle their seatbelts before takeoff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Employees</td>
<td>C. not . . . feed the animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Air passengers</td>
<td>D. not . . . talk during a performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Theatergoers</td>
<td>E. be on time for work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Soldiers on sentry duty</td>
<td>F. obey its trainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Children</td>
<td>G. pay their rent on time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Heads of state</td>
<td>H. care about their patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. A dog</td>
<td>I. not . . . fall asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. People who live in apartments</td>
<td>J. be diplomatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 31—GUIDED STUDY: Be supposed to. (Chart 11-12)

Directions: Think of things the following people are or were supposed to do. Use BE SUPPOSED TO.

Example: a good friend of yours
→ My friend Ji Ming is supposed to help me paint my apartment this weekend.
Benito was supposed to go to dinner with me last Wednesday, but he forgot.
Nadia is supposed to call me tonight.

1. a good friend of yours
2. your roommate or spouse*
3. children
4. a student in your English class
5. your English teacher
6. the leader of your country
7. one or both of your parents
8. one of your siblings or cousins
9. yourself
10. (...)

PRACTICE 32—GUIDED STUDY: Verb form review. (Chapters 1 → 11)

Directions: Complete the sentences by writing the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

What is your most (1. embarrass) experience? Let me tell you what happened to my uncle when he (2. go) to Norway for a business meeting last year.

First, I must tell you about my Uncle Ernesto. He (3. be) a businessman from Buenos Aires, Argentina. He (4. manufacture) a new kind of computer compass for ships. Computer compasses (5. manufacture) by many companies in the world, so my uncle (6. have) a lot of competition for his product. In order to sell his product, he (7. need) (8. meet) with companies that might want to buy it. He (9. travel) frequently to other countries.

Last year, he (10. go) to Norway (11. meet) with a shipping company. It was his first trip to Europe. My Uncle Ernesto (12. speak) Spanish, of course, and also (13. know)

*If you have neither a roommate nor a spouse, invent one or simply skip to the next item.
a little English, but he (14. know, not) any Norwegian. While he (15. stay) in Norway, he (16. have) a problem.

Uncle Ernesto (17. stay) at a large, modern hotel in Oslo. One morning, while he (18. get) ready to take a shower, he (19. hear) a knock at the door. He (20. walk) to the door, (21. open) it, and (22. find) no one. He (23. take) a step out of his room and (24. look) down the hall. He (25. see) no one. So he (26. turn) (27. go) back into his room, but the door (28. close) ! It (29. lock), and he (30. have, not) his key. This was a very big problem for my uncle because he (31. dress, not) properly. In fact, he (32. wear) nothing but a towel. Poor Uncle Ernesto! “What (33. do, I)?” he asked himself.

Instead of (34. stand) in the hallway with only a towel, he (35. decide) (36. get) help. So he (37. start) (38. walk) down the hall toward the elevator. He was too (39. embarrass) (40. knock) on someone else’s door (41. ask) for help.

When he (42. reach) the elevator, he (43. push) the down button and (44. wait). When it (45. come), Uncle Ernesto (46. take) a deep breath and (47. get) into the elevator. The other people in the elevator (48. surprise) when they (49. see) a man who (50. wrap) in a towel.

Uncle Ernesto (51. think) about (52. try) (53. explain) any Norwegian. He said, in English, “Door. Locked. No key.” A businessman in the elevator (55. nod), but he (56. smile, not) (57. look) at Uncle Ernesto and (58. smile) broadly.
After an eternity, the elevator reached the ground floor. Uncle Ernesto walked straight to the front desk and looked at the hotel manager helplessly. The hotel manager had to understand, not any language figure out the problem. My uncle have to say, not a word. The manager grab a key, take my uncle by the elbow, and lead him to the nearest elevator.

My uncle embarrass, still about this incident. But he always laugh a lot when he tell the story.
PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Using who in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-2)

Directions: Find and underline the adjective clause in the long sentence. Then complete the change of the long sentence into two short sentences.*

1. **Long sentence:** I thanked the man who helped me move the refrigerator.
   **Short sentence 1:** I thanked the man.
   **Short sentence 2:** He helped me move the refrigerator.

2. **Long sentence:** A woman who was wearing a gray suit asked me for directions.
   **Short sentence 1:** A woman asked me for directions.
   **Short sentence 2:** She was wearing a gray suit.

3. **Long sentence:** I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.
   **Short sentence 1:** I saw a man.
   **Short sentence 2:** He was wearing a blue coat.

4. **Long sentence:** The woman who aided the rebels put her life in danger.
   **Short sentence 1:** The woman put her life in danger.
   **Short sentence 2:** She aided the rebels.

*In grammar terminology, the "long sentence" is called a **complex sentence** and the "short sentence" is called a **simple sentence**:

- A complex sentence has an independent clause and a dependent clause. For example:
  I thanked the man who helped me. = a complex sentence consisting of one independent clause (I thanked the man) and one dependent clause (who helped me).
- A simple sentence has only an independent clause. For example:
  He helped me. = a simple sentence consisting of one independent clause.
5. **Long sentence:** I know some people who live on a boat.

**Short sentence 1:** ___________________________ some people.

**Short sentence 2:** ___________________________ on a boat.

---

◊ **PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY:** Using *who* in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Combine the two short sentences into one long sentence using "sentence 2" as an ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. Use **WHO**. **Underline** the adjective clause.

1. **Short sentence 1:** The woman was polite.
   **Short sentence 2:** She answered the phone.
   **Long sentence:** *The woman who answered the phone was polite.*

2. **Short sentence 1:** The man has a good voice.
   **Short sentence 2:** He sang at the concert.
   **Long sentence:**

3. **Short sentence 1:** We enjoyed the actors.
   **Short sentence 2:** They played the leading roles.
   **Long sentence:**

4. **Short sentence 1:** The girl is hurt.
   **Short sentence 2:** She fell down the stairs.
   **Long sentence:**
**PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Using who in adjective clauses.** (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Insert WHO where it is necessary.

1. The man who answered the phone was polite.
2. I liked the people sat next to us at the soccer game.
3. People paint houses for a living are called house painters.
4. I'm uncomfortable around married couples argue all the time.
5. While I was waiting at the bus stop, I stood next to an elderly gentleman started a conversation with me about my educational plans.

**PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Using who and whom in adjective clauses.** (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Find and underline the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. Identify the SUBJECT and VERB of the adjective clause. Then complete the change from one long sentence to two short sentences, and identify the SUBJECT and VERB of the second short sentence.

1. Long sentence: The people who live next to me are nice.
   Short sentence 1: The people are nice.
   Short sentence 2: They live next to me.

2. Long sentence: The people whom Kate visited yesterday were French.
   Short sentence 1: The people were French.
   Short sentence 2: Kate visited them yesterday.

3. Long sentence: The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.
   Short sentence 1: The people were having a picnic.
   Short sentence 2: 

4. Long sentence: The students who go to this school are friendly.
   Short sentence 1: The students are friendly.
   Short sentence 2: 

5. Long sentence: The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.
   Short sentence 1: The woman lives in Mexico.
   Short sentence 2: 

---

*Adjective Clauses*
Directions: Change the two short sentences into one long sentence with an ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. Use WHO or WHOM. Underline the adjective clause.

1. Short sentence 1: The woman was polite.
   Short sentence 2: Jack met her.
   Long sentence: The woman whom Jack met was polite.

2. Short sentence 1: I like the woman.
   Short sentence 2: She manages my uncle's store.
   Long sentence: I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.

3. Short sentence 1: The singer was wonderful.
   Short sentence 2: We heard him at the concert.
   Long sentence:

4. Short sentence 1: The people brought a small gift.
   Short sentence 2: They came to dinner.
   Long sentence:

5. Short sentence 1: What is the name of the woman?
   Short sentence 2: Tom invited her to the dance.
   Long sentence:

Directions: Complete the sentences with WHO or WHO(m).*

1. I know a man ___________ works at the post office.

2. One of the people ___________ I watched at the race track lost a huge amount of money.

3. My neighbor is a kind person ___________ is always willing to help people in trouble.

4. The people ___________ we visited gave us tea and a light snack.

5. The doctor ___________ lives on my street is a surgeon.

6. My mother is a woman ___________ I admire tremendously.

7. I thanked the man ___________ helped me.

8. The woman ___________ I helped thanked me.

*There are parentheses around the "m" in who(m) to show that, in everyday informal English, who may be used as an object pronoun instead of whom.
PRACTICE 7—GUIDED STUDY: Using who and who(m) in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **WHO** or **WHO(m)**.

1. The children **who** live down the street in the yellow house are always polite.
2. The children **who(m)** I watched at the park were feeding ducks in a pond.
3. People **who** listen to very loud music may suffer gradual hearing loss.
4. There are many good people in the world **who** you can trust to be honest and honorable at all times.
5. Marie and Luis Escobar still keep in touch with many of the students **who** they met in their English class five years ago.
6. My husband is a person **who** enjoys good food and good friends.
7. At the supermarket yesterday, one of the store employees caught a man **who** had put a beefsteak in his coat pocket and attempted to walk out without paying.
8. The couple **who** I invited to dinner at my home were an hour late. I thought that was very rude. They didn't call. They didn't have an excuse. I'll never invite them again.

PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Using **that** or Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

Directions: Cross out the word **THAT** if possible.

1. That man **that** I saw was wearing a black hat.
2. The people **that** visited us stayed too long. (*no change*)
3. The fruit **that** I bought today at the market is fresh.
4. My high school English teacher is a person **that** I will never forget.
5. The puppy **that** barked the loudest got the most attention in the pet store.
6. The girl **that** is sitting in front of Richard has long black hair **that** she wears in a ponytail.
Directions: In the box write every possible PRONOUN that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: WHO, WHO(M), or THAT. Also, write Ø if the pronoun can be omitted.

1. The woman who that sat next to me on the plane talked a lot.

2. The woman who(m) that I met on the plane talked a lot.

3. Three men Ø I didn’t know walked into my office.

4. The three men who(m) walked into my office were strangers.

5. My cousin’s wife is the woman who is talking to Mr. Horn.

6. I like the woman who my brother and I visited.

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. The magazine C I read on the plane was interesting.
   A. who  B. who(m)  C. which

2. The artist drew my picture is very good.
   A. who  B. who(m)  C. which

3. I really enjoyed the experiences I had on my trip to Nigeria.
   A. who  B. who(m)  C. which

4. Most of the games we played as children no longer amuse us.
   A. who  B. who(m)  C. which
5. All of the people _______ I called yesterday can come to the meeting on Monday.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

6. The teacher _______ was ill canceled her math class.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

◊ PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Using which, that, and Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-4)

Directions: Write the pronouns that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: WHICH or THAT. Also write Ø if the pronoun can be omitted.

1. I really enjoyed the show _______ we saw last night.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

2. Tim liked the show _______ was playing at the Fox Theater.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

3. The plane _______ I took to Korea arrived on time.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

4. The plane _______ flew to the Gold Coast left on time.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

5. The books _______ Jane ordered came in the mail today.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

6. Jane was glad to get the books _______ came in the mail today.
   A. which   B. that   C. Ø

◊ PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Object pronouns in adjective clauses: error analysis. (Charts 12-3 → 12-4)

Directions: Find and cross out the incorrect pronouns in the adjective clauses.

1. The books I bought _______ at the bookstore were expensive.
   A. them

2. I like the shirt you wore _______ to class yesterday.
   A. it

3. Amanda Jones is a person I would like you to meet _______.
   A. her

4. The apartment we wanted to rent _______ had two bedrooms.
   A. it

5. My wife and I are really enjoying the TV set _______ we bought _______ for ourselves last week.
   A. that
   B. it

6. The woman you met _______ at Aunt Martha’s house is a pharmacist.
   A. her

Adjective Clauses ◊ 251
PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Object pronouns in adjective clauses: error analysis.
(Charts 12-3 and 12-4)

Directions: Find and cross out the incorrect PRONOUNS in the ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

1. I enjoy the relatives I visited them in Mexico City last year.
2. The coffee that I drank it was cold and tasteless.
3. The tennis shoes I was wearing them in the garden got wet and muddy.
4. My cousin Ahmed is a person I’ve known and loved him since he was born.
5. I have a great deal of respect for the wonderful woman I married her eleven years ago.
6. Anna has a cat that it likes to catch birds.
7. The birds that Anna’s cat catches them are very frightened.
8. Yesterday, Anna rescued a bird that the cat had brought it into the house. She set it free. It flew away quickly.

PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Using who, who(m), which, that, and Ø in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-3 and 12-4)

Directions: Write the PRONOUNS that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: WHICH, WHO, WHO(m) or THAT. Also write Ø if the pronoun can be omitted.

Example: The manager . . . fired Tom is a difficult person to work for.

→ The manager \{who\} \{that\} fired Tom is a difficult person to work for.

1. The box . . . I mailed to my sister was heavy.
2. The people . . . sat in the stadium cheered for the home team.
3. The calendar . . . hangs in Paul’s office has pictures of wildlife.
4. The teenagers counted the money . . . they earned at the car wash.
5. The people . . . my brother called didn’t answer their phone.
6. The tree branch . . . was lying in the street was a hazard to motorists.
PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: Pronoun usage in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answers. NOTE: There is more than one correct answer for each sentence.

1. I liked the teacher ______ I had for chemistry in high school.
   A. whom B. which C. that D. Ø

2. The university scientist ______ did research in the Amazon River basin found many previously unknown species of plants.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

3. The children enjoyed the sandwiches ______ Mr. Rice made for them.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

4. Have you ever read any books by the author ______ the teacher mentioned in class this morning?
   A. whom B. which C. that D. Ø

5. The fans ______ crowded the ballpark roared their approval.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

6. Have you been to the York Art Gallery? It has a new exhibit ______ includes the work of several local artists.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

7. The operation ______ the surgeon performed on my uncle was very dangerous.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

8. Bricks are made of soil ______ has been placed in molds, pounded down, and dried.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

PRACTICE 16—GUIDED STUDY: Pronoun usage in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answers. NOTE: There is more than one correct answer for each sentence.

1. The actors ______ we saw at Stratford performed out-of-doors.
   A. whom B. which C. that D. Ø

2. Many of the games ______ children play teach them about the adult world.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

3. When Jason arrived at the reunion, the first person ______ he encountered was Sally Sellers, one of his best friends when he was in high school.
   A. whom B. which C. that D. Ø

4. The earth receives less than one-billionth of the enormous amount of heat ______ the sun produces. The rest of the sun’s energy disappears into outer space.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

5. Two hundred years ago, people on ships and in coastal towns greatly feared the pirates ______ sailed the South China Sea and the Gulf of Thailand.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

6. Piranhas are dangerous fish ______ can tear the flesh off an animal as large as a horse in a few minutes.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø
7. Fire swept through an old apartment building in the center of town. I know some of the people the firefighters rescued. They lost all their possessions. They were grateful simply to be alive.
   A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. Ø

8. Most of the islands in the Pacific are the tops of volcanic mountains rise from the floor of the ocean.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. Ø

◊ PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-4)

Directions: Answer the questions in complete sentences. Use any appropriate pattern of ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. Use THE with the noun that is modified by the adjective clause.

1. We ate some food from our garden.
   We ate some food at a restaurant.
   Which food was very expensive?
   → **The** food we ate at a restaurant was very expensive. **The** food we ate from our garden was not expensive at all.

2. One phone wasn't ringing.
   The other phone was ringing.
   Which phone did Sam answer?
   → **Sam** answered the phone that was ringing. **He** didn't answer the phone that wasn't ringing.

3. One girl won the foot race.
   The other girl lost the foot race.
   Which girl is happy?
4. One man was sleeping. Another man was listening to the radio. One of them heard the news bulletin about the earthquake in China. Which one?

5. One person raised her hand in class. Another person sat quietly in his seat. One of them asked the teacher a question. Which one?

6. One person bought a (brand name of a car). Another person bought a (brand name of a car). Which person spent more money than the other?

7. Pretend I’m at the market. Some of the bananas are completely brown. Some of the bananas are green. Which bananas should I buy?

8. Amanda bought some canned vegetables at a small food store. Tom picked some vegetables from his grandfather’s garden. Which vegetables tasted fresh?

9. One young musician practiced hours and hours every day. The other young musician had a regular job and practiced only in the evenings and on the weekends. Which musician showed a great deal of improvement during the course of a year?

10. One city provides clean water and a modern sewer system for its citizens. Another city uses its rivers and streams as both a source of water and a sewer. Which city has a high death rate from infectious diseases such as typhoid and cholera?

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-4)

Directions: Complete the definitions that begin in COLUMN A with the information given in COLUMN B. Use ADJECTIVE CLAUSES in the definitions.

Example: An architect is someone who designs buildings.

COLUMN A | COLUMN B
--- | ---
1. An architect is someone . . . . | A. It is built for fast driving.
2. A vegetarian is a person . . . . | B. It is worn on a finger for decoration.
3. Steam is gas . . . . | C. It cannot be understood or explained.
4. A turtle is an animal . . . . | D. S/he leaves society and lives completely alone.
5. A ring is a circle of metal . . . . | E. It can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.
6. An expressway is a road . . . . | F. It grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.
7. A hermit is a person . . . . | G. S/he designs buildings.
8. A banana tree is a plant . . . . | H. It has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.
9. Plastic is a synthetic material . . . . | I. It forms when water boils.
10. A mystery is something . . . . | J. S/he doesn’t eat meat.
PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-4)

Directions: In groups or pairs, provide definitions for the words listed below. Consult your dictionaries if necessary.

Example: A telephone directory is a book . . . .

→ A telephone directory is a book that lists telephone numbers.

1. A dictionary is a book . . . .
2. An author is someone . . . .
3. A giraffe is an animal . . . .
4. Parents are people . . . .
5. A key is a piece of metal . . . .
6. A prisoner is a person . . . .
7. Water is a substance . . . .
8. Photographers are people . . . .
9. A hero is a person . . . .
10. An adjective is a word . . . .
11. A triangle is a geometric form . . . .
12. Friends are people . . . .

PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT. Underline the noun that determines whether the verb in the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE is singular or plural.

1. A saw is a tool that __________ is __________ used to cut wood. (be)
2. Hammers are tools that __________ are __________ used to pound nails. (be)
3. I recently met a woman who ____________ in Montreal. (live)
4. Most of the people who ____________ in Montreal speak French as their first language. (live)
5. I have a cousin who ____________ as a coal miner. (work)
6. Some coal miners who ____________ underground suffer from lung disease. (work)
7. A professional athlete who ____________ tennis for a living is called a tennis pro. (play)
8. Professional athletes who ____________ tennis for a living can make a lot of money. (play)
9. A carpenter is a person who ____________ things out of wood. (make)
10. Sculptors are artists who ____________ things from clay or other materials. (make)
PRACTICE 21—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: The adjective clauses in the following sentences need PREPOSITIONS. Add the prepositions and give all the possible patterns for the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. Write “O” if nothing is needed.

1. The bus ________ ________ we were waiting ________ ________ was an hour late.
   - The bus ________ ________ we were waiting ________ ________ was an hour late.
   - The bus ________ ________ we were waiting ________ ________ was an hour late.
   - The bus ________ ________ we were waiting ________ ________ was an hour late.

2. The music ________ ________ I listened ________ ________ was pleasant.
   - The music ________ ________ I listened ________ ________ was pleasant.
   - The music ________ ________ I listened ________ ________ was pleasant.
   - The music ________ ________ I listened ________ ________ was pleasant.

3. Ecology is one of the subjects ________ ________ I am very interested ________ ________.
   - Ecology is one of the subjects ________ ________ I am very interested ________ ________.
   - Ecology is one of the subjects ________ ________ I am very interested ________ ________.
   - Ecology is one of the subjects ________ ________ I am very interested ________ ________.

4. Tom argued with a man about politics.
   - The man ________ ________ Tom was arguing ________ ________ was very angry.
   - The man ________ ________ Tom was arguing ________ ________ was very angry.
   - The man ________ ________ Tom was arguing ________ ________ was very angry.
   - The man ________ ________ Tom was arguing ________ ________ was very angry.

PRACTICE 22—GUIDED STUDY: Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Complete the given sentences with PRONOUNS and PREPOSITIONS, as necessary. Give all the possible patterns for the ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

Example: The movie ________ we went ________ was good.
   → The movie ________ ________ was good.
     - The movie ________ ________ was good.
     - The movie ________ ________ was good.
     - The movie ________ ________ was good.

1. I enjoyed meeting the people ________ you introduced me ________ yesterday.
2. English grammar is a subject ________ I am quite familiar ________.
3. The woman ________ Mr. Low told us ________ works for the government.
PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Supply appropriate PREPOSITIONS in the blanks. Write “Ø” if no preposition is necessary. In sentence b., put brackets around the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

1. a. I enjoyed the CD. We listened _______ to it at Sara’s apartment.
   b. I enjoyed the CD [we listened _______ to at Sara’s apartment]
2. a. I paid the shopkeeper for the glass cup. I accidentally broke _______Ø_______ it.
   b. I paid the shopkeeper for the glass cup [I accidentally broke _______Ø_______]
3. a. The bus was only three minutes late. We were waiting _______ it.
   b. The bus we were waiting _______ was only three minutes late.
4. a. Mrs. Chan is someone. I always enjoy talking _______ her about politics.
   b. Mrs. Chan is someone I always enjoy talking _______ about politics.
5. a. I showed my roommate the letter. I had just written _______ it.
   b. I showed my roommate the letter I had just written _______.
6. a. One of the subjects is global economics. I’ve been interested _______ it for a long time.
   b. One of the subjects I’ve been interested _______ for a long time is global economics.

PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Put brackets around the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE in each sentence. Add an appropriate PREPOSITION, if necessary. If no preposition is needed, write “Ø.”

1. The book catalogue [I was looking _______ at ] had hundreds of interesting titles.
2. The book [I wanted _______Ø_______] wasn’t available at the library.
3. I really enjoyed the music we were listening _______ at Jim’s yesterday.
4. The man I was staring _______ started to stare back at me.
5. My father is someone I’ve always been able to depend _______ when I need advice or help.
6. The suitcases I was carrying _______ got so heavy that my arms started to ache.
7. Organic chemistry is a subject that I’m not familiar _______.
8. The news article we talked _______ in class concerned a peace conference.
9. Chris looks angry. The man she is arguing _______ is her cousin.
10. Jennifer and David stopped at a sidewalk cafe. The food they ate _______ at the cafe was delicious.
11. The sailor you waved _______ is walking toward us. What are you going to say?
12. The bank I borrowed money _______ charges high interest on its loans.
**PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY: Prepositions in adjective clauses.** (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Put brackets around the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE in each sentence. Add an appropriate PREPOSITION, if necessary. If no preposition is needed, write “Ø.”

1. The people [I talked _____ to/with at the reception] were interesting.
2. One of the places [I want to visit _____ next year] is Mexico City.
3. My sister and I have the same ideas about almost everything. She is the one person [_____ with whom I almost always agree.]
4. The man ________ whom I spoke at the airline counter asked to see my passport and ticket.
5. The furniture I bought _________ was expensive.
6. What’s the name of the person you introduced me ________ at the restaurant last night? I've already forgotten.
7. Botany is a subject I'm not familiar ________.
8. The bags I was carrying _________ were really heavy.
9. The guy I borrowed these tools _________ wants them back today.
10. English grammar is one of the subjects _________ which I enjoy studying the most.
11. The friend I waved _________ didn’t wave back. Maybe he just didn’t see me.
12. The people _________ whom Alex was waiting were over an hour late.
13. What was that tape you were just listening _________? I really liked it.
14. The newspaper I was reading _________ had the latest news about the election.
15. Your building supervisor is the person _________ whom you should complain if you have any problems with your apartment.
16. My parents are people I can always rely _________ for support and help.
17. Taking out the garbage is one of the chores our fourteen-year-old is responsible ________.
18. The interviewer wanted to know the name of the college I had graduated ________.

**PRACTICE 26—SELFSTUDY: Adjective clauses with whose.** (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Find and underline the ADJECTIVE CLAUSE in the long sentence. Then change the long sentence into two short sentences.

1. **Long sentence:** I know a man whose daughter is a pilot.
   **Short sentence 1:** I know a man.
   **Short sentence 2:** His daughter is a pilot.
2. Long sentence: The woman whose husband is out of work found a job at Mel's Diner.
   Short sentence 1: The woman **found a job at Mel's Diner.**
   Short sentence 2: Her

3. Long sentence: The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward.
   Short sentence 1: The man
   Short sentence 2: 

4. Long sentence: I know a girl whose family never eats dinner together.
   Short sentence 1: 
   Short sentence 2: 

5. Long sentence: The people whose window I broke got really angry.
   Short sentence 1: 
   Short sentence 2: 
PRACTICE 27—SELFSTUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences with ADJECTIVE CLAUSES. Omit the PRONOUN from the adjective clause if possible.

I share their views.
Their children were doing poorly in her class.
They disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life.
✓ The man's son was in an accident.
Ted bought them for his wife on their anniversary.
I slept on it at the hotel last night.
They had backbones.
✓ James chose the color of paint for his bedroom walls.
It is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.

1. The man ______________ whose son was in an accident ______________ called an ambulance.
2. The color of paint ______________ James chose for his bedroom walls ______________ was an unusual blue.
3. My back hurts today. The mattress ______________ was too soft.
4. A waterway is a river or stream ________________
5. The second grade teacher talked to all the parents ______________
6. The flowers ______________ wilted in the heat before he got home.
7. The candidates ______________ will get my votes.
8. According to scientists, the first animals ______________ were fish. They appeared on the earth about 500 million years ago.
9. Approximately 370 million years ago, seventy percent of the earth's marine species mysteriously vanished. Approximately 65 million years ago, the dinosaurs and two-thirds of all marine animal species became extinct. According to some scientific researchers, the earth was struck by speeding objects from space ____________________________
PRACTICE 28—GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Use the given information in the list to complete the sentences with ADJECTIVE CLAUSES. Omit the OBJECT PRONOUN from the adjective clause if possible.

Their specialty is heart surgery.

Its mouth was big enough to swallow a whole cow in one gulp.

You drink it.

It erupted in Indonesia recently.

They lived in the jungles of Southeast Asia.

These molecules have been used countless times before in countless ways.

They continued week after week.

1. A volcano ____________________________ killed six people and damaged large areas of rice, coconut, and clove crops.

2. Doctors and nurses ____________________________ are some of the best-trained medical personnel in the world.

3. Early human beings hunted animals for food, including chickens. Originally, chickens were wild birds ____________________________ .

   At some point in time, humans learned how to domesticate them and raise them for food.

4. In prehistoric times, there was a dinosaur ____________________________.

5. Several years ago, tons of fish in the Seine River died from lack of oxygen when the river became polluted. Heavy rains ____________________________ caused the sewer system to overflow into the river, bypassing the sewage treatment plant.

6. Every glass of water ____________________________ has molecules

PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Which of the following can be used in the blanks: WHO, WHO(M), WHICH, THAT, WHOSE, or Ø?

1. The people ____________________________ moved into town are Italian.

2. The lamp ____________________________ I bought downtown is beautiful and quite expensive.

3. Everyone ____________________________ came to the audition got a part in the play.

4. Ms. Laura Rice is the teacher ____________________________ class I enjoy most.

5. Flowers ____________________________ grow in tropical climates usually have vibrant colors.

6. The man ____________________________ I found in the doorway had collapsed from exhaustion.
7. Flying squirrels ______________ live in tropical rain forests stay in the trees their entire lives without ever touching the ground.

8. The girl ____________ skirt was caught in the classroom door seemed very embarrassed.

◊ PRACTICE 30—GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Which of the following can be used in the blanks: WHO, WHO(M), WHICH, THAT, WHOSE, or O?

1. What do you say to people ____________ ask you personal questions that you don’t want to answer?

2. In my country, any person ______________ is twenty-one years old or older can vote. I turned twenty-one last year. The person ______________ I voted for in the national election lost. I hope the next candidate for ______________ I vote has better luck. I’d like to vote for a winning candidate.

3. Vegetarians are people ______________ do not eat meat. True vegetarians do not eat flesh ______________ comes from any living creature, including fish. Some vegetarians even exclude any food ______________ is made from animal products such as milk and eggs.

4. A: A magazine ______________ I read at the doctor’s office had an article ______________ you ought to read. It’s about the importance of exercise in dealing with stress.

   B: Why do you think I should read an article ______________ deals with exercise and stress?

   A: If you stop and think for a minute, you can answer that question yourself. You’re under a lot of stress, and you don’t get any exercise.

   B: The stress ______________ I have at work doesn’t bother me. It’s just a normal part of my job. And I don’t have time to exercise.

   A: Well, you should make time. Anyone ______________ job is as stressful as yours should make physical exercise part of a daily routine.
PRACTICE 31—SELFSTUDY: Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Find and underline the ADJECTIVE CLAUSES in the following passages. Circle the NOUN that each adjective clause modifies.

1. (Flowers) that bloom year after year are called perennials. (Flowers) that bloom only one season are called annuals.

2. A: Who’s that boy?

B: Which boy? Are you talking about the boy who’s wearing the striped shirt or the boy who has on the T-shirt?

A: I’m not talking about either one of them. I’m talking about the boy who just waved at us. Look. Over there. Do you see the kid that has the red baseball cap?

B: Sure. I know him. That’s Al Jordan’s kid. His name is Josh or Jake or Jason. Nice kid.

Did you wave back?

3. Hiroki is from Japan. When he was sixteen, he spent four months in South America. He stayed with a family who lived near Quito, Ecuador. Their way of life was very different from his. At first, all of the things they did and said seemed strange to Hiroki: their eating customs, political views, ways of expressing emotion, work habits, sense of humor, and more. He felt homesick for people who were like him in their customs and habits. But as time went on, he began to appreciate the way of life that his host family followed. Many of the things Hiroki did with his host family began to feel natural to him. He developed a strong bond of friendship with them. At the beginning of his stay in Ecuador, he had noticed only the things that were different between his host family and himself. At the end, he understood how many things they had in common as human beings despite their differences in cultural backgrounds.

4. Many of the problems that exist today have existed since the beginning of recorded history.

One of these problems is violent conflict between people who come from different geographical areas or cultural backgrounds. One group may distrust and fear another group of people who are different from themselves in language, customs, politics, religion, and/or appearance. These irrational fears are the source of much of the violence that has occurred throughout the history of the world.
Directions: Find and underline the ADJECTIVE CLAUSES in the following passage. Circle the NOUN that each adjective clause modifies.

Parents are **people** who provide love, care, and education for children. Parents may be defined as the principal people who raise a child. These people may or may not have physically produced the child. Many children are brought up by relatives or other caring adults when their biological parents, through death, disability or uncontrollable circumstances, are not present to care for them. The role of any parents, biological or not, is to take care of their children’s emotional, physical, and social needs.

Children need love and affection to grow strong emotionally. It is important for all children to have at least one adult with whom they can form a loving, trusting relationship. A strong bond with adults is essential from birth through adolescence. For example, babies who are not picked up frequently and held lovingly may have slow physical and mental growth even though they receive adequate food and exercise. Youngsters who are raised in an institution without bonding with an older person who functions as a parent may often have difficulty forming trusting relationships when they are adults.

In addition to love, children need physical care. Babies are completely dependent upon adults for food, shelter, and safety. Children who are denied such basics in their early lives may suffer chronic health problems and feelings of insecurity throughout their lifetimes. One of the greatest responsibilities that parents have is to provide for the physical well-being of their children.

Children’s education is also the responsibility of the parents. Girls and boys must learn to speak, dress themselves, eat properly, and get along with others. They must learn not to touch fire, to look carefully before they cross the street, and not to use violence to solve problems. The lessons that parents teach their children are numerous. As children get older and enter school, teachers join parents in providing the education that young people need in order to become independent, productive members of society.
PRACTICE 33— GUIDED STUDY: Adjective clauses. (Chapter 12)

Directions: Discuss or write about the following topics. Incorporate ADJECTIVE CLAUSES into sentences whenever possible.

1. What are the qualities of a friend?
2. What kind of neighbors do you like to have?
3. What kind of people make good leaders?
4. What kind of people make good parents?
5. What is your idea of the ideal roommate?
6. What qualities do you expect in a boss?
7. What is one of the things you enjoy most about living here?
8. What is one of the things you dislike about living here?
9. Describe your dream house.
10. Describe your ideal vacation.

PRACTICE 34— SELFSTUDY: Phrasal verbs. (Chart 12-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given PARTICLES.

down in off out over up

1. If I quit a bad habit like smoking, that means I give it ______ up _______.
2. If I don't want to include something when I write a letter, I leave it ______________.
3. When I write words in this practice, I am filling ______________ the blanks.
4. When I discover new information, that means I find something ______________.
5. Sometimes when I recite a poem, I forget a line. So I go back to the beginning and start ______________.
6. When buildings are old and dangerous, we tear them ______________.
7. If I write a letter and I don't like what I've written, I will write it again. That means I'll do it ______________.
8. When I remove a piece of paper from a spiral notebook, I tear the paper ______________ of my notebook.
9. When I write something that I don't want anybody else to see, I tear the paper into tiny pieces. I tear ______________ the note.
10. When I write information on an application form, I fill the form ______________.
11. When I make a mistake in something I write, I erase the mistake if I'm using a pencil. If I'm using a pen, I cross the mistake ______________ by drawing a line through it.
12. When my tea cup is empty, I fill it ______________ again if I'm still thirsty.
Directions: Complete each sentence with two PARTICLES.

1. When I cross a busy street, I’m careful. I look ______ out ______ for ______ cars and trucks.

2. Some friends visited me last night. I hadn’t expected them. They just dropped ______ ______ ______ me.

3. Maria was born and raised in Brazil. in other words, she grew ______ ______ Brazil.

4. If I like people and enjoy their company, that means I get ______ ______ ______ them.

5. My cousin never does anything useful. He just fools ______ ______ ______ his friends all day wasting time.

6. When somebody uses the last spoonful of sugar in the kitchen, we don’t have any more sugar. That means we have run ______ ______ ______ sugar and need to go to the market.

7. I’m glad when I finish my homework. When I get ______ ______ ______ my homework, I can go out and play tennis or do whatever else I feel like doing.

8. In some places, it’s important to be careful about pickpockets. There are places where tourists have to watch ______ ______ ______ pickpockets.

9. If you return from a trip, that means you get ______ ______ ______ a trip.

10. Sometimes students have to quit school because they need to get a job, fail their courses, or lose interest in their education. There are various reasons why students drop ______ ______ ______ school.
Directions: Using the given information and the words in parentheses, complete the comparisons using **AS ... AS**. Use **NOT** with the verb as necessary.

1. Dogs make more noise than cats do. (be noisy)
   → Cats aren't as noisy as dogs.

2. Both Anne and her sister Amanda are lazy. (be lazy)
   → Anne is as lazy as her sister Amanda.

3. Adults have more strength than children. (be strong)
   → Children are not as strong as adults.

4. Tom and Jerry are the same height. (be tall)
   → Tom and Jerry.

5. It's more comfortable to live at home than in a dormitory. (be comfortable)
   → Living in a dormitory is not as comfortable as living at home.

6. Both the bride and the groom were nervous before the wedding. (be nervous)
   → The bride and the groom.

7. A basketball is bigger than a soccer ball. (be big)
   → A soccer ball is bigger than a basketball.
8. The air in a big city is more polluted than the air in the countryside. *(be fresh and clean)*

→ The air in a big city ___________________________ the air in the countryside.

9. My sister wants to be a famous and successful businesswoman. I don’t have any plans for my future. *(be ambitious)*

→ I ___________________________ my sister.

10. Some school subjects interest me, and others don’t. *(be interesting)*

→ Some school subjects ___________________________ others.

◊ **PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: As . . . as. (Chart 13-1)**

Directions: Complete the sentences with one of the following:

- just as
- almost as/not quite as
- not nearly as

**PART I: Compare the boxes.**

1. Box B is ___________________________ big as Box A.
2. Box E is ___________________________ big as Box A.
3. Box C is ___________________________ big as Box B.
4. Box E is ___________________________ big as Box D.

**PART II: Meeting time: 9:00 A.M. Compare the arrival times.**

Arrival times:
- David 9:01 A.M.
- Julia 9:14 A.M.
- Laura 9:15 A.M.
- Paul 9:15 A.M.
- James 9:25 A.M.

5. Paul was ___________________________ late as Laura.
6. David was ___________________________ late as James.
7. Julia was ___________________________ late as Laura.
8. Julia was ___________________________ late as Paul.
PART III: Compare world temperatures today.

Bangkok  92°F/33°C
Cairo   85°F/30°C
Madrid  90°F/32°C
Moscow  68°F/20°C
Tokyo   85°F/30°C

9. Tokyo is ____________________________ hot as Cairo.
10. Moscow is ____________________________ hot as Bangkok.
11. Madrid is ____________________________ hot as Bangkok.

PART IV: Compare world temperatures yesterday and today.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Yesterday</th>
<th>Today</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bangkok</td>
<td>95°F/35°C</td>
<td>92°F/33°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairo</td>
<td>95°F/35°C</td>
<td>85°F/30°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madrid</td>
<td>90°F/32°C</td>
<td>90°F/32°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>70°F/21°C</td>
<td>68°F/20°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>81°F/27°C</td>
<td>85°F/30°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. Cairo was ____________________________ hot as Bangkok yesterday.
13. It's ____________________________ warm in Moscow today as yesterday.
14. Madrid is ____________________________ hot today as yesterday.
15. It was ____________________________ hot in Tokyo yesterday as in Bangkok.
16. It's ____________________________ hot in Bangkok today as yesterday.

◊ PRACTICE 3—GUIDED STUDY: As . . . as. (Chart 13-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: . . . not as sharp as . . .
   → A pencil point isn't as sharp as a needle.
   → A kitchen knife isn't as sharp as a razor blade.
   → My mind isn't as sharp in the afternoon as it is in the morning.

1. . . . just as important as . . .
2. . . . not as comfortable as . . .
3. . . . not nearly as interesting as . . .
4. . . . just as good as . . .
5. . . . not quite as difficult as . . .
6. . . . not as quiet as . . .
7. . . . almost as good as . . .
8. . . . not as friendly as . . .
9. . . . not as heavy as . . .
10. . . . just as soft as . . .
Directions: Choose the best sentence completion from the given list.

A. as bad as she said it was  
B. as easy as it looks  
C. as fast as I could  
D. as good as they looked  
E. as much as possible  
F. as often as I can  
G. as often as I used to  
H. as soon as possible

1. I have a lot of homework. I will finish ______ E _______ before I go to bed.
2. I’m sorry I’m late. I drove ________.
3. I saw some chocolates at the candy store. They looked delicious, so I bought some. They tasted just _________.
4. When I was in college, I went to at least two movies every week. Now I’m very busy with my job and family, so I don’t go to movies _________.
5. It took Julie years of lessons to be able to play the piano well. She makes it look easy, but we all know that playing a musical instrument isn’t _________.
6. I need to finish working on this report, so go ahead and start the meeting without me. I’ll be there _________.
7. Even though I’m very busy, I’m usually just sitting at my desk all day. I need more exercise, so I try to walk to and from work _________.
8. My friend told me the movie was terrible, but I went anyway. My friend was right. The movie was just _________.

Directions: Give the COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE forms of the words below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>stronger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more important</td>
<td>strongest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tame</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convenient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. bad than the of all
13. far than the of all
14. slow than the of all
15. slowly than the of all

◊ PRACTICE & GUIDED STUDY: Comparative and superlative forms. (Charts 13-2 and 13-3)

Directions: As a class or in smaller groups, divide into two teams. Each team will try to score points by (1) giving the meaning of an adjective and (2) giving its comparative and superlative forms. (3) Bonus points will be awarded for every correct sentence the team creates using the comparative or superlative of the given adjective.

Each team has thirty seconds or a minute (or any other agreed upon length of time) for each word. (Someone in the class needs to be the timekeeper.) The teams should prepare for the contest by discussing the words in the list, looking them up in the dictionary if necessary, and making up possible sentences.

SCORING:
(1) one point for the correct meaning of the given adjective
(2) one point for the correct comparative and superlative forms of that adjective
(3) one point for each clear sentence with the correct comparative or superlative form

Example: dependable
LEADER: What does “dependable” mean?
TEAM: “Dependable” means “responsible, reliable, trustworthy.” For example, it describes people who do their jobs well every day.
LEADER: Yes. That’s one point. Now, comparative and superlative forms?
TEAM: More dependable than, the most dependable of all.
LEADER: Correct. That’s one point. Sentences?
TEAM: Adults are more dependable than children.
LEADER: Good. One point.
TEAM: Vegetables are more dependable than fruit.
LEADER: What? That doesn’t make any sense. No point.
TEAM: My parents always support me. They are the most dependable people I know.
LEADER: Great sentence! One point.—Time is up. Your total points as a team: Four.

List of adjectives:
1. wonderful 8. heavy 15. bright
2. high 9. dangerous 16. pleasant
3. easy 10. humid 17. polite
4. intelligent 11. confusing 18. soft
5. calm 12. clever 19. sour
6. dim 13. fresh 20. common
7. wild 14. friendly
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct COMPARATIVE form (MORE/ER) of the given adjectives.

bad  cold  funny  pretty
  careful  confusing  generous  soft
  clean  expensive  lazy  thin

1. I like to sit on pillows. They are a lot _______ than a hardwood seat.
2. The average temperature in Moscow is _______ than the average temperature in Hong Kong.
3. This gold ring costs much more than that silver one. Can you tell me why gold is _______ than silver?
4. Bobby! How did you get all covered with mud? Hurry and take a bath. Even the floor is _______ than you are.
5. Fresh flowers not only smell good, but they're a lot _______ than artificial flowers.
6. Sandy, when you drive to the airport today, you have to be _______ than you were the last time you went. You almost had an accident because you weren't paying attention to your driving.
7. I heard a little polite laughter when I told my jokes, but everyone laughed loudly when Janet was telling hers. Her jokes are always much _______ than mine.
8. I have trouble understanding Professor Larson. Her lectures are much _______ than Professor Sato's.
9. Your father seems to give you plenty of money for living expenses. He is _______ than mine.
10. My handwriting isn't very good, but my wife's handwriting is practically illegible. Her handwriting is much _______ than mine.
11. Cardboard has thickness, but paper doesn't. Paper is _______ than cardboard.
12. I don't like to work hard, but my sister does. I'm a lot _______ than my sister.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct COMPARATIVE form (MORE/ER) of the given adjectives and adverbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>comfortable</th>
<th>expensive</th>
<th>softly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark</td>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Lemons aren't ________ sweet_________ than oranges. Lemons are sour.
2. Refrigerators cost a lot. They are much ___________ expensive_________ than microwave ovens.
3. Children seem to be able to appear out of nowhere. When I'm near a school, I always drive ___________ slowly_________ than I have to.
4. In my experience, old shoes are usually a lot ___________ dark_________ than new shoes.
5. People in villages seem to be ___________ friendly_________ than people in large cities. They seem to enjoy talking to strangers.
6. Babies don't like loud noises. Most people speak ___________ loudly_________ than usual when they're talking to a baby.
7. Many more people die in car accidents than in plane accidents. Statistics show that driving your own car is ___________ dangerous_________ than flying in an airplane.
8. A: Why does wet sand look ___________ wet_________ than dry sand?
   B: Because wet sand reflects less light.
9. If a cat and a duck are out in the rain, the cat will get much ___________ wet_________ than the duck. The water will simply roll off of the duck's feathers but will soak into the cat's fur.
PRACTICE 9—SELFSTUDY: Farther and further. (Chart 13-3)

Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers. **Both** answers may be correct.

1. Ron and his friend went jogging. Ron ran two miles, but his friend got tired after one mile.
   Ron ran **A, B** than his friend did.
   A. farther  B. further

2. If you have any **B** questions, don’t hesitate to ask.
   A. farther  B. further

3. The planet Earth is ______ from the sun than the planet Mercury is.
   A. farther  B. further

4. I like my new apartment, but it is ______ away from school than my old apartment is.
   A. farther  B. further

5. Thank you for your help, but I’ll be fine now. I don’t want to cause you any ______ trouble.
   A. farther  B. further

6. I have no ______ need of this equipment. I’m going to sell it.
   A. farther  B. further

7. Paris is ______ north than Tokyo.
   A. farther  B. further

8. A: Mr. President, will you describe your new plans for the economy?
   B: I have no ______ comment. This press conference is over.
   A. farther  B. further

9. I’m tired. I walked ______ than I should have.
   A. farther  B. further

10. I gave my old typewriter to my younger sister because I had no ______ use for it.
    A. farther  B. further

PRACTICE 10—GUIDED STUDY: Comparatives. (Charts 13-2 and 13-3)

Directions: Choose any appropriate adjective from the list (or any adjective of your own choosing) to make comparisons of the given items. Use the comparative form (MORE/ER).

- bright  fast  relaxing  thick
- easy  flexible  shallow  thin
- enjoyable  heavy  short  wide and deep

1. traveling by air/traveling by bus
   → Traveling by air is faster than traveling by bus.
   Traveling by air is easier than traveling by bus. (Etc.)

2. a pool/a lake
3. an elephant’s neck/a giraffe’s neck
4. sunlight/moonlight
5. iron/wood
6. walking/running
7. river/stream
8. rubber/wood
9. nothing/sitting in a garden on a quiet summer day
10. a butterfly’s wing/a blade of grass
PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Completing comparisons with pronouns. (Chart 13-4)

Directions: Complete the comparisons with a PRONOUN and an appropriate AUXILIARY VERB.

1. Bob arrived at ten. I arrived at eleven.
   → Bob arrived earlier than _______ I did _______.

2. Linda is a good painter. Steven is better.
   → He is a better painter than _______ she is _______.

3. Alex knows a lot of people. I don’t know many people at all.
   → He knows a lot more people than _____________.

4. I won the race. Patty came in second.
   → I ran faster than _____________.

5. My parents were nervous about my motorcycle ride. I was just a little nervous.
   → They were a lot more nervous than _____________.

6. My aunt will stay with us for two weeks. My uncle has to return home to his job after a couple of days.
   → She will be here with us a lot longer than _____________.

   → She speaks a lot more clearly than _____________.

8. I’ve been here for two years. Sam has been here for two months.
   → I’ve been here a lot longer than _____________.

9. I had a good time at the picnic yesterday. Mary didn’t enjoy it.
   → I had a lot more fun at the picnic than _____________.

10. I can reach the top shelf of the bookcase. Tim can only reach the shelf next to the top.
    → I can reach higher than _____________.

PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Unclear comparisons. (Chart 13-3)

Directions: The following are unclear comparisons. Discuss the possible meanings.

1. UNCLEAR: Ann likes her dog better than her husband.
   POSSIBLE MEANINGS:
   → Ann likes her dog better than her husband does.
     (Meaning: Ann likes her dog better than her husband likes her dog.)
   → Ann likes her dog better than she does her husband.
     (Meaning: Ann likes her dog better than she likes her husband.)

2. UNCLEAR: I know John better than Mary.

3. UNCLEAR: Sam likes football better than his wife.

4. UNCLEAR: Frank helps me more than Debra.

5. UNCLEAR: I pay my plumber more than my dentist.
**PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Very vs. a lot/much/far.** (Chart 13-4)

Directions: Circle the correct answer or answers. *More than one* answer may be correct.

1. This watch is not _______ expensive.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

2. That watch is _______ more expensive than this one.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

3. My nephew is _______ polite.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

4. My nephew is _______ more polite than my niece.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

5. Simon is _______ taller than George.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

6. Simon is _______ tall.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

7. I think astronomy is _______ more interesting than geology.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

8. I think astronomy is _______ interesting.
   - A. very
   - B. a lot
   - C. much
   - D. far

**PRACTICE 14—SELFSTUDY: Less . . . than and not as . . . as.** (Chart 13-4)

Directions: Circle the correct answer or answers.

1. My nephew is _______ ambitious _______ my niece.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

2. My nephew is _______ old _______ my niece.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

3. A bee is _______ big _______ a bird.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

4. Money is _______ important _______ good health.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

5. The last exercise was _______ difficult _______ this one.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

6. My brother is _______ interested in planning for the future _______ I am.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

7. I am _______ good at repairing things _______ Diane is.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as

8. Some students are _______ serious about their schoolwork _______ others.
   - A. less . . . than
   - B. not as . . . as
PRACTICE 15—GUIDED STUDY: Completing a comparative. (Chart 13-4)

Directions: Answer the questions. Begin your answer with “Yes, I've never . . . .” Use COMPARATIVES (MORE/-ER) in your answer.

Example: Your friend told a story at the party last night. Was it funny?
→ Yes, I've never heard a funnier story.*

1. You took a test yesterday. Was it difficult?
2. You read a book that you liked very much. Was it a good book?
3. Someone said something bad to you. Were you angry?
4. I hope you liked staying in our guest room. Were you comfortable?
5. You've been carrying things and moving furniture all day. Are you tired?
6. Congratulations on the birth of your daughter. Are you happy?
7. You have known many people in your lifetime, but one person is special. Is this person kind? Is this person considerate? Is this person generous? wise? compassionate?
8. You have had many good experiences in your lifetime, but you remember one in particular. Was it an interesting experience? Was it a good experience? exciting? memorable?

PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: Adjectives vs. adverbs in the comparative. (Chart 13-4)

Directions: Complete each sentence using the COMPARATIVE + the correct ADJECTIVE or ADVERB. If it is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV.

1. slow slowly I like to drive fast, but my brother William doesn't. As a rule, he drives ___________ more slowly ___________ than I do.  
   ADJ (ADV)

2. slow slowly Alex is a ___________ slower ___________ driver than I am.  
   ADJ ADV

3. serious seriously Some workers are ________________ about their jobs than others.  
   ADJ ADV

4. serious seriously Some workers approach their jobs ________________ than others.  
   ADJ ADV

5. polite politely Why is it that my children behave ________________ at other people's houses than at home?  
   ADJ ADV

6. polite politely Why are they ________________ at Mrs. Miranda's house than at home?  
   ADJ ADV

7. careful carefully I'm a cautious person when I express my opinions, but my sister will say anything to anyone. I’m much ________________ when I speak to others than my sister is.  
   ADJ ADV

*The understood completion of the comparison is: I've never heard a funnier story in my lifetime than the story my friend told at the party last night.
8. careful  I always speak __________________________ in public than my sister does.  ADJ  ADV

carefully

9. clear  I can’t understand Mark's father very well when he talks, but I can understand Mark. He speaks much __________________________ than his father.  ADJ  ADV

clearly

10. clear  Mark is a much __________________________ speaker than his father.  ADJ  ADV

clearly

◊ PRACTICE 17—SELFSTUDY: Nouns in the comparative.  (Chart 13-5)

Directions: Choose from the given words to complete the sentences with the COMPARATIVE (MORE/ER). If the word you use in the comparative is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV. If it is a noun, circle NOUN.

books  friends  newspapers

carefully  homework  pleasant

easily  loud  snow

1. My husband always wants to know everything that is going on in the world. He reads many __________________________ than I do.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

2. University students study hard. They have a lot __________________________ than high school students.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

3. There is far __________________________ in winter in Alaska than there is in Texas.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

4. I’m lonely. I wish I had __________________________ to go places with and spend time with.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

5. A warm, sunny day is __________________________ than a cold, windy day.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

6. Don picks up languages with little difficulty. For me, learning a second language is slow and difficult. I guess some people just learn languages a lot __________________________ than others.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

7. The New York City Public Library has many __________________________ than the public library in Portland, Oregon.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

8. I have been driving __________________________ since my accident.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN

9. Karen doesn’t need a microphone when she speaks to the audience. She’s the only person I know whose voice is __________________________ than mine.  ADJ  ADV  NOUN
PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Making comparisons: as . . . as and more/-er.  
(Charts 13-1 → 13-4)

Directions: Compare the following. Use AS . . . AS, LESS, and MORE/-ER. How many points of comparison can you think of?

Example: the sun and the moon

→ The sun is larger than the moon.
The sun is hotter than the moon.
The sun is more important to life on earth than the moon is.
The sun is much brighter than the moon.
The moon is closer to the earth than the sun is.
The moon is less important than the sun.
The moon isn't as far away as the sun.

1. two stores in this city  
2. two seasons  
3. two kinds of music  
4. fingers and toes  
5. two classes  
6. two restaurants in this city  
7. iron and aluminum (American English)/aluminum (British English)  
8. a cloudy day and a sunny day

PRACTICE 19—SELFSTUDY: Repeating a comparative. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by REPEATING A COMPARATIVE. Use the words in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>angry</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>hard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td></td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I get excited, my heart beats _______ and _______ faster.
2. I was really mad! I got _______ and _______ until my sister touched my arm and told me to calm down.
3. When you blow up a balloon, it gets _______ and _______.
4. As we continued traveling north, the weather got _______ and _______. Eventually, everything we saw was frozen.
5. My English is improving. It is getting _______ and _______ every day.
6. As I continued walking in miserable weather, it rained _____________ and _____________. I got ______________ and ______________. By the time I got home, I was completely soaked.

7. As I continued to row the boat, my arms got ______________ and ______________ until I had almost no strength left in them at all.

◊ PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Double comparatives. (Chart 13-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with DOUBLE COMPARATIVES (THE MORE/-ER . . . THE MORE/-ER).

1. If the fruit is fresh, it tastes good.
   → ______________ the fruit is, ______________ it tastes.

2. We got close to the fire. We felt warm.
   → ______________ we got to the fire, ______________ we felt.

3. If a knife is sharp, it is easy to cut something with.
   → ______________ a knife (is), ______________ it is to cut something.

4. The party got noisy next door. I got angry.
   → I had a terrible time getting to sleep last night. My neighbors were having a loud party.
   → ______________ it got, ______________ I got. Finally, I banged on the wall and told them to be quiet.

5. Bill talked very fast. I became confused.
   → Bill was trying to explain some complicated physics problems to me to help me prepare for an exam. He kept talking faster and faster.
   → ______________ he talked, ______________ I became.
Directions: Complete the sentences in COLUMN A with the ideas in COLUMN B. Use the SUPERLATIVE of the adjective in parentheses. If you don’t know the right answer, guess.

Example: Kangaroos are the most familiar Australian grassland animals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Kangaroos . . .</td>
<td>A. (large) eyes of all four-legged land animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Giraffes . . .</td>
<td>B. (large) ears of all animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Apes and monkeys . . .</td>
<td>C. (long) necks of all animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. African elephants . .</td>
<td>E. (intelligent) animals that live in water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Horses . .</td>
<td>F. (intelligent) animals that live on land (besides human beings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Directions: Use the given phrases to complete the sentences with SUPERLATIVES.

1. The Pacific is ___________ in the world.
2. There is almost no air pollution at the South Pole. The South Pole has ___________ in the world.
3. ___________ are in the Himalayan Range in Asia.
4. Most birds are small, but not the flightless North African ostrich. It is ___________ in the world.
5. ___________ to ships are fog and icebergs.
6. One of ___________ throughout the world is the motion picture.
7. ___________ in the United States are Park, Washington, and Maple.
8. ___________ in South America is the Amazon.
9. The blue whale is huge. It is ___________ in the world.
PRACTICE 23—SELFSTUDY: Superlatives. (Chart 13-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with SUPERLATIVES and the appropriate PREPOSITION, IN or OF.

1. Jack is lazy. He is _______ the laziest student _______ the class.
2. Mike and Julie were nervous, but Amanda was _______ the most nervous of _______ all.
3. Costa Rica is beautiful. It is one of ___________ countries _______ the world.
4. Scott got a bad score on the test. It was one of ___________ scores _______ the whole school.
5. Pluto is far from the sun. In fact, it is ___________ planet from the sun _______ our solar system.
6. There are a lot of good cooks in my family, but my mom is _______ cook _______ all.
7. Alaska is big. It is ___________ state _______ the United States.
8. My grandfather is very old. He is _______ person _______ the town where he lives.
9. That chair in the corner is comfortable. It is ___________ chair _______ the room.
10. Everyone who ran in the race was exhausted, but I was _______ all.

PRACTICE 24—SELFSTUDY: Completing superlatives with adjective clauses. (Chart 13-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate SUPERLATIVE and the PRESENT PERFECT of the words in parentheses.

1. I have had many good experiences. Of those, my trip to Honduras was one of ___________ experiences I (have, ever) _______ have ever had _______.
2. I know many responsible people. Maria is one of ___________ people I (know, ever) _______ have ever known _______.
3. I've had many nice times, but my birthday party was one of ___________ times I (have, ever) _______.
4. I've taken many difficult courses, but statistics is ___________ course I (take, ever) _______.
5. I've tasted a lot of good coffee, but this is ___________ coffee I (have, ever) _______.
6. I've made a lot of bad mistakes in my life, but I'm afraid lending my cousin a lot of money was __________________________ mistake I (make, ever) __________________________.__

7. There are many beautiful buildings in the world, but the Taj Mahal is one of __________________________
______________________________ buildings I (see, ever) __________________________.

8. A: How do you think you did on the exam this morning?
B: I think I did pretty well. It was an easy test. In fact, it was one of __________________________
exams I (take, ever) __________________________.

◊ PRACTICE 25—GUIDED STUDY: Completing superlatives with adjective clauses. (Chart 13-8)

Directions: Create sentences with ONE OF plus a SUPERLATIVE and your own words. Use the following patterns:

PATTERN A: **ONE OF** + SUPERLATIVE + PLURAL NOUN + **IS**
PATTERN B: **IS** + **ONE OF** + SUPERLATIVE + PLURAL NOUN

Example: There are many good students in this class. Who is one of the best?
→ PATTERN A: *One of the best students* in this class *is* (Nazir). OR
→ PATTERN B: *(Nazir) is one of the best students* in this class.

Example: You have known many interesting people. Who is one of the most interesting you’ve known?
→ PATTERN A: *One of the most interesting people* I’ve ever known *is* (Ms. Lee). OR
→ PATTERN B: *(Ms. Lee) is one of the most interesting people* I’ve ever known.

1. There are many beautiful countries in the world. What is one of them?
2. There are many famous people in the world. Who is one of them?
3. There are many long rivers in the world. What is one of them?
4. You’ve seen some good movies. What is one of the best movies you’ve seen recently?
5. Have you seen any bad movies? What is one of them?
6. You’ve visited some interesting cities. What is one of them?
7. You know some wonderful people. Who is one of them?
8. Have you ever taken any difficult classes? What is one of them?
9. You have had many good experiences. What is one of the best experiences you’ve ever had?
10. There are a lot of interesting animals in the world. What is one of them?
11. What is one of the strangest things you’ve ever seen?
12. There are many important people in your life among your family, friends, teachers, co-workers, and others. Who is one of these people?
13. Who is one of the most important people in world politics or the history of your country?
14. Think of some happy days in your life. What was one of them?
15. Talk about one of the best trips you’ve taken, the funniest things you’ve seen, the most exciting things you’ve done, the easiest jobs you’ve had, the coldest places you’ve been, the best times you’ve had, the most decent people you’ve known.
Directions: Complete with BETTER, THE BEST, WORSE, or THE WORST.

1. I just finished a terrible book. It’s ______ the worst ______ book I’ve ever read.

2. The weather was bad yesterday, but it’s terrible today. The weather is ______ worse ______ today than it was yesterday.

3. This cake is really good. It’s _______ the best _______ cake I’ve ever eaten.

4. My grades this term are great. They’re much ______ worse _______ than last term.

5. Being separated from my family in time of war is one of _______ the worst _______ experiences I can imagine.

6. I broke my nose in a football game yesterday. Today it’s very painful. For some reason, the pain is _______ worse _______ than it was yesterday.

7. The fire spread and burned down an entire city block. It was _______ the worst _______ fire we’ve ever had in our town.

8. I think my cold is almost over. I feel a lot _______ better _______ than I did yesterday. I can finally breathe again.

Directions: Ask and answer questions with COMPARATIVES and SUPERLATIVES.

STUDENT A: Ask a question that uses either a comparative or a superlative.
STUDENT B: Answer the question. Use complete sentences.

Example: what . . . sweet
STUDENT A: What is sweeter than sugar?
STUDENT B: Nothing is sweeter than sugar.

Example: what . . . dangerous
STUDENT A: What is more dangerous than riding a motorcycle without a helmet?
STUDENT B: Climbing a mountain without a safety rope is more dangerous than riding a motorcycle without a helmet.

Example: who is . . . wonderful
STUDENT A: Who is the most wonderful person you’ve ever known?
STUDENT B: That’s a hard question. Probably my mother is the most wonderful person I’ve ever known.

1. what is . . . important
2. who is . . . famous
3. what is . . . good
4. what is . . . bad
5. whose hair is . . . long
6. what is . . . interesting
7. which car is . . . expensive
8. what country is . . . near
9. what is . . . dangerous
10. who is . . . old
11. what is . . . beautiful
12. who is . . . kind
Directions: Complete comparisons for the following three parts.

**PART I:** Compare the cost of the listed items. Use the given expressions.

**ITEMS TO COMPARE:**
- a telephone
- a pencil
- a pair of socks
- a motorcycle

1. is less expensive than
   - A telephone is less expensive than a motorcycle.
   - A pencil is less expensive than a pair of socks.
   - Etc.

2. is much more expensive than
3. is not as expensive as
4. are more expensive than
5. are both less expensive than
6. is not nearly as expensive as
7. are all more expensive than

**PART II:** Compare the waterfalls by using the given expressions.

8. much higher
9. almost as high
10. highest
11. not nearly as high
12. not quite as high
PART III: Compare the weight of the listed items. Use the given expressions.

ITEMS TO COMPARE:
- water
- iron
- wood
- air

13. heavier
14. lighter
15. heaviest
16. not as heavy
17. lightest
18. not nearly as light
19. both heavier

◊ PRACTICE 29—SELFSTUDY: Review of comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 13-2 → 13-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words. There may be more than one possible completion.

1. Lead is a very heavy metal. It is (heavy) ______ heavier than ______ gold or silver. It is one of (heavy) ______ the heaviest ______ metals ______ all

2. Dogs are usually (friendly) ______ cats.

3. One of (famous) ______ volcanoes ______ the world is Mount Etna in Sicily.

4. A car has two (wheels) ______ a bicycle.

5. Mrs. Cook didn’t ask the children to clean up the kitchen. It was (easy) ______ for her to do it herself ______ to nag them to do it.

6. Duck eggs and chicken eggs are different. Duck eggs are (large) ______ chicken eggs. Also, the yolk of a duck egg is (dark) ______ yellow ______ the yolk of a chicken egg.

7. One of (safe) ______ places to be during a lightning storm is inside a car.

8. Small birds have a much (fast) ______ heartbeat ______ large birds.

9. Are your feet exactly the same size? Almost everyone’s left foot is (big) ______ their right foot.*

10. The volcanic explosion of Krakatoa near Java in 1883 may have been (loud) ______ noise ______ recorded history. It was heard 2,760 miles (4,441 kilometers) away.

* Grammar note: In formal English, a singular pronoun is used to refer to everyone:

Almost everyone’s left foot is bigger than his or her right foot.

In everyday informal usage, a plural pronoun is frequently used:

Almost everyone’s left foot is bigger than their right foot.
11. In terms of area, (large) ________________ state ________________ the United States is Alaska, but it has one of (small) ________________ populations ________________ all the states.

12. Nothing is (important) ________________ good health. Certainly gaining wealth is much (important) ________________ enjoying good health.

13. I need more facts. I can't make my decision until I get (information) ________________.

14. Rebecca is a wonderful person. I don't think I've ever met a (kind) ________________ and (generous) ________________ person.

15. You can trust her. You will never meet a (honest) ________________ person ________________ she is.

16. I'm leaving! This is (bad) ________________ movie I've ever seen! I won't sit through another second of it.

17. (important) ________________ piece of equipment for birdwatching is a pair of binoculars.

18. Although both jobs are important, being a teacher requires (education) ________________ ________________ being a bus driver.

19. The Great Wall of China is the (long) ________________ structure that has ever been built.

20. Howard Anderson is one of (delightful) ________________ people I've ever met.

21. (hard) ________________ I tried, (impossible) ________________ it seemed to solve the math problem.

22. Perhaps (common) ________________ topic of everyday conversation ________________ the world is the weather.
23. No animals can travel (fast) ___________________ birds. Birds are (fast) ___________________ animals _______ all.

24. Most birds have small eyes, but not ostriches. Indeed, the eye of an ostrich is (large) ___________________.

25. (great) ___________________ variety of birds _______ a single area can be found in the rain forests of Southeast Asia and India.

26. I feel (safe) ________________ in a plane __________ I do in a car.

27. Jakarta is (large) ___________________ city _______ Indonesia.

PRACTICE 30—GUIDED STUDY: Review of comparatives and superlatives.
(Charts 13-1 → 13-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words.

1. Sometimes I feel like all of my friends are (intelligent) ___________________ more intelligent than _______ I am, and yet sometimes they tell me that they think I am (smart) ___________________ person _______ in _______ the class.

2. One of (popular) ___________________ holidays _______ Japan is New Year’s.

3. A mouse is (small) ___________________ a rat.

4. Europe is first in agricultural production of potatoes. (potatoes) ___________________ are grown in Europe _______ on any other continent.

5. Mercury is (close) ___________________ planet to the sun. It moves around the sun (fast) ___________________ any other plant in the solar system.

6. Human beings must compete with other species for the food of the land. The (great) ___________________ competitors we have for food are insects.

7. When the temperature stays below freezing for a long period of time, the Eiffel Tower becomes six inches (fifteen centimeters) (short) ___________________.

8. Have you ever been bothered by a fly buzzing around you? (easy) ___________________ way _______ all to get a fly out of a room is to darken the room and turn on a light somewhere else.

9. Mountain climbing takes (strength) ___________________ walking on a level path.

10. Cheese usually tastes (good) ___________________ at room temperature _______ it does just after you take it out of the refrigerator.

11. World Cup Soccer is (big) ___________________ sporting event _______ the world. It is viewed on TV by (people) ___________________ any other event in sports.
12. The wall of a soap bubble is very, very thin. A human hair is approximately ten thousand times
(thick) the wall of a soap bubble.

13. English has approximately 600,000 words. Because of the explosion of scientific discoveries
and new technologies, there are (words) in English . in any other language.

14. You’d better buy the tickets for the show soon. (long) you wait,
(difficult) it will be to get good seats.

15. I’ve seen a lot of funny movies over the years, but the one I saw last night is (funny)
all.

16. Riding a bicycle can be dangerous. (people) were killed in
bicycle accidents last year have been killed in airplane accidents in the last four
years.

17. Young people have (high) rate of automobile accidents all drivers.

18. Some people build their own boats from parts that they order from a manufacturer. They save
money that way. It is (expensive) to build your own boat
to buy a boat.

19. It’s easy to drown a houseplant. (houseplants) die from too much water
not enough water.
20. Mr. Hochingnauong feels (comfortable) speaking his native language he does speaking English.

21. My friend has studied many languages. He thinks Japanese is (difficult) all the languages he has studied.

22. One of (bad) nuclear accidents the world occurred at Chernobyl in 1986.

23. I think learning a second language is (hard) studying chemistry or mathematics.

24. (low) temperature ever recorded in Alaska was minus 80°F (-27°C) in 1971.

25. Computers are complicated machines, but one of (complex) things the universe is the human brain.

◊ PRACTICE 31—SELFSTUDY: The same, similar, different, like, and alike. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with AS, TO, FROM, or 0 if no word is necessary.

1. Geese are similar to ducks. They are both large water birds.

2. But geese are not the same as ducks. Geese are usually larger and have longer necks.

3. Geese are different from ducks.

4. Geese are like ducks in some ways, but geese and ducks are not exactly alike.

5. An orange is similar a grapefruit. They are both citrus fruits.

6. But an orange is not the same a grapefruit. A grapefruit is usually larger and sourer.

7. An orange is different a grapefruit.

8. An orange is like a grapefruit in some ways, but they are not exactly alike.

9. Gold is similar silver. They are both valuable metals that people use for jewelry. But they aren’t the same. Gold is not the same color silver. Gold is also different silver in cost. Gold is more expensive than silver.
10. Look at the two zebras. Their names are Zee and Bee. Zee looks like __________ Bee. Is Zee exactly the same __________ Bee? The pattern of the stripes on each zebra in the world is unique. No two zebras are exactly alike __________. Even though Zee and Bee are similar __________ each other, they are different __________ each other in the exact pattern of their stripes.

◊ PRACTICE 32—SELFSTUDY: The same, similar, different, like, and alike. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Circle the correct completions.

1. My coat is __________ from yours.
2. Our apartment is __________ to my cousin's.
3. The news report on channel four was __________ as the report we heard on channel six last night.
4. My sister and I look __________ and talk __________, but our personalities are quite __________.
5. Does James act __________ his brother?
6. My dictionary is __________ from yours.
7. A: I'm sorry, but I believe you have my umbrella.
   B: Oh? Yes, I see. It looks almost exactly __________ mine, doesn't it?
8. A: How do you like the spaghetti I made for you? Is it __________ to yours?
   B: It's a little __________ mine, but not exactly __________.
9. A: Your jacket is exactly the same __________ mine.
   B: Isn't that amazing? I bought mine in New York, and you bought yours in Tokyo, and yet they're exactly __________.
10. A: Some people think that we look __________. What do you think?
    B: Well, the color of your hair is __________ to mine, and your eyes are almost __________ color as mine. I guess there's a resemblance.
PRACTICE 33—GUIDED STUDY: The same, similar, different, like, and alike. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Compare the figures. Complete the sentences using THE SAME, SIMILAR, DIFFERENT, LIKE, and ALIKE.

1. All of the figures are similar to each other.
2. Figure A is Figure B.
3. Figure A and Figure B are
4. A and C are
5. A and C are D.
6. C is A.
7. B isn't D.

PRACTICE 34—GUIDED STUDY: The same, similar, different, like, and alike. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Compare the figures.
PRACTICE 35—GUIDED STUDY: Making comparisons. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Compare the pictures. How many differences can you find?

Example: The boy in Picture B isn't the same height as the boy in Picture A.

PRACTICE 36—GUIDED STUDY: Making comparisons. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Ask three (or more) classmates four (or more) questions. First decide what you want to ask your classmates. Below are some suggestions. Next fill out the chart with the topics of the questions. Then write in the names of the classmates you talk to and ask them the questions. After you have all of your information, compare the answers using SAME, DIFFERENT, SIMILAR, LIKE, ALIKE, AS . . . AS, MORE/ER and MOST/EST.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>eye-color</th>
<th>favorite sport</th>
<th>length of time at this school</th>
<th>educational goals</th>
<th>size of family</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hamid</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>soccer</td>
<td>3 mo.</td>
<td>engineering degree</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiroki</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>3 mo.</td>
<td>business degree</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>4 mo.</td>
<td>journalism degree</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possible comparisons:

I'm comparing three people: Hamid, Hiroki, and Maria.

- All three have the same eye color.
- Hiroki and Maria like the same sport, baseball. Hamid's favorite sport is different from theirs. He likes soccer.
• Maria has been at this school longer than Hamid and Hiroki.
• Their educational goals are similar. All of them want to get university degrees.
• Maria has the largest family. Hiroki’s immediate family is the smallest.

Suggestions for questions to ask your classmates:
1. How long have you been at this school?
2. What color are your eyes?
3. What is your favorite kind of music?
4. What is your favorite sport?
5. What do you usually wear to class?
6. What are your educational goals?
7. How many people are there in your immediate family?*
8. How big is your hometown?
9. What kind of books do you like to read?
10. What kind of movies do you prefer?
11. What country would you most like to visit?
12. What is your favorite food?
13. When did you last visit home?
14. What kind of vacation do you prefer?
15. How tall are you?

Use this chart to record your information. Write in the topics of your questions, the names of the people you interview, and then their answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Topic 1</th>
<th>Topic 2</th>
<th>Topic 3</th>
<th>Topic 4</th>
<th>Topic 5</th>
<th>Topic 6</th>
<th>Topic 7</th>
<th>Topic 8</th>
<th>Topic 9</th>
<th>Topic 10</th>
<th>Topic 11</th>
<th>Topic 12</th>
<th>Topic 13</th>
<th>Topic 14</th>
<th>Topic 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*Immediate family = mother, father, and children (not including cousins, aunts, uncles, grandparents, etc.).
PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Noun clauses and information questions.  
(Charts 6-2 and 14-2)

Directions: If the sentence contains a NOUN CLAUSE, underline it and circle NOUN CLAUSE. If the question word introduces a question, circle QUESTION. Add appropriate final punctuation: a PERIOD (.)* or a QUESTION MARK (?).

1. I don't know where Jack bought his new boots.  
2. Where did Jack buy his new boots?  
3. I don't understand why Ann left  
4. Why did Ann leave  
5. I don't know where your book is  
6. Where is your book  
7. When did Bob come  
8. I don't know when Bob came  
9. What does “calm” mean  
10. Tarik knows what “calm” means  
11. I don't know how long the earth has existed  
12. How long has the earth existed

PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Noun clauses and information questions.  
(Charts 6-2 and 14-2)

Directions: PART I: Underline the NOUN CLAUSE in each sentence. Find the SUBJECT (S) and VERB (V) of the noun clause.

1. I don't know where Patty went last night.

*A period is called a full stop in British English.*
2. Do you know where [Joe's parents] [live]?* 

3. I know where Joe lives.

4. Do you know what time the movie begins?

5. She explained where Brazil is.

6. I don’t believe what Estefan said.

7. I don’t know when the packages will arrive.

8. Please tell me how far it is to the post office.

9. I don’t know who knocked on the door.

10. I wonder what happened at the party last night.

PART II: Change the underlined NOUN CLAUSE to a QUESTION.

1. QUESTION: Where did Patty go last night? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where Patty went last night.

2. QUESTION: Where do Joe’s parents live? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where Joe’s parents live.

3. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where Joe lives.

4. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know what time the movie begins.

5. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where Pine Street is.

6. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know what Estefan said.

7. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know when the packages will arrive.

8. QUESTION: ? 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know how far it is to the post office.

*A question mark is used at the end of this noun clause because the main subject and verb of the sentence (Do you know) are in question word order.

Example: Do you know where Joe lives?

Do you know asks a question; where Joe lives is a noun clause.
9. QUESTION: _______________________________?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know who knocked on the door.

10. QUESTION: _______________________________?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know what happened at the party last night.

◊ PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the questions to NOUN CLAUSES.

1. A: Where does Jim go to school?
   B: I don't know __________ where Jim goes __________ to school.

2. A: Where did Alex go yesterday?
   B: I don't know. Do you know __________ where Alex went __________ yesterday?

3. A: Why is Maria laughing?
   B: I don't know. Does anybody know ______________ ?

4. A: Why is fire hot?
   B: I don't know ___________________ hot.

5. A: How much does a new Honda cost?
   B: Peter can tell you ____________________.

6. A: Why is Mike always late?
   B: Don’t ask me. I don’t understand ___________________ late.

7. A: How long do birds live?
   B: I don’t know ____________________.

8. A: When was the first wheel invented?
   B: I don’t know. Do you know ____________________?
9. A: How many hours does a light bulb burn?
   B: I don’t know exactly __________________________.

10. A: Where did Emily buy her computer?
    B: I don’t know __________________________ her computer.

11. A: Who lives next door to Kate?
    B: I don’t know __________________________ next door to Kate.

12. A: Who(m) did Julie talk to?
    B: I don’t know __________________________ to.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Noun clauses and information questions.
(Charts 6-2 and 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. A: Do you know where (Jason, work) ______ Jason works ______?
   B: Who?
   A: Jason. Where (he, work) ______ does he work ______?
   B: I don’t know.

2. A: Where (Susan, eat) ______ lunch yesterday?
   B: I don’t know where (she, eat) ______ lunch yesterday.

3. A: Excuse me.
   B: Yes. How can I help you?
   A: How much (that camera, cost) ______?
   B: You want to know how much (this camera, cost) ______ is that right?
   A: No, not that one. The one next to it.

4. A: How far (you, can run) ______ without stopping?
   B: I have no idea. I don’t know how far (I, can run) ______ without stopping. I’ve never tried.

5. A: Where (you, see) ______ the ad for the computer sale last week?
   B: I don’t remember where (I, see) ______ it. One of the local papers, I think.

6. A: Could you please tell me where (Mr. Gow’s office, is) ______?
   B: I’m sorry. I didn’t understand.
   A: Where (Mr. Gow’s office, is) ______?
   B: Ah. Down the hall on the right.
7. A: Ann was out late last night, wasn’t she? What time (she, get) ________________ in?
   B: Why do you want to know what time (she, get) __________________________ home?
   A: Just curious.
8. A: What time (it, is) ________________?
   B: I don’t know. I’ll ask Sara. Sara, do you know what time (it, is) ________________?
   C: Almost four-thirty.
9. A: What was your score on the test?
   B: I don’t know yet.
   A: How soon (you, know) __________________________?
   B: I don’t know how soon (I, know) __________________________. I won’t know until the professor hands the exams back.
10. A: How often (you, go) __________________________ shopping every week?
    B: (you, mean) __________________________ grocery shopping?
    A: Yes.
    B: Why? I don’t understand why (you, want) __________________________ to know how often (I, go) __________________________ shopping every week.
    A: My mother goes to the market every day. She thinks I’m lazy because I go shopping only once a week. I just wonder how often (other people, go) __________________________ shopping.
    B: I see. Well, once a week is enough for me.
11. A: (who, invent) __________________________ the first refrigerator?
    B: I don’t know (who, invent) __________________________ it. Do you?
12. A: Whose car (Toshi, borrow) __________________________ yesterday?
    B: I don’t know whose car (Toshi, borrow) __________________________.
13. A: When (Rachel, plan) __________________________ to return to class?
    B: No one knows when (she, return) __________________________ to class. She left the hospital two weeks ago.
    A: Why (she, be) __________________________ in the hospital?
    B: I haven’t heard why (she, be) __________________________ in the hospital.
    I just know that she’s living at home with her parents.
14. A: Where (Tom, go) __________________________ last night?
    B: I’m sorry. I didn’t hear what (you, say) __________________________.
    A: I wanted to know where (Tom, go) __________________________ last night.
Directions: Find the subject (S) and verb (V) of the noun clause.

1. I don't know who [that man] [is].
2. I don't know [who] [called].
3. I don't know who those people are.
4. I don't know who that person is.
5. I don't know who lives next door to me.
6. I don't know who my teacher will be next semester.
7. I don't know who will teach us next semester.
8. I don't know what a lizard is.
9. I don't know what happened in class yesterday.
10. I don't know whose hat this is.
11. I don't know whose hat is on the table.

Directions: Add the word is to each sentence in the correct place.

1. I don't know who __________ that woman __________.
2. I don't know who __________ on the phone __________.
3. I don't know what __________ a crow __________.
4. I don't know what __________ in that bag __________.
5. I don't know whose car __________ in the driveway __________.
6. I don't know whose car __________ that __________.
7. I don't know who __________ Bob's doctor __________.
8. I don't know who __________ in the doctor's office __________.

Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the questions to noun clauses.

1. A: Whose car is that?
   B: I don't know __________ __________.

2. A: Whose car is in front of Sam's house?
   B: I don't know __________ in front of Sam's house __________.
3. A: Who has the scissors?
   B: Not me. I don’t know _____________________________.

4. A: Who are the best students?
   B: Ask the teacher _____________________________.

5. A: What is a violin?
   B: I don’t know _____________________________.
   C: It’s a musical instrument that has strings.

6. A: What causes earthquakes?
   B: You should ask your geology professor _____________________________.

7. A: What kind of fruit is that?
   B: I can’t tell you _____________________________. I’ve never seen it before.

8. A: Whose hammer is this?
   B: I don’t know. Hey, Hank, do you know ____________________________?
   A: It’s Ralph’s.

   B: Who is it?
   A: I don’t know _____________________________. Want me to find out?
   B: Yeah.
   B: Where is she?
   A: Betsy wants to know _____________________________. Okay. She’s at home.
   B: What time does she want me to meet her at the theater?
   A: Here. You talk to her yourself.

**PRACTICE 8—GUIDED STUDY: Noun clauses and information questions.**
(Charts 6-2, 14-2 and 14-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. A: How long *(the oldest whales, live)* do the oldest whales live?
   B: Nobody knows for sure how long *(the oldest whales, live)* the oldest whales live.

2. A: Do you know how old *(Amanda, be)* ____________________________?
   B: Why do you want to know how old *(Amanda, be)* ____________________________?
   A: Just answer my question. How old *(Amanda, be)* ____________________________?
   B: I won’t tell you until you tell me why *(you, want)* ____________________________ to know.
3. A: The boss wants to know why (David, leave) ________________________________ the office early yesterday. Do you know?
B: No. I'll ask Sara. Hey, Sara, why (David, leave) ________________________________ early yesterday?
C: He had to go to a meeting at his son's school.

4. A: How (airplanes, stay) ________________________________ up in the air?
B: What? What are you talking about?
A: I'm talking about airplanes. I wonder how (they, stay) ________________________________ up in the air. Do you know?
B: Sure. It has something to do with the movement of air.

5. A: Where (you, go) ________________________________ last night?
B: I don't have to tell you where (I, go) ________________________________ last night.
A: Why don't you want to tell me where (you, go) ________________________________ last night?
B: It's none of your business.
A: Well!

6. A: What (an apricot, be) ________________________________ ?
B: Why do you want to know what (an apricot, be) ________________________________ ?
A: I'm studying my vocabulary list. I'm trying to learn twenty new words every day.
B: I see. An apricot is a small, sweet, orange fruit.

7. A: Do you know why (Jane, bring) ________________________________ her suitcase to work with her this morning?
B: No. I'll ask Mike. Mike, why (Jane, bring) ________________________________ her suitcase to work with her this morning? Did she tell you?
C: Yes. Right after work today she's leaving for Springfield to visit her fiancé.
8. A: Whose red sports car (that, be) ________________?  
   B: I'll ask Don. I think he knows whose red sports car (that, be) ________________.  
   A: Wish it were mine.
   B: What's the word?  
   A: "Chief." I want to know what ("chief," mean) ________________.  
   B: I don't know. Pablo, do you know what ("chief," mean) ________________?  
   C: No. I'll ask the teacher. Ms. Sills, what ("chief," mean) ________________,  
      as in "the chief reason"?
   D: It means "Principal, main, most important."
10. A: Mom, why (some people, be) ________________ cruel to other people?  
    B: Honey, I don't really understand why (some people, be) ________________  
       cruel to others. It's difficult to explain.
11. A: Mr. Wortman! Why (you, tell, not) ________________ me about  
      this problem sooner?  
    B: I'm sorry, sir. I don't know why (I, tell, not) ________________  
       you about it sooner. I guess I forgot.
12. A: What kind of camera (Barbara, have) ________________?  
    B: I don't know, but you should find out what kind of camera (she, have)  
       ________________ before you decide what to get for yourself. She knows a lot  
       about cameras.
13. A: How many French francs (there, be) ________________ in one U.S. dollar?  
    B: I don't know. Call your friend Pierre if you want to know how many French francs (there,  
       be) ________________ in one U.S. dollar.
14. A: Susan looks sad. Why (she, be) ________________ so unhappy today?  
    B: I can't say why (she, be) ________________ unhappy. She swore me to secrecy.
15. A: I don't care about the future. All I care about is today.  
    B: Oh? Well, answer this question for me. Where (you, spend) ________________  
       ________________ the rest of your life?  
    A: What do you mean?  
    B: I mean it's important to pay attention to the future. That's where (you, spend)  
       ________________ the rest of your life.
PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Information questions and noun clauses.
(Charts 6-2, 14-2, and 14-3)

Directions: Ask information questions and respond using NOUN CLAUSES.

STUDENT A: Using the given question word, ask a question that you are sure Student B cannot answer. (You don’t have to know the answer to the question.)

STUDENT B: Respond to the question by saying “I don’t know . . .” followed by a NOUN CLAUSE. Then you can guess at an answer if you wish.

Example: when

STUDENT A: When was the first book printed?
STUDENT B: I don’t know when the first book was printed. Probably three or four hundred years ago.

1. where
2. who
3. how far
4. what kind
5. what time
6. whose
7. when
8. why
9. what
10. how much

PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Yes/no questions and noun clauses. (Charts 6-2 and 14-4)

Directions: Change the YES/NO QUESTION to a NOUN CLAUSE.

1. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Tom coming?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder if (whether) Tom is coming.

2. YES/NO QUESTION: Can Jennifer play the piano?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know.

3. YES/NO QUESTION: Did Paul go to work yesterday?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know.

4. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Susan coming to work today?
   NOUN CLAUSE: Can you tell me?

5. YES/NO QUESTION: Will Mr. Pips be at the meeting?
   NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know?

6. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Barcelona a coastal town?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I can’t remember.

7. YES/NO QUESTION: Would Carl like to come with us?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder.

8. YES/NO QUESTION: Do you still have Yung Soo’s address?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know.
Directions: Complete the dialogues by completing the NOUN CLAUSES. Use IF to introduce the noun clause.

1. A: Are you tired?
   B: Why do you want to know if I am tired?
   A: You look tired. I'm worried about you.

2. A: Are you going to be in your office later today?
   B: What? Sorry. I didn't hear you.
   A: I need to know if you are in your office later today.

3. A: Do all birds have feathers?
   B: Well, I don't really know for sure but I suppose they do.

4. A: Did Bill take my dictionary off my desk?
   B: Who?
   A: Bill. I want to know if Bill took my dictionary off my desk.

5. A: Can Uncle Pete babysit tonight?
   B: Sorry. I wasn't listening. I was thinking about something else.
   A: Have you talked to Uncle Pete? We need to know if he will babysit tonight.

6. A: Does Al have a flashlight in his car?
   B: I'll ask him. Hey, Al! Al! Fred wants to know if you have a flashlight in your car.

7. A: Are you going to need help moving the furniture to your new apartment?
   B: I don't know if you will need help. Thanks for asking. I'll let you know.

8. A: Should I take my umbrella?
   B: How am I supposed to know if you need your umbrella? I'm not a weather forecaster.
   A: You're kind of grumpy today, aren't you?

9. A: Is white a color?
   B: What?
   A: I wonder if white is a color, you know, like blue or red.
   B: Of course it is.
10. A: Can fish smell?
   B: Why do you want to know ____________________________?
   A: Just wondering. Do fish breathe?
   B: You want to know ____________________________, is that right?
   A: Yes. Do they?
   B: Sort of. They get oxygen from water through their gills.

◊ PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Noun clauses. (Charts 14-1 → 14-4)

Directions: What are some of the things you wonder about? Consider the given topics. Create sentences with "I wonder . . . (why, when, how, if, whether, etc.)."

1. birds → I wonder how many birds there are in the world.
   I wonder how many different kinds of birds there are in the world.
   I wonder how long birds have lived on earth.
   I wonder whether birds can communicate with each other.
   I wonder if birds in cages are unhappy.

2. fish
3. the earth
4. (name of a person you know)
5. events in the future
6. electricity
7. dinosaurs
8. (topic of your own choosing)

◊ PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Questions and noun clauses. (Charts 6-2 and 14-1 → 14-4)

Directions: Make up questions and report them using NOUN CLAUSES.

STUDENT A: Write five questions you want to ask Student B about his/her life or opinions. Sign your name. Hand the questions to Student B.

STUDENT B: Report to the class or a smaller group what Student A wants to know and then provide the information if you can or want to. Use " . . . wants to know . . ." each time you report a question.

Example:

STUDENT A’s list of questions:
   1. Where were you born?
   2. What is your favorite color?
   3. What do you think about the recent election in your country?
   4. Who do you admire most in the world?
   5. Do you have a red car?

STUDENT B’s report:
   1. (Student A) wants to know where I was born. I was born in (Caracas).
   2. S/he wants to know what my favorite color is. Well, blue, I guess.
3. S/he wants to know what I think about the recent election in my country. I'm very pleased. The new leader will be good for my country.

4. (S/he) wants to know who I admire most in the world. I'll have to think about that for a minute.

5. Finally, (s/he) wants to know if I have a red car. I wonder why s/he wants to know that. The answer is no. I don't have a red car, or a black car, or a blue car.

◊ PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Questions and noun clauses. (Charts 6-2, 14-1 → 14-4)

Directions: Make up questions and answer them using NOUN CLAUSES.

STUDENT A: Ask a question. Use the suggestions below.

STUDENT B: Answer the question if you can. If you can't, respond by saying "I don't know . . ." followed by a NOUN CLAUSE. Then you can guess at the answer if you wish.

Example: location of X*

STUDENT A: Where is Mr. Chin's briefcase right now?

STUDENT B: Under his desk. OR I don't know where his briefcase is right now. I suppose he left it at home today.

1. location of X
2. cost of X
3. year that X happened
4. reason for X
5. person who did X
6. owner of X
7. the meaning of X
8. time of X
9. amount of X
10. country X is from
11. type of X
12. distance from X to Y

◊ PRACTICE 15—SELFSTUDY: That-clauses. (Chart 14-5)

Directions: Add the word THAT to the following sentences at the appropriate places to mark the beginning of a noun clause.

THAT

1. I believe ^we need to protect endangered species of animals.

2. Last night I dreamed I was at my aunt's house.

3. I think most people have kind hearts.

4. I know Matt walks a long distance to school every day. I assume he doesn't have a bicycle.

5. I heard Sara dropped out of school.

6. Did you notice Ji Ming wasn't in class yesterday? I hope he's okay.

*"X" simply indicates that the questioner should supply her/his own ideas.
7. I trust Linda. I believe what she said. I believe she told the truth.

8. A: Can Julia prove her watch was stolen?
   B: I suppose she can't, but she suspects her roommate's friend took it.

9. A: Did you know leopards sometimes keep their dead prey in trees?
   B: Really?
   A: Yes. I understand they save their food for later if they're not hungry.

10. A: Do you believe a monster really exists in Loch Ness in Scotland?
    B: I don't know. Look at this story in the newspaper. It says some scientists have proved the
    Loch Ness Monster exists.
    A: You shouldn't always believe what you read in the newspapers. I think the monster is
    purely fictional.

◊ PRACTICE 16—SELFSTUDY: That-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-7)

Directions: Add the word THAT to the following sentences at the appropriate places to mark the
beginning of a noun clause.

that
1. I'm sorry you won't be here for Joe's party.
2. I'm glad it's warm today.
3. I'm surprised you bought a car.
4. Are you certain Mr. McVay won't be here tomorrow?
5. John is pleased Claudio will be here for the meeting.
6. Carmella was convinced I was angry with her, but I wasn't.
7. Jason was angry his father wouldn't let him use the family car.
8. Andy was fortunate you could help him with his algebra. He was delighted he got a good grade
   on the exam.
9. It's a fact the Nile River flows north.

10. It's true some dinosaurs could fly.

11. Are you aware dinosaurs lived on earth for one hundred and twenty-five million (125,000,000) years?

12. Is it true human beings have lived on earth for only four million (4,000,000) years?

◊ PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-7)

Directions: Add the word THAT to the following sentences at the appropriate places to mark the beginning of a noun clause.

1. A: Are you sure, you'll be in class tomorrow?
   B: Yes. I'm certain, I'll be in class tomorrow. It's a test day.

2. A: Guido is delighted you can speak Italian.
   B: I'm surprised he can understand my Italian. It's not very good.

3. A: How do you know it's going to be nice tomorrow?
   B: I heard the weather report.
   A: So? The weather report is often wrong, you know. I'm still worried it'll rain on our picnic.

4. A: Are you afraid another diasaster like the one at Chernobyl might occur?
   B: Yes. I'm convinced it can happen again.

5. A: Are you aware you have to pass the English test to get into the university?
   B: Yes, but I'm not worried about it. I'm positive I'll do well on it.

6. A: Mrs. Lane hopes we can come with her to the museum tomorrow.
   B: I don't think I can go with you. I'm supposed to babysit my little brother tomorrow.
   A: Oh, too bad. I wish you could come.

7. A: Is it a fact blue whales are the largest creatures on earth?
   B: Yes. In fact, I believe they are the largest creatures that have ever lived on earth.
8. A: Do you think technology benefits humankind?

B: Of course. Everyone knows modern inventions make our lives better.

A: I'm not sure that's true. For example, cars and buses provide faster transportation, but they pollute our air. Air pollution can cause lung disease and other illnesses.

PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: That-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-7)

Directions: Read each dialogue. Then use the expressions in parentheses to explain what the people are talking about.

DIALOGUE 1. ALICIA: I really like my English teacher.
BONNIE: Great! That’s wonderful. It’s important to have a good English teacher.
(think that, be delighted that)
→ Alicia thinks that her English teacher is very good.
Bonnie is delighted that Alicia likes her English teacher.
Alicia is delighted that she has a good English teacher.
Bonnie thinks that it’s important to have a good English teacher.

DIALOGUE 2. MR. GREEN: Why didn’t you return my call?
MS. WHITE: I truly apologize. I just got too busy and it slipped my mind.
(be upset that, be sorry that,)
→ Mr. Green is upset that Ms. White didn’t return his call.
Ms. White is upset that she forgot to call Mr. Green.
Ms. White is sorry that she didn’t call Mr. Green.

DIALOGUE 3. MRS. DAY: How do you feel, honey? You might have the flu.
BOBBY: I’m okay, Mom. Honest. I don’t have the flu.
(be worried that, be sure that)

DIALOGUE 4. KIM: Did you really fail your chemistry course? How is that possible?
TINA: I didn’t study hard enough. I was too busy having fun with my friends. I feel terrible about it.
(be surprised that, be disappointed that)
**DIALOGUE 5.** KAY: Oh no! My dog is lost! My poor little dog!
SARA: Call your neighbor. Your dog is probably visiting your neighbor's dog.

*(be afraid that, think that)*

**DIALOGUE 6.** DAVID: Mike! Hello! It's nice to see you.
MIKE: It's nice to be here. Thank you for inviting me.

*(be glad/happy/pleased that)*

**DIALOGUE 7.** FRED: Susan has left. Look. Her closet is empty. Her suitcases are gone. She won't be back. I just know it!
ERICA: She'll be back.

*(be afraid that, be upset that, be sure that)*

**DIALOGUE 8.** JOHN: I heard you were in jail. I couldn't believe it!
ED: Neither could I! I was arrested for robbing a house on my block. Can you believe that? It was a case of mistaken identity. I didn't have to stay in jail long.

*(be shocked that, be relieved that)*

** prática 19—Guided Study: That-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-7)**

**Directions:** What are your views on the following topics? Introduce your opinion with an expression in the given list, then state your opinion in a THAT-CLAUSE.

- am certain that
- believe that
- hope that
- am convinced that
- can prove that
- predict that
- am sure that
- have concluded that
- think that

**Example:**

**guns**

→ I believe that ordinary people shouldn't have guns in their homes.
I think anyone should be able to have any kind of gun.
I have concluded that countries in which it is easy to get a gun have a higher rate of murder than other countries do.

1. smoking (cigarettes, cigars, pipes)
2. a controversy at your school (perhaps something that has been on the front pages of a student newspaper)
3. a recent political event in the world (something that has been on the front pages of the newspapers)
4. the exploration of outer space
5. the older generation vs. the younger generation
6. strong laws to protect the environment and endangered species
7. freedom of the press vs. government controlled news
8. solutions to world hunger

**Prática 20—Selfstudy: Substituting so for a that-clause. (Chart 14-6)**

**Directions:** Give the meaning of so by writing a THAT-clause.

1. A: Does Alice have a car?
   B: I don't think so. (= I don't think . . . Alice has a car.)
2. A: Did Alex pass his French course?
   B: I think so. (= I think ______________________).

3. A: Is Mr. Kozari going to be at the meeting?
   B: I hope so. (= I hope ______________________).

4. A: Can cats swim?
   B: I think so. (= I think ______________________).

5. A: Do gorillas have tails?
   B: I don’t think so. (= I don’t think ______________________).

6. A: Will Janet be at Omar’s wedding?
   B: I suppose so. (= I suppose ______________________).

◊ PRACTICE 21—GUIDED STUDY: Substituting so for a that-clause. (Chart 14-6)

Directions: Working with another student, complete the dialogues with your own words.

STUDENT A: Complete the question.
STUDENT B: Complete the response using THINK, BELIEVE, HOPE, or SUPPOSE.

1. A: Does Maria have ______________________ any brothers or sisters ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ don’t think so.

2. A: Do you know if ______________________ Mr. Miranda will be in class ______________________ tomorrow?
   B: I ______________________ hope so.

3. A: Is Singapore farther north than ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ so.

4. A: Will peace be a reality soon in ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ so.

5. A: Can most adults ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ so.

6. A: Do you have ______________________ in your ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ so.

7. A: Is ______________________ soon?
   B: I ______________________ so.

8. A: Will our teacher ______________________?
   B: I ______________________ so.

9. A: Is ______________________ a holiday in India?
   B: I ______________________ so.

10. A: Was ______________________?
    B: I ______________________ so.

Noun Clauses ◊ 313
PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: All of the following present quoted speech. Punctuate as necessary by adding
QUOTATION MARKS ("...")*, COMMAS (,), PERIODS (.),** and QUESTION MARKS (?). Also use
capital letters as necessary.

Example: My roommate said the door is open could you close it
→ My roommate said, "The door is open. Could you close it?"

1. Alex said do you smell smoke
2. He said something is burning
3. He said do you smell smoke something is burning
4. Rachel said the game starts at seven
5. She said the game starts at seven we should leave here at six
6. She said the game starts at seven we should leave here at six can you
be ready to leave then

* Quotation marks are called inverted commas in British English.
** A period is called a full stop in British English.
### PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a) “Cats are fun to watch,” Jane said.</th>
<th>In (a): Notice that a comma (not a period) is used at the end of the quoted sentence when Jane said comes after the quote.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) “Do you own a cat?” Mike said.</td>
<td>In (b): Notice that a question mark (not a comma) is used at the end of the quoted question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Directions: Notice the punctuation in examples (a) and (b) above. All of the following present quoted speech. Punctuate as necessary by adding QUOTATION MARKS (" "). COMMAS (,), PERIODS (.), and QUESTION MARKS (?). Also use CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary.

Example: The door is open my roommate said.

→ “The door is open,” my roommate said.

Example: The door is open could you close it my roommate said

→ “The door is open. Could you close it?” my roommate said.

1. Do you smell smoke Alex said
2. Something is burning he said
3. Do you smell smoke something is burning he said
4. The game starts at seven Rachel said
5. The game starts at seven we should leave here at six she said
6. Can you be ready to leave at six she asked
7. The game starts at seven we should leave here at six can you be ready to leave then she said
8. The game starts at seven she said we should leave here at six can you be ready to leave then

### PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: All of the following present quoted speech. Punctuate by adding QUOTATION MARKS (" "), COMMAS (,), PERIODS (.), and QUESTION MARKS (?) wherever needed. Also use CAPITAL LETTERS as necessary.

Example: Jack said please wait for me

→ Jack said, “Please wait for me.”

1. Mrs. Hill said my children used to take the bus to school
2. She said we moved closer to the school
3. Now my children can walk to school Mrs. Hill said
4. Do you live near the school she asked
5. Yes, we live two blocks away I replied
6. How long have you lived here Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
7. I said we've lived here for five years how long have you lived here
8. We've lived here for two years Mrs. Hill said how do you like living here
9. It's a nice community I said it's a good place to raise children

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: Following are two passages which use quoted speech. Punctuate as necessary by adding QUOTATION MARKS ( " . . " ), COMMAS ( , ), PERIODS ( . ), QUESTION MARKS ( ? ), and EXCLAMATION MARKS ( ! ). Notice that a new paragraph begins each time the speaker changes.

CONVERSATION 1:

"Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.
I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird I said. He wasn't feeling well.
What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird Mr. Garcia demanded to know.
I replied yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable.
Now I've heard every excuse in the world Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.
CONVERSATION 2:

Both of your parents are deaf, aren't they I asked Robert.

Yes, they are he replied.

I'm looking for someone who knows sign language I said. Do you know sign language I asked.

Of course I do. I've been using sign language with my parents since I was a baby he said. It's a beautiful and expressive language. I often prefer it to spoken language.

Well, a deaf student is going to visit our class next Monday. Could you interpret for her I asked.

That's great he answered immediately and enthusiastically. I'd be delighted to.

I'm looking forward to meeting her. Can you tell me why she is coming?

She's interested in seeing what we do in our English classes I said.

PRACTICE 5—GUIDED STUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: Following are two passages that use quoted speech. Punctuate by adding QUOTATION MARKS ("...") and COMMAS (,) as necessary. Notice that a new paragraph begins each time the speaker changes.

One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"

Yes, I have I replied.

Was it a big earthquake she asked.

I've been in several earthquakes, and they've all been small ones I answered. Have you ever been in an earthquake?

There was an earthquake in my village five years ago Laura said. I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over.

I'm glad you and your brother weren't hurt I said.

Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives Laura wondered. Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?

Those are interesting questions I said but I don't know the answers.
PRACTICE 6—GUIDED STUDY: Quoted speech. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: Rewrite the following. Punctuate as necessary by adding QUOTATION MARKS ("...") and COMMAS (,). Begin a new paragraph each time the speaker changes.

How did you do on the test my friend asked me. I replied I don't know yet. I won't know until tomorrow. He said I know that it's an important test. Are you worried about your score? No, not really I answered. I feel good about it. I think I did well on the test. That's great! he said. I like people who have self-confidence.

PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY: Reported speech: pronoun usage. (Charts 15-2 and 15-3)

Directions: Change the pronouns from quoted speech to REPORTED SPEECH.

1. QUOTED: Mr. Smith said, "I need help with my luggage."
   REPORTED: Mr. Smith said (that) _______ needed help with _______ luggage.

2. My roommate said to me, "You should call your brother."
   → My roommate said (that) _______ should call _______ brother.

3. Sarah said, "I like sugar in my coffee."
   → Sarah said (that) _______ liked sugar in _______ coffee.

4. Joe said to me, "I will call you."
   → Joe said (that) _______ would call _______.

5. My aunt said to me, "I want your new telephone number."
   → My aunt said (that) _______ wanted _______ new telephone number.

6. Sue and Tom said, "We don't like our new apartment."
   → Sue and Tom said (that) _______ didn't like _______ new apartment.

7. Sam said to me, "I've lost my book."
   → Sam said (that) _______ had lost _______ book.

8. Paul said to me, "I want you to help me with my homework."
   → Paul said (that) _______ wanted _______ to help _______ with _______ homework.

PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY: Reported speech: sequence of tenses. (Charts 15-2 and 15-3)

Directions: Complete the reported speech sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. QUOTED: Sara said, "I need some help."
   REPORTED: Sara said (that) she _______ needed _______ some help.
2. Tom said, “I’m meeting David for dinner.”
   → Tom said (that) he _______ **was meeting** _______ David for dinner.

3. Ms. Davis said, “I have studied in Cairo.”
   → Ms. Davis said (that) she _________________ in Cairo.

4. Bill said, “I forgot to pay my electric bill.”
   → Bill said (that) he ___________________________ to pay his electric bill.

5. Barbara said, “I am exhausted.”
   → Barbara said (that) she ______________________ exhausted.

6. I said, “I’ll carry the box up the stairs.”
   → I said (that) I _________________________ the box up the stairs.

7. Jerry said to me, “I can teach you to drive.”
   → Jerry said (that) he ___________________________ me to drive.

8. My sister said, “I have to attend a conference in London.”
   → My sister said (that) she __________________________ a conference in London.

9. George said, “I should leave on Friday.”
   → George said (that) he _________________________ on Friday.

10. Ed said, “I want a CD player.”
    → Ed said (that) he _________________________ a CD player.

◊ **PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY: Reported speech: pronoun usage and sequence of tenses. (Charts 15-2 and 15-3)**

**Directions:** Complete the reported speech sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. **QUOTED:** David said to me, “I’m going to call you on Friday.”
   **REPORTED:** David said (that) **he was going** _______ **to call me** _______ on Friday.

2. John said to Ann, “I have to talk to you.”
   → John told Ann __________________________
       ___________________________ to ________.

3. Diane said to me, “I can meet you after work.”
   → Diane said __________________________
       ___________________________ after work.
4. Maria said to Bob, “I wrote you a note.”
   → Maria told Bob ______________________________
       ______________________________ a note.
5. I said to David, “I need your help to prepare for the exam.”
   → I told David ______________________________
       ___________________________ help to prepare for the exam.
6. David said, “You should study with me.”
   → David said ______________________________
       ___________________________ with ________.
7. Julie asked Mike, “When will I see you again?”
   → Julie asked Mike when ______________________________
       ____________________________ again.
8. Hillary said to Bill, “What are you doing?”
   → Hillary asked Bill ______________________________
       __________________________.
9. Mr. Fox said to me, “I’m going to meet Jack and you at the restaurant.”
   → Mr. Fox said ______________________________
       __________________________ Jack and ________ at the restaurant.
10. A strange man looked at me and said, “I’m sure I’ve met you before.”
    → A strange man looked at me and said ______________________________
       __________________________ before.
       I was sure I’d never seen this person before in my whole life.

◊ PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: Say vs. tell. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with SAID or TOLD.
1. Ann ______________________ me that she was hungry.
2. Ann ______________________ that she was hungry.
3. Jack ______________________ that I had a message.
4. Jack ______________________ me that I had a message.
5. My neighbor and I had a disagreement. I ______________________ my neighbor that he was wrong.
6. My neighbor ______________________ me that I was wrong.
7. Fumiko the teacher that Fatima wasn’t going to be in class.
8. Ellen she enjoyed the movie last night.
9. When the storm began, I the children to come into the house.
10. When I talked to Mr. Grant, he he would be at the meeting.

◊ PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: Reporting questions. (Chart 15-5)

Directions: Change the quoted questions to REPORTED QUESTIONS. Use formal sequence of tenses.

1. QUOTED: Eric said to me, “How old are you?”
   REPORTED: Eric asked me how old I was.
2. Ms. Rush said to Mr. Long, “Are you going to be at the meeting?”
   → Ms. Rush asked Mr. Long if he was going to be at the meeting.
3. My mother said to me, “Can you hear the radio?”
   → My mother asked me the radio.
4. I said to Abdullah, “Have you ever seen a panda?”
   → I asked Abdullah a panda.
5. Mr. Lee said to his daughter, “Are you passing your biology class?”
   → Mr. Lee asked his daughter biology class.
6. Larry said to Ms. Ho, “Do you have time to help me?”
   → Larry asked Ms. Ho time to help him.
7. Janet said to Bill, “When will you get back from your holiday?”
   → Janet asked Bill holiday.
8. Don said to Robert, “Did you change your mind about going to Reed College?”
   → Don asked Robert mind about going to Reed College.

◊ PRACTICE 12—GUIDED STUDY: Reporting questions. (Chart 15-5)

Directions: Change the quoted questions to REPORTED QUESTIONS. Use ASKED (SOMEONE) to report the question. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. Igor said to me, “How long have you been a teacher?”
   → Igor asked me how long I had been a teacher.
2. Kathy said to Mr. May, "Will you be in your office around three?"
   → Kathy asked Mr. May if he would be in his office around three.

3. My brother said to me, "When do you plan to go to Bangkok?"

4. The teacher said to Maria, "Why are you laughing?"

5. My uncle said to me, "Have you ever considered a career in business?"

6. My boss said to me, "Did you bring the report with you?"

7. I said to Tina, "Can you speak Swahili?"

8. Bill said to Ann, "Are you tired?"

◊ PRACTICE 13—GUIDED STUDY: Reported vs. quoted speech. (Charts 15-2 → 15-5)

Directions: Change the reported speech to QUOTED SPEECH. Begin a new paragraph each time the speaker changes. Pay special attention to PRONOUNS, VERB FORMS, and WORD ORDER.

Example:

This morning my mother asked me if I had gotten enough sleep last night. I told her that I was fine. I explained that I didn't need a lot of sleep. She told me that I needed to take better care of myself.

Written: This morning my mother said, "Did you get enough sleep last night?"
   "I'm fine," I replied. "I don't need a lot of sleep."
   She said, "You need to take better care of yourself."

1. In the middle of class yesterday, my friend tapped me on the shoulder and asked me what time it was. I told her it was two-thirty.

2. I met Mr. Redford at the reception for international students. He asked me where I was from. I told him I was from Argentina.

3. When I was putting on my hat and coat, Robert asked me where I was going. I told him that I had a date with Anna. He wanted to know what we were going to do. I told him that we were going to a movie.

◊ PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Reported speech. (Charts 15-1 → 15-5)

Directions: Change the quoted speech to REPORTED SPEECH. Use formal sequence of tenses. In addition to using SAID, use verbs such as TOLD, ASKED, WONDERED, WANTED TO KNOW, ANSWERED, REPLIED.

Example:

QUOTED: "Where's Bill?" Susan asked me.
   "He's in the lunch room," I replied.
   "When will he be back in his office?" she wanted to know.
   I said, "He'll be back around two."

REPORTED: Susan asked me where Bill was. I replied (that) he was in the lunch room. She wanted to know when he would be back in his office. I said (that) he would be back around two.

1. "What are you doing?" Mr. Singh asked me.
   "I'm doing a grammar exercise," I told him.
2. "Where's my cane?" Grandfather asked me.
   "I don't know," I told him. "Do you need it?" I asked.
   "I want to walk to the mailbox," he said.
   I told him, "I'll find it for you."

3. "Can you help me clean the hall closet?" my wife asked me.
   "I'm really busy," I told her.
   "What are you doing?" she wanted to know.
   "I'm fixing the zipper on my winter jacket," I said.
   Then she asked me, "Will you have some time to help me after you fix the zipper?"
   I said, "I can't because I have to change a light bulb in the kitchen."
   With a note of exasperation in her voice, she finally said, "I'll clean the closet myself."
Directions: Change the quoted speech to reported speech by using a reporting verb from the given list and an infinitive. Use each verb from the list only one time.

- advise
- ask
- invite
- remind
- encourage
- order
- warn
- permit

1. My son said, "Could you help me with my homework after dinner?"
   
   → My son asked me to help him with his homework after dinner.

2. Jennifer said to Kate, "Would you like to have dinner with me?"
   
   → Jennifer invited Kate to dinner with her.

3. Mr. Crane said to his daughter, "You should take music lessons. You already sing very well. You would enjoy studying music. Wouldn’t like you to learn how to play the piano?"
   
   → Mr. Crane encouraged his daughter to take music lessons.

4. Nicole said to Heidi, "You should call Julie and apologize. At least, that’s what I think."
   
   → Nicole advised Heidi to call Julie and apologize.

5. Professor Wilson said to Bill, "Yes, you may use my name as a reference on your job application."
   
   → Professor Wilson advised Bill to use her name as a reference.

6. Robert said to his dog, "Sit."
   
   → Robert ordered his dog to sit.

7. Kate said, "Don’t forget to order some more large envelopes."
   
   → Kate reminded her secretary to order some more large envelopes.

8. Mrs. Silverman said to her son, "Don’t go near the water! I’m warning you! It’s dangerous!"
   
   → Mrs. Silverman warned her son not to go near the water.
PRACTICE 16—GUIDED STUDY: Verb + infinitive to report speech. (Chart 15-6)

Directions: Change the quoted speech to reported speech by using a REPORTING VERB from the given list and completing the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advise</th>
<th>order</th>
<th>remind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>permit</td>
<td>warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I said to my daughter, “You should quit your job if you are unhappy.”
   → I __________ my daughter to quit her job if she was unhappy

2. The rebel commander said to his army, “Retreat!”
   → The rebel commander __________

3. My aunt and uncle said to my husband and me, “Why don’t you spend a week with us in August?”
   → My aunt and uncle __________

4. Mr. Gordon said to his teenaged son, “Don’t forget to make your bed.”
   → Mr. Gordon __________

5. The tour guide said to us, “Watch out for pickpockets in the marketplace.”
   → The tour guide __________

6. The teacher said to the students, “You may not leave the room in the middle of the examination.”
   → The teacher didn’t __________

PRACTICE 17—GUIDED STUDY: Verb + infinitive to report speech. (Chart 15-6)

Directions: Change the reported speech to QUOTED SPEECH. There is more than one possible completion. Use quotation marks and other punctuation as necessary.

1. Alex warned his friend not to drive faster than the speed limit.
   → Alex said to his friend . . . .
   Alex said to his friend, “Don’t drive faster than the speed limit.”
   Alex said to his friend, “You’d better not drive faster than the speed limit.”

2. Paul had tickets to a soccer game. He invited Erica to go with him.
   → Paul said to Erica . . . .
   Paul said to Erica, “Would you like to go to a soccer game with me?”
   Paul said to Erica, “Can you go to a soccer game with me?”

3. Dr. Aqua advised his patient to drink eight glasses of water a day.
   → Dr. Aqua said to his patient . . . .

4. Mr. Nottingham allowed the children to go to the two o’clock movie at the mall.
   → Mr. Nottingham said to the children . . . .

5. Richard’s school counselor encouraged him to enroll in a technical school.
   → Richard’s school counselor said to him . . . .
6. The swimming instructor warned her beginning class not to go into the deep end of the pool.
   → The swimming instructor said to her beginning class . . . .

7. Debbie's mother reminded her not to forget her music lesson after school.
   → Debbie's mother said . . . .

8. Sue asked her neighbor Ann to look after the baby for a little while.
   → Sue said to her neighbor . . . .

9. Bill told us to wait for him at the corner of 6th and Pine.
   → Bill said to us . . . .

10. The CEO* ordered his staff to give him their financial reports by five o'clock.
    → The CEO said to his staff . . . .

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Verb + infinitive to report speech. (Chart 15-6)

Directions: Use Student A's original ideas to report speech using a verb and infinitive.

STUDENT A: Speak to Student B, following the directions given in each item below.
STUDENT B: Report what Student A said to you using the italicized verb.

Example: advise Student B to do something


STUDENT B (Maria): Masako advised me to use an English–English dictionary instead of a Spanish–English dictionary.

1. ask Student B to do something
2. remind Student B to do something
3. warn Student B not to do something
4. invite Student B to do something
5. advise Student B to do (or not to do) something
6. allow Student B to do something
7. encourage Student B to do something
8. tell Student B to do (or not to do) something

◊ PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Reporting speech. (Chapter 15)

Directions: Use your imagination. Who are these people and what are they saying?

STUDENT A: Give names to the people in the cartoons. Write what you imagine the people are saying in the empty cartoon balloons.

STUDENT B: Read what Student A wrote in the cartoon balloons. Write a story about the people in the cartoons. Write about who said what to whom.

Example: For Story 1, STUDENT A could name the people Mrs. Lee and Mr. Lee, and then write in the balloons:

Mrs. Lee: Dinner's ready. Mr. Lee: Okay. I'll be there in a minute.
Mrs. Lee: It's getting cold. Mr. Lee: I have to hear the end of this news report.

*CEO = an abbreviation for Chief Executive Officer, meaning the head of a company or corporation.
Example of STUDENT B's written story, using **present tense reporting verbs**:

Mr. and Mrs. Lee are at home. It's evening, around dinner time. Mr. Lee is watching TV. Mrs. Lee walks in and says, "Dinner's ready." Mr. Lee tells her that he'll be there in a minute. Mrs. Lee warns him that the dinner is getting cold, but Mr. wants to hear the end of a news report before he has his dinner.

Example of STUDENT B's written story, using **past tense reporting verbs**:

Mr. and Mrs. Lee were at home yesterday evening around dinner time. Mr. Lee was watching TV when Mrs. came into the room and told him dinner was ready. He told her he would be there in a minute, but Mrs. Lee knew her husband meant more than a minute. She got a little impatient and warned him that their dinner was getting cold. Mr. Lee didn't get up from his chair. He told his wife that he had to hear the end of a news report he was watching.

STORY 1:
PRACTICE 20—SELFSTUDY: Using advise, suggest, and recommend. (Chart 15-7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I advised him ______ more time at the library.
   A. to spend       B. spending       C. should spend
2. I advised ______ more time at the library.
   A. to spend       B. spending       C. should spend
3. I suggested ______ to the zoo.
   A. to go          B. going           C. should go
4. I suggested that we ______ to the zoo.
   A. to go          B. going           C. should go
5. Bill recommended ______ to Luigi’s Restaurant.
   A. to go          B. going           C. should go
6. Bill recommended that we ______ to Luigi’s Restaurant.
   A. to go          B. going           C. should go
7. My mother advised me ______ in school.
   A. to stay        B. staying         C. should stay
8. My brother advised ______ in school, too.
   A. to stay        B. staying         C. should stay
9. My father suggested that I ______ for a job.
   A. to look        B. looking         C. should look
10. My uncle suggested ______ for a job, too.
    A. to look        B. looking         C. should look
11. My sister recommended that I ______ around the world for a year.
    A. to travel      B. traveling       C. should travel
12. My aunt recommended ______ around the world for a year, too.
    A. to travel      B. traveling       C. should travel

PRACTICE 21—GUIDED STUDY: Using advise, suggest, and recommend. (Chart 15-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences.

1. The teacher said to Pierre, “You should spend more time on your studies.”
   → The teacher advised Pierre ______ more time on his studies.
      to spend
2. Ms. Wah said to Anna, “You should go to Mills College.”
   → Ms. Wah suggested to Anna (that) ______ to Mills College.
   → My gardening book recommends ______ tomatoes in June.
4. When we were planning our vacation, my wife said, “How about Argentina? Let’s go there.”
   → My wife suggested ______ to Argentina on our vacation.
5. Nutrition experts say, "People should eat a lot of fresh fruit."

→ Nutrition experts recommend __________________________ a lot of fresh fruit.

6. My field of study is geology. My sister said, "You should change your major to biology."

→ My sister advised me __________________________ my major to biology.

7. My brother said, "I think you should change to chemistry."

→ My brother suggested __________________________ my major to chemistry.

8. My aunt said, "I think you ought to change your major to business."

→ My aunt recommended __________________________ my major to business.

◇ PRACTICE 22—GUIDED STUDY: Reporting speech. (Charts 15-1 → 15-7)

Directions: Report on the people in the pictures and what they say. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

Example:

At the Restaurant

Possible written report:

One day Susan and Paul were at a restaurant. Susan picked up her menu and looked at it. Paul left his menu on the table. Susan asked Paul what he was going to have. He said he wasn’t going to have anything (OR: was going to have nothing) because he wasn’t hungry. He’d already eaten. Susan was surprised. She asked him why he had come to the restaurant with her. He told her (that) he needed to talk to her about a problem he was having at work.
PRACTICE 23—GUIDED STUDY: Questions and noun clauses. (Chapters 6, 14, and 15)

Directions: Ask questions and write reports as directed below.

STUDENT A: (1) Make up five to ten questions to ask a classmate, friend, roommate, etc.
(2) Ask the questions and write a report of the information you received. Then give your report to STUDENT B. Don’t show STUDENT B your list of questions.

STUDENT B: (3) Read STUDENT A’s report. Try to figure out and write down the questions that STUDENT A asked.
(4) Then write a report on the interview using REPORTED SPEECH. Use a separate sentence to report each question. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

Example:
(1) STUDENT A’s list of questions:
1. Where do you live?
2. How long have you been here?
3. What is your favorite color?
4. Are you married?
5. What are you studying?
(2) STUDENT A's written report:
   My friend Po lives in Reed Hall. He's been here for eight months. His favorite color is sky blue. He's not married. He's studying chemical engineering.

(3) STUDENT B's list of probable questions:
   1. Where do you live?
   2. How long have you been at this school?
   3. What's your favorite color?
   4. Are you married?
   5. What subject are you studying?

(4) STUDENT B's report of the interview, using reported speech:
   (Student A) asked his friend Po where he lived. He asked him how long he had been here. He wanted to know what his favorite color was. He wanted to know if he was married. And finally, he asked him what he was studying.
PRACTICE 1—SELFSTUDY: Making wishes. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Directions: Circle the correct answer, then answer the questions.

Sara, David, and Heidi are twelve years old. They're lost in the woods because they left the main path. Sara didn't listen to her mother, who told her not to come to the woods. None of them has a flashlight. It's dark.

1. Is Sara safe at home?
   YES  NO
   What does she wish?
   → She wishes she were safe at home.

2. Did David come to the woods?
   YES  NO
   What does he wish?

3. Can Heidi remember how to get back to town?
   YES  NO
   What does she wish?

4. Did Sara listen to her mother?
   YES  NO
   What does she wish?

5. Does David have a flashlight?
   YES  NO
   What does he wish?

6. Did the three leave the main path?
   YES  NO
   What does Heidi wish?
PRACTICE 2—SELFSTUDY: Making wishes. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences.

1. In truth, I ______ don’t have ______ a dog, but I really like dogs.
   I wish I ______ had ______ a dog.
2. In truth, Linda ______ has ______ a cat, but it ruins her furniture.
   She wishes she ______ didn’t have ______ a cat.
3. In truth, Mr. Mills ______ doesn’t teach ______ my math class. He’s a good teacher.
   I wish Mr. Mills ______ ______ ______ ______ my math class.
4. In truth, it ______ snows ______ here in winter, and I don’t like snow.
   I wish it ______ ______ ______ ______ here in winter.
5. In truth, I ______ don’t understand ______ my friend Pierre.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ him.
6. In truth, I ______ can’t sing ______ very well, but I like to sing.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ well.
7. In truth, I ______ have ______ four roommates.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ four roommates.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ only one roommate.
8. In truth, I ______ have to study ______ tonight.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ tonight.
9. In truth, I ______ am not ______ at home with my family. I’d like to be with them.
   I wish I ______ ______ ______ ______ at home.
10. In truth, Tom ______ isn’t ______ here. I’d like to see him.
    I wish he ______ ______ ______ ______ here.

PRACTICE 3—SELFSTUDY: Using auxiliaries after wish. (Charts 6-1 and 16-1)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with auxiliary verbs.

1. A: Do you have a TV set?
   B: No, I ______ don’t ______, but I wish I ______ did ______.
2. A: Do you have a cold?
   B: Yes, I ____________, but I wish I ____________.
3. A: Is Bob here?
   B: No, he ____________, but I wish he ____________.
4. A: Does Rita speak Chinese?
   B: No, she ____________, but I wish she ____________.

5. A: Are you shy?
   B: Yes, I ____________, but I wish I ____________.

6. A: Can you stay home from work today?
   B: No, I ____________, but I wish I ____________.

◊ PRACTICE 4—SELFSTUDY: Making wishes about the past. (Chart 16-2)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences.

1. In truth, I ____________ didn’t have ____________ a dog when I was a child. I like dogs.
   I wish I ____________ had ____________ a dog.

2. In truth, Linda ____________ had ____________ a cat, but it ruined her furniture.
   She wishes she ____________ hadn’t ____________ a cat.

   I wish I ____________ had ____________ his problem.

4. In truth, I ____________ lost ____________ the keys to my apartment. I couldn’t get in.
   I wish I ____________ had ____________ them.

5. In truth, I ____________ wasn’t ____________ at the meeting yesterday.
   I wish I ____________ had ____________ at the meeting yesterday.

◊ PRACTICE 5—SELFSTUDY: Using auxiliaries after wish. (Charts 6-1, 16-1, and 16-2)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with auxiliary verbs.

1. A: Did you lose your keys?
   B: Yes, I ____________ did ____________, but I wish I ____________ hadn’t ____________.

2. A: Did you go to the party?
   B: No, I ____________ ____________, but I wish I ____________ ____________.

3. A: Did you go to the concert?
   B: Yes, I ____________ ____________, but I wish I ____________ ____________. It was boring.

4. A: Do you know Jennifer Hayakawa?
   B: No, I ____________ ____________, but I wish I ____________ ____________.

5. A: Are you busy today?
   B: Yes, I ____________ ____________, but I wish I ____________ ____________.
PRACTICE 6—GUIDED STUDY: Using wish. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Directions: What do the following people probably wish?

1. **Rosa**: I don’t have a bicycle. I can’t ride a bike to school. I have to walk. I didn’t buy a bicycle last year.
   → *Rosa wishes that she had a bicycle.*
   She wishes she could ride a bike to school.
   She wishes she . . . .

2. **Hiroki**: I can’t speak Spanish. I can’t understand Maria and Roberto when they speak Spanish. I didn’t study Spanish in high school.

3. **Dennis**: I didn’t go to the meeting last night. I didn’t know about it. My boss was really angry. Bob forgot to tell me about the meeting.

4. **Linda**: I have to clean up the kitchen this morning. My roommate didn’t wash the dishes last night. I can’t go to the beach. I’m not at the beach in the sun right now.

PRACTICE 7—SELFSTUDY: Using if: contrary-to-fact. (Charts 16-3 → 16-6)

Directions: Answer the questions and complete the sentences.

1. Does David have matches? **YES NO**
   Can they build a fire? **YES NO**
   But if David _______ had _______ matches, they _______ could build _______ a fire.

2. Is Sara at home? **YES NO**
   Is she afraid? **YES NO**
   But if Sara _______ at home, she _______ afraid.

3. Does Heidi have a flashlight? **YES NO**
   Can she lead them out of the woods? **YES NO**
   But if Heidi _______ a flashlight, she _______ them out of the woods.
4. Did Sara listen to her mother? **YES** **NO**
   Did she come to the woods? **YES** **NO**
   But if Sara _________________ to her mother, she _________________ to the woods.

5. Did David, Heidi, and Sara leave the main path? **YES** **NO**
   Did they get lost? **YES** **NO**
   But if David, Heidi, and Sara _________________ the main path, they _________________ lost.

◊ **PRACTICE 8—SELFSTUDY:** Using *if:* contrary-to-fact. (Chart 16-3)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences.

1. **In truth,** I ________ am not ________ from Italy. I ________ can’t speak ________ Italian.
   But *if* I ________ were ________ from Italy, I ________ could speak ________ Italian.

2. **In truth,** Al ________ has ________ enough money. He ________ won’t ask ________ for a loan.
   But *if* Al ________ didn’t have ________ enough money, he ________ would ask ________ for a loan.

3. **In truth,** Tom ________ doesn’t need ________ a new coat. He ________ won’t buy ________ one.
   But *if* Tom ________ a new coat, he ________ one.

4. **In truth,** Kate ________ is ________ tired. She ________ won’t finish ________ her work.
   But *if* Kate ________ tired, she ________ her work.

5. **In truth,** I ________ don’t have ________ a ticket. I ________ can’t go ________ to the concert.
   But *if* I ________ a ticket, I ________ to the concert.

6. **In truth,** I ________ am not ________ an artist. I ________ can’t paint ________ your picture.
   But *if* I ________ an artist, I ________ your picture.

7. **In truth,** John ________ doesn’t understand ________ the problem. He ________ can’t solve ________ it.
   But *if* John ________ the problem, he ________ it.

◊ **PRACTICE 9—GUIDED STUDY:** Using *if:* contrary-to-fact. (Chart 16-3)

Directions: Answer the questions.

**PART I:** If you were the following, what would (or could) you do?

1. hungry → *If* I were hungry, I’d eat a Big Mac.
2. tired
3. lost in a big city
4. (the name of someone)
5. fluent in five languages
6. the most powerful person in the world
PART II: If you had the following things, what would (or could) you do?
7. a horse → If I had a horse, I would ride it to school.
8. a boat
9. six apples
10. a gun
11. a car with a phone in it
12. my own private jet airplane

PART III: If you were in the following places, what would (or could) you do?
13. in India → If I were in India, I would visit the Taj Mahal.
14. on a beach
15. at home right now
16. (choose one) Paris, Damascus, Tokyo, Rio de Janeiro
17. on a spaceship in outer space
18. (name of a local place)

PRACTICE 10—SELFSTUDY: If: true vs. contrary-to-fact. (Charts 16-4 and 16-5)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. I may need a new bike this year.
   If I (need) ______ need ______ a new bike, I (buy) ______ will/can buy ______ one.

2. I don’t need a new bike this year.
   However, if I (need) ______ needed ______ a new bike, I (buy) ______ would/could buy ______ one.

3. I didn’t need a new bike last year.
   However, if I (need) ______ had needed ______ a new bike last year, I (buy) ______ would have/could have bought ______ one.

4. I may go to Japan next month.
   If I (go) ______ to Japan, I (see) ______ Yoko.

5. I won’t go to Japan next week.
   However, if I (go) ______ to Japan, I (see) ______ Yoko.

6. I didn’t go to Japan last month.
   However, if I (go) ______ to Japan last month, I (see) ______ Yoko.

7. I may have a pen right now.
   If I (have) ______ a pen, I (write) ______ a letter.

8. I don’t have a pen right now.
   However, if I (have) ______ a pen, I (write) ______ a letter.

9. I didn’t have a pen while I was waiting for my plane at the airport yesterday.
   However, if I (have) ______ a pen, I (write) ______ a letter.
PRACTICE 11—SELFSTUDY: If: contrary-to-fact in the past. (Chart 16-5)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. I didn't go to work this morning, so I didn't finish my report.
   → If I (go) ________________ to work this morning, I (finish) ________________ my report.

2. I didn't hear the doorbell, so I didn't answer the door.
   → I (answer) ________________ the door if I (hear) ________________ the doorbell.

3. You didn’t tell me about your problem, so I didn’t help you.
   → If you (tell) ________________ me about your problem, I (help) ________________ you.

4. Joe didn’t come with us to the Rocky Mountains, so he didn’t see the beautiful scenery.
   → Joe (see) ________________ some beautiful scenery if he (come) ________________ with us to the Rocky Mountains.

5. Barbara didn’t read the story before class, so she couldn’t talk about it during the class discussion.
   → If Barbara (read) ________________ the book before class, she (talk) ________________ about it during the class discussion.

6. We didn’t offer you a ride because we didn’t see you standing near the road.
   → If we (see) ________________ you standing near the road, we (offer) ________________ you a ride.

7. My brother had to get a job, so he didn’t complete his education.
   → If my brother (have to get, not) ________________ a job, he (complete) ________________ his education.

PRACTICE 12—SELFSTUDY: Contracting had and would. (Charts 16-1 → 16-6)

Directions: Change the contraction with apostrophe + d to the full word, HAD or WOULD.

had would
1. If you’d asked me, I’d have told you the truth.
2. I’d be careful if I were you.
3. If I’d known that you were sick, I’d have brought you some flowers.
4. If Jack were here, he’d help us.
5. If I’d told them, they’d have laughed at me.
**PRACTICE 13—SELFSTUDY: Review of verb forms with if. (Chapter 16)**

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. If I'd studied, I ______ the test yesterday.
   A. passed  
   B. had passed  
   C. would pass  
   D. would have passed

2. I'd go to the concert with you tomorrow if I ______ the time, but I'm going to be too busy.
   A. have  
   B. had  
   C. would have  
   D. would have had

3. If you let me know when your computer comes, I ______ you connect it.
   A. helped  
   B. help  
   C. will help  
   D. would help

4. If you'd listened to the radio last night, you ______ about the riot at the soccer game.
   A. heard  
   B. will hear  
   C. had heard  
   D. would have heard

5. I would have picked you up at the airport if you ______ your arrival time.
   A. had told  
   B. would tell  
   C. tell  
   D. did tell

6. I don't mind driving, but I don't know the way. I ______ if you read the map and give me directions.
   A. drive  
   B. drove  
   C. will drive  
   D. would have driven

7. The weather is too cold today. If it ______ so cold, we could go swimming.
   A. isn't  
   B. weren't  
   C. hadn't been  
   D. wouldn't have been

8. If you ______ my baby while I go to the store, I'll get your groceries for you. Okay?
   A. watch  
   B. watched  
   C. had watched  
   D. would have watched

9. I would have embarrassed my parents if I ______ during the wedding ceremony.
   A. laugh  
   B. will laugh  
   C. would laugh  
   D. had laughed

10. You shouldn't spend all day at your desk. If you took long walks every day, you ______ better.
   A. feel  
   B. will feel  
   C. felt  
   D. would feel

**PRACTICE 14—GUIDED STUDY: Using wish and if. (Chapter 16)**

Directions: Answer the questions in complete sentences.

*Example:*

a. What do you wish were different about your room?
   → *I wish my room were larger.*

b. What would/could you do if that were different?
   → *If my room were larger, I would put a sofa in it.*

1. a. What do you wish you had?
   b. What would/could you do if you had it/them?

2. a. Where do you wish you were?
   b. What would/could you do if you were there?

3. a. Who do you wish were here right now?
   b. What would/could you do if she/he/they were here?

4. a. What do you wish you had done yesterday/last week/last year?
   b. What would/could you have done if you had done that?

5. a. Where do you wish you had gone yesterday/last week/last year?
   b. What would/could you have done if you had gone there?

6. a. Who do you wish you had seen or talked to yesterday?
   b. What would/could you have done if you had seen or talked to her/him/them?
Directions: Read the story, and then complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Sara, David, and Heidi decided to stop walking aimlessly in the woods. They huddled together under a tree and fell asleep. In the morning, they stayed in the same place. Over and over again, they yelled as loudly as they could, “Help! Help! We’re lost! Help!”

A woman by the name of Mrs. Lark was in the woods. She was watching birds early in the morning while her husband was fishing in a nearby stream. She heard the children’s cries and found them. The Larks knew the way out of the woods. The children were saved. They happily followed the Larks back to town. At last, they reached the open arms of their very worried parents.

If Mrs. Lark (1. be, not) ___________ in the woods, she (2. find, not) ___________ the children. If the children (3. yell, not) ___________ or if they (4. walk) ___________ to a different part of the woods, Mrs. Lark (5. hear, not) ___________ them. If the children (6. yell, not) ___________ , they (7. found, not) ___________ by Mrs. Lark. If the Larks (8. know, not) ___________ the way out of the woods, the children (9. have to spend) ___________ another night there. The children are fortunate that Mrs. Lark likes to go birdwatching. All of the children wish they (10. go, not) ___________ into the woods alone.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Yesterday Sam (1. have) had an automobile accident. While he (2. drive) ___________ down the road, a squirrel (3. run) ___________ in front of his car. Sam (4. drive) ___________ off the road to miss the squirrel. His car (5. hit) ___________ a tree. The squirrel (6. run) ___________ up the tree, so it (7. kill, not) ___________ by Sam’s car.

Sam (8. have, not) ___________ an automobile accident yesterday if a squirrel (9. run, not) ___________ in front of his car. Sam (10. drive, not) ___________ off the road if there (11. be, not) ___________ a squirrel in the way. If he (12. drive, not) ___________ off the road, he (13. hit, not) ___________ a tree. If the squirrel (14. run, not) ___________ up the tree, it (15. kill) ___________ by Sam’s car. Both Sam and the squirrel are lucky to be alive.

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I don’t have a word processor. But if I (have) had my own word processor, it (take) ___________ would take me less time to write papers for school.
2. I'm not a carpenter, but if I \( \text{be} \) \( \text{build} \) my own house.

3. Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun. If you \( \text{be} \) on Pluto right now, the sun \( \text{look} \) like a bright star.

4. Watching a fish tank can be relaxing. Most people begin to relax if they \( \text{watch} \) fish swimming in a tank.

5. If you light a candle on earth, the flame \( \text{be} \) oval. If, however, you were in outer space and lit a candle, the flame \( \text{be} \) perfectly round.

6. Ten percent of the earth's surface is covered with ice. If the world's ice caps melted completely, the sea level \( \text{rise} \) enough to put half of the cities in the world completely under water.

7. A: The colors of the rainbow are not all mixed together. But if the colors in a rainbow \( \text{be} \) all mixed together, what color \( \text{the rainbow, be} \)?

   B: Purple?

   A: No. It \( \text{be} \) gray.

8. A: If you rub onion juice on your skin, insects \( \text{stay} \) away. It's true! Didn't you know that?

   B: Listen, if I rubbed onion juice on myself, my wife \( \text{stay} \) away from me forever! Are you trying to fool me?

9. Right now there is not a fire in this room, but think for a second. What \( \text{you, do} \) if there \( \text{be} \) a fire in this room? \( \text{you, run} \) out of the room? \( \text{you, call} \) the fire department? \( \text{you, use} \) a fire extinguisher?

10. Mike bought a used car. While he was cleaning under the seats this morning, he found a bag full of money. What should he do? What \( \text{you, do} \) if you \( \text{be} \) Mike?

11. A: What would you be able to do if you \( \text{have} \) three hands? Use your imagination.

   B: That's a strange question. Let me see. If I \( \text{have} \) three hands, I \( \text{carry} \) my tray at the cafeteria with two hands and \( \text{pick} \) up food with the other. Hmmm. That would be convenient.
12. A: I wonder how long it would take me to get to one million by adding one, plus one, plus one and so on using my calculator.

B: If you entered a thousand ones an hour, it _ (take) ____________ you a thousand hours to get to a million.

◊ PRACTICE 18—GUIDED STUDY: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 16)

Directions: Talk about wishes and "if's." Use the suggested topics or make up your own.

STUDENT A: Finish the sentence "I wish . . . ."
STUDENT B: Create a sentence with if. Imagine what would happen if STUDENT A's wish came true.

Example: dorm life
STUDENT A: I wish I had a pet bird in my dorm room.
STUDENT B: If you had a pet bird in your dorm room, you'd get in trouble with the dorm manager. It's against the rules to have pets in dorm rooms.

Example: peace
STUDENT A: I wish there were peace throughout the world.
STUDENT B: If there were peace throughout the world, everybody would be very happy.

Suggested topics to make wishes about:
1. this school
2. food
3. the world
4. a skill you'd like to have
5. language
6. sports
7. season of the year
8. money
9. friends
10. weather
11. the environment
12. etc.

◊ PRACTICE 19—GUIDED STUDY: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 16)

Directions: Discuss or write about the following topics.

1. If you could live in a different time period, which would you choose?
2. If you could ask (name of a world leader) one question, what would you say? Why? What do you think the answer would be?
3. If you had only two career choices—to be an artist or to be a scientist—which would you choose and why?
4. What would the earth be like today if there were no humans and never had been any?
Index

A
Alan, 149, 152–153, 161–169
A vs. an, 152
Ability, 84–86
Accustomed to, 240, 241
Active verbs, 221–234
Adjective clauses, 245–266, 283–284
Adjectives
   comparative and superlative, 271–275, 278
   to describe nouns, 65
   following get, 238–239
   nouns used as, 66
   participial (-ing/-ed), 236–238
   possessive (my, our), 73–74, 76fn.*
Adverb clauses:
   with because, 186–192
   with even though/although, 188–192
   if-clauses, 47–48, 336–344
   time clauses, 30, 46–48, 135
Adverbs:
   comparative and superlative, 271–275, 278
   frequency, 7–8, 17, 140–141
   midsentence, 140–143
Advice, giving, 89–90, 92–93, 329
Advise, suggest, recommend, 329
A few/a little, 152, 156
Affect/effect, 13fn.
Alike, 291–293
A lot of, 151
Already, 142
Although, 189–190
And, 175–181
   with so, too, neither, either, 182–186
Another, 77–80
Any vs. it, 171–172
Anymore, 142
Apostrophe, 72–73, 76fn.

Articles, 149, 152–153, 161–169
As . . . as comparisons, 268–171, 280, 286
   not as . . . as vs. less, 277
At as time preposition, 38
Auxiliary verbs:
   after and but, 182–186
   modal, 83–104
   in short responses to yes/no questions, 107–109, 111
   in tag questions, 125–126
   after wish, 334–335
(SEE ALSO Do, does, did; Have; and other individual items)

B
Be about to, 54
Be + adjective, 65
   followed by that-clause, 309–312
Because, 186–192
Be going to, 40–42
   vs. will, 45–46
Be + -ing (SEE Present progressive; Past progressive)
Be + past participle (be interested in), 235–238
   followed by noun clause, 309–312
(SEE ALSO Passive)
Be supposed to, 241–242
Better and best, 285
   had better, 89–90, 92–93
   like better, 98
Be used/accustomed to, 240–241
But, 178–179, 182–183
By:
   followed by -ing (by doing), 206–207
   with passive (by-phrase), 227
   vs. with, 208

*The abbreviation “fn.” means “footnote.” A footnote is found at the bottom of a chart or a page.
Footnotes contain additional information.

INDEX 345
C
Can:
ability, 84-86
polite questions, 88-89
Capitalization, 80
beginning of a sentence, 177-181, 187, 192
Clauses (see Adjective clauses, Adverb clauses,
If-clauses, Noun clauses, Time clauses)
Commas:
with adverb clauses, 186-187, 192
in connecting ideas with and, 176-181
in quoted speech, 314-318
vs. period, 177, 179-181, 186-187
Comparatives, 271-281, 285-289
with adjectives and adverbs, 271-275, 278
double (the more, the more), 286
modified by a lot/much/far, 277
with nouns, 279
repeated, 280-281
Comparisons, 285-289
as . . . as, 268-271, 280, 286
comparatives, 271-281, 285-289
same, similar, different, like, alike, 291-293
superlatives, 271-272, 282-289
Conditional sentences, 336-344
Conjunctions (and, but, so), 175-181
Contractions, had vs. would, 339
Could:
in conditional sentences, 336-344
past ability, 85, 87
in polite questions, 88-89
possibility, present/future, 87-88
Count/noncount nouns, 149-160

D
Different from, 291-293
Does, do, did:
in negative, 20
in questions and short answers, 3-4, 12, 20,
107-109, 114-115
Do so, 44fn.
Double comparatives, 281

E
-Ed:
past participle, as adjective, 236-238
pronunciation, 24-25
spelling, 26
Effect/affect, 13fn.
Either, 182-186
Enough, 212-213
-er/more and -est/most, 271-289
Even though, 188-192
Expressions of quantity, 149-152, 155-159

F
Farther/further, 275
A few, 152, 156
For (purpose), 211
For (someone) to do (something), with it,
210-211
For vs. since, 134-135
Frequency adverbs, 7-8, 17, 140-141
Future time, 40-59
be going to and will, 40-46
in if-clauses, 47-48
immediate (be about to), 54
using present tenses to express, 51-53
in time clauses, 46-48

G
Gerunds, 197-218
following by, 206-207
vs. infinitives, 199-202, 214-218
following prepositions, 204-207
as subjects, 209-210
verbs followed by, 197-201, 214-218
Get + adjective/past participle, 238-239
Get used to/acquainted to, 241
Go + -ing (go shopping), 198

H
Habitual past (used to), 33-34
Had:
contracted with pronouns, vs. would, 339
in past perfect, 143-146
Had better, 89-90, 92-93
Have, auxiliary in present perfect, 128-135,
145-146
Have got to, 90, 92-93
Have to, 90-93
do not have to, 91-92
Helping verbs (see Auxiliary verbs, Questions,
and individual items)
How, 118-120
how about, 124
how come, 32fn.
how far, 119-120
how long, 119-120
how many/much, 119, 155-157, 159
how often, 119-120

I
If-clauses:
contrary-to-fact, 336-344
expressing future time in, 47-48
If/whether in noun clauses, 305-306
Immediate future (be about to), 54
Imperative sentences, 95–96
In as time preposition, 38
Infinitives, 197–218
with it, 209–211
purpose (in order to), 211
to report speech, 324–326
with too and enough, 212–213
uncompleted, 203–204
verbs followed by, 200–201, 214–218
vs. gerunds, 199–202, 214–218
Information questions, 109–124, 296–305, 307–308
review of, 121–124, 127
-Ing:
gerund, 197–218
present participle as adjective, 236–238
spelling, 26
In order to, 211
Interested vs. interesting, 236–238
Intransitive verbs, 225
Irregular noun plurals, 61
Irregular verbs, 20–23, 130–133
It + infinitive, 209–211
It + take, 211
It vs. one/some/any, 171–172
Its vs. it’s, 76fn.

L
Last vs. yesterday, 19
Less . . .. than, 277
Let’s, 96–97
Like . . .. better, 98
Like, alike, 291–293
A little, 152, 156
Logical conclusions, 94–95
Lose vs. loose, 205 fn.
A lot of, 151

M
Many/much, 151, 155–157
May:
  polite questions, 88–89
  possibility, 86
Measure, units of (a cup of, a piece of), 158
Midsentence adverbs, 140–143
Might, 92–93
Modal auxiliaries, 83–104 (SEE ALSO individual
  items)
in passive, 232
review of, 99–104
in tag questions, 125–126
More/-er . . .. more/-er, 280–281
More/-er . . .. than, 271–281, 285–289
The most/-est, 271–272, 282–289

Must:
  logical conclusion, 94–95
  necessity, 90–93
Must not, 91, 94

N
Necessity, 90–93
Neither, 183–186
Noncount nouns, 149–160
  abstractions, 160
  units of measure with, 158
Nonprogressive vs. progressive verbs, 11
Nonseparable phrasal verbs, 192–195, 267
Not as . . .. as, 277
Noun clauses, 296–313, 318–323
  with if/whether, 305–306
  with question words, 296–305, 307–308
  reported speech, 318–322, 326–331
  with that, 308–313
  with who, what, whose + be, 301
after wish, 333–336
Nouns:
  modified by adjectives, 65
  used as adjectives, 66
  comparative, 279
  count/noncount, 149–160
  plural, 61–62, 66–67
  possessive, 70–71, 72fn.
  as subjects and objects, 63
  vs. verbs, 63–64

O
Object:
  of a preposition, 63
  of a verb, 63
Object pronouns:
  nonspecific (some, any, one), 170–172
  personal, 68–69, 75–76
On as time preposition, 38
One:
  as nonspecific object pronoun vs. it, 170
  with singular count nouns, 149
One of + plural noun, 284
Or, 178–179
Other, 77–80
Ought to, 89–90, 92–93

P
Parallel structure:
  with and, but, or, 175–181
  with verbs, 48–49
Participial adjectives (interested vs. interesting),
  236–238
Particles (see Phrasal verbs)
Passive, 221–235
use of by-phrase, 227
modal auxiliaries, 232
progressive tenses in, 230
stative, 235
Past habit:
used to, 33–34
used to vs. be used to, 210
Past participles, 222, 236–239
Past perfect, 143–146
after wish and in if-clauses, 333, 335, 338–344
Past progressive, 28–32, 34, 145–146
Past time, 19–38 (see also Tenses)
Periods, 177, 179–181, 186–187, 192, 314–318
Personal pronouns, 68–69, 75–76
Phrasal verbs, 192–195, 219–220, 266–267
Plural nouns, 61–62, 66–67 (see also Singular and plural)
Polite questions, using modals, 88–89
Possessive:
in adjective clauses (whose), 259–263
nouns, 70–71, 72fn.
pronouns and adjectives (mine and my), 73–76
Possibility, 86–88
Prefer, 98
Prepositional phrases, 63
Prepositions, 18, 39, 60, 81–82, 104, 127, 148, 173–174
followed by gerunds, 204–207
objects of, 63
placement in adjective clauses, 257–259
in stative passive (be married to), 235
of time (in, on, at), 38
Past participles, as adjectives (interesting), 236–238
Present participles, 235
Past perfect, 128–135, 145–146
Past perfect progressive, 136–138
Past progressive, 2–3, 5–6, 9–17, 29, 32
for future time, 51–53
Past perfect progressive, 136–138
Past progressive, 2–3, 5–6, 9–17, 29, 32
for future time, 51–53
Past present, 2–17 (see also Tenses)
Probably, 43–44
Progressive tenses, in passive, 230
Progressive vs. nonprogressive verbs, 11 (see also Tenses)
Prohibition, 91–92
Pronouns:
in adjective clauses (who, which), 245–266
agreement with everyone, 287fn.
nonspecific objects (some, any, one), 170–172
in reported speech, 318–319
personal (I, them), 68–69, 75–76
possessive (mine, theirs), 73–76
reflexive (myself, themselves), 74–75, 76fn.

Pronunciation:
-ed, 24, 25fn.
-s/-es, 62
Punctuation:
Four space, 72–73, 76fn.
commas, 176–181, 186–187, 192, 314–318
periods, 176–181, 186–187, 192, 314–318
question marks, 296–297, 314–318
Quotation marks, 35fn., 314–318
Purpose (in order to, for), 211

Q
Question forms:
present perfect (have you done?), 128
present progressive (are you doing?), 5
simple future (will you do?), 40–41
simple past (did you do?), 20, 40–41
simple present (do you do?), 4, 40–41
Question marks, 296–297, 314–318
Questions:
information, 109–124
vs. noun clauses, 296–297, 314–318
polite, 88–89
review of, 121–124, 127
short answers to, 12, 20, 107
contractions with pronouns, 43fn.
tag, 125–126
yes/no, 107–109, 111, 305–306
Quotation marks, 35fn., 314–318
Quoted speech, 314–318

R
Recommend, suggest, 329
Reflexive pronouns, 74–75, 76fn.
Repeated comparatives, 230–281
Reported speech, 318–326
Run-on sentences, 177–181

S
-S/-es:
with plural nouns, 62, 73, 150, 153–156
with possessive nouns, 70–71
pronunciation, 62
with simple present verbs, 4–5
spelling, 154
Same, similar, different, like, alike, 291–293
Say vs. tell, 320
Separable phrasal verbs, 192–195, 219–220
Sequence of tenses, noun clauses, 318–322, 326–328, 330–331
Short answers to questions, 12, 20, 107
INDEX 349

Should, 89–90, 92–93
Simple future, 40, 43–50, 59
Simple past, 19–27, 30–32, 34–38, 40–41, 50
vs. present perfect, 129–133
Simple present, 2–8, 11–12, 14–17, 27, 32, 40–41
for future time, 53
Simple sentence structure, 63
Since and for, 134–135
Singular and plural:
  nouns (-s/-es), 61–62, 66–67
  nouns used as adjectives, 66
  personal pronouns, 68–69
  possessive nouns, 70–71
  present tense verbs (-s/-es), 4–6
So, conjunction, 178–181, 187
So, substitute for that-clause (I think so), 312–313
So/too/Neither/either, 183–186
Some, 149–150, 153, 161, 164–166
  as object pronoun vs. it/Them, 171–172
Spelling:
  -ed, 26
  -ing, 26
  -s/es, 4–6
Statute passive, 235
Statute verbs (nonprogressive verbs), 11
Still, 142
Subject pronouns, personal, 68–69, 75–76
Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses, 256
Subjects, verbs, objects, prepositions, 63
Suggest, 329
Suggestions, 96–97, 329
Superlatives, 271–272, 282–289
Supposed to, 241–242

T
Tag questions, 125–126
Take, with it to express time, 311
Tell vs. say, 320
Tenses:
  past perfect (had done), 143–146
  past progressive (were doing), 28–32, 34, 145–146
  present perfect (have done), 128–135, 145–146
  present perfect progressive (have been doing),
    136–138
  present progressive (are doing), 2–3, 5–6, 9–17, 29,
    32
  future meaning, 51–53
review of, 34–37, 54–59, 136, 138–140, 147
simple future (will do), 40, 43–50, 59
simple past (did), 19–27, 30–32, 34–38, 40–41, 50,
  129–133
simple present (do), 2–8, 11–12, 14–17, 27, 32,
  40–41
  future meaning, 53
That:
  in adjective clauses, 249–257, 261–266
  in noun clauses, 308–313
The, 163–169
Themselves, 76fn.
Think so, 312–313
Time clauses:
  future, 46–48
  past, 30
  with since, 135
Time prepositions, 38
To + simple form (infinitive), 83, 111fn., 197–218
  (in order to), 211
To with modal auxiliaries, 83
Too + infinitive, 212–213
  and . . . too, 182–186
Too many/much, 151
Transitive verbs, 225
Two, 150
Two-word verbs (see Phrasal verbs)

U
Uncompleted infinitives, 203–204
Units of measure (a cup of, a piece of), 158
Used to (past habit), 33–34
  vs. be used to, 240–241

V
Verb form reviews:
  active vs. passive, 229–233
  chapters 1–11, 242
  conditional sentences, 340, 342
  gerunds vs. infinitives, 216–218
Verbs:
  parallel structure with, 48–49
  vs. subjects and objects, 63
  (see also Auxiliary verbs, Conditional sentences,
    Gerunds, Infinitives, Passive, Past participles,
    Phrasal verbs, Sequence of tenses, and other
    individual items)
Very vs. a lot/much/far, 277

W
Was, were, 28–32, 34, 145–146
What, 113
  what about, 124
  what + a form of do, 114–115
  what does . . . mean, 111
  what kind of, 116
When:
  in questions, 110
  in time clauses, 46
Whether, 305–306
Which:
in adjective clauses, 250–257, 261–266
in questions, 116
Who vs. whose, 117
Who/who(m):
in adjective clauses, 245–250, 252–257, 261–266
in noun clauses, 296–305
in questions, 113, 117
Whose:
in adjective clauses, 259–263
in noun clauses, 296–305
in questions, 117
Why, 112
Why don’t, 96–97
Will:
vs. be going to, 45–46
future, 40, 43–50, 59
in polite questions, 88–89
with probably, 43–44
Wish, 333–336, 340
With vs. by, 208
Worse and worst, 285
Would:
in conditional sentences, 336–344
contracted, vs. had, 339
in polite questions, 88–89
in reported speech, 318–331
Would rather, 98

Y
Yes/no questions, 107–109, 111, 305–306
(See also Question forms)
Yesterday vs. last, 19
Yet, 142
Chapter 1: PRESENT TIME

PRACTICE 1, p. 1.

A: Hi. My name ___ is Kunio.
B: Hi. My ___ name ___ is Maria. I 'm ___ glad to meet you.
KUNIO: I 'm ___ glad to ___ meet ___ you, too. Where ___ are you from ___ ?
MARIA: I 'm ___ from Mexico. Where ___ are you from ___ ?
KUNIO: I 'm ___ from Japan.
MARIA: Where ___ are you ___ living now?
KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in ___ an ___ apartment. And you?
MARIA: I 'm ___ living in a dorm.
KUNIO: What's ___ (What is) your field of study?
MARIA: Business. After I study English, I 'm ___ going to attend the School of Business Administration. How ___ about ___ you? ___ What's ___ your major?
KUNIO: Chemistry.
MARIA: What ___ do ___ you like to do in your free time? ___ Do you ___ have any hobbies?
KUNIO: I ___ like ___ to swim. How ___ about ___ you?
MARIA: I read a lot and I ___ collect ___ stamps from all over the world.
KUNIO: Really? ___ Would ___ you like some stamps from Japan?
MARIA: Sure! That would be great. Thanks.
KUNIO: I have ___ to ___ write your full name on the board when I introduce ___ you ___ to the class. ___ How ___ do ___ you spell your name?
MARIA: My first ___ name ___ is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last ___ name ___ is Lopez. L-O-P-E-Z.
MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. ___ Is ___ that right?
KUNIO: Yes, it ___ is ___ . It's been nice talking with you.
MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.
PRACTICE 4, p. 3.

1. am sitting
2. am reading
3. am looking
4. am writing
5. am doing
6. sit . . . am sitting
7. read . . . am reading
8. look . . . am looking
9. write . . . am writing
10. do . . . am doing

PRACTICE 5, p. 3.

Part I: Part II:
1. speak 1. do not (don’t) speak
2. speak 2. do not (don’t) speak
3. speaks 3. does not (doesn’t) speak
4. speak 4. do not (don’t) speak
5. speaks 5. does not (doesn’t) speak

Part III:
1. Do you speak
2. Do they speak
3. Does he speak
4. Do we speak
5. Does she speak

PRACTICE 6, p. 4.

1. like s
2. watch es
3. do es n’t . . . like l
4. climb l
5. Do l . . . like l
6. Do es . . . like l
7. like s
8. wash es
9. go es
10. make l
11. visit s
12. get s
13. get l
14. Do es . . . get l
15. do es n’t . . . get l
16. carr ies
17. play s
18. catch es
19. live l
20. liv es

PRACTICE 8, p. 5.

Part I: Part II:
1. am speaking 1. am not speaking
2. are speaking 2. are not (aren’t) speaking
3. is speaking 3. is not (isn’t) speaking
4. are speaking 4. are not (aren’t) speaking
5. doing . . . am doing
6. read . . . am doing
7. look . . . am doing
8. write . . . am doing
9. sit . . . am doing
10. do . . . am doing

PRACTICE 13, p. 9.

Expected answers:
1. He’s swimming.
   He’s doing the crawl.
2. He’s cutting her hair.
   He’s using scissors.
   She’s getting a haircut.
3. She’s sleeping.
   She’s dreaming.
   She’s having a pleasant dream.
4. He’s crying.
   He’s wiping his tears with his hand.
5. She’s kicking a ball.
   She’s playing soccer.
6. He’s hitting a golf ball.
   He’s playing golf.
   He’s golfing.
   He’s swinging a golf club.
7. She’s riding a motorcycle.
   She’s wearing a helmet.
8. They’re dancing.
   They’re smiling.
   They’re having a good time.
Chapter 2: PAST TIME

PRACTICE 1, p. 19.
1. walked ... yesterday
2. talked ... last
3. opened ... yesterday
4. went ... last
5. met ... last
6. Yesterday ... made ... took
7. paid ... last
8. Yesterday ... fell
9. left ... last

PRACTICE 2, p. 20.
1. started
2. went
3. saw
4. stood
5. arrived
6. won
7. had
8. made
9. finished
10. felt
11. fell
12. heard
13. sang
14. explored
15. asked
16. brought
17. broke
18. ate
19. watched
20. built
21. took
22. paid
23. left
24. wore

PRACTICE 3, p. 20.
1. A: Did you answer
   B: I did ... I answered
   OR I didn't ... I didn’t answer
2. A: Did he see
   B: he did ... He saw
   OR he didn't ... He didn't see
3. A: Did they watch
   B: they did ... They watched
   OR they didn't ... They didn't watch
4. A: Did you understand
   B: I did ... I understood
   OR I didn't ... I didn’t understand
5. A: Were you
   B: I was ... I was
   OR I wasn't ... I wasn’t

PRACTICE 4, p. 21.
1. shook
2. stayed
3. swam
4. jumped
5. held
6. fought
7. taught
8. froze
9. thought
10. called
11. rode
12. sold

Expected answers:
1. swept
2. flew
3. caught/held/took
4. taught
5. froze
6. felt
7. drew/got/made
8. heard
9. fell ... broke
10. won
11. drove/took
12. fought
13. hid/put
14. shut
15. ran
16. led
17. paid
18. drank/had
19. bought/chose
20. wore
21. gave/lent

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>END OF VERB</th>
<th>DOUBLE THE CONSONANT?</th>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Consonants</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>exist</td>
<td>existing</td>
<td>existed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Vowels + One Consonant</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>shout</td>
<td>shouting</td>
<td>shouted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Vowel + One Consonant</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>ONE-SYLLABLE VERBS</td>
<td>pat</td>
<td>patted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON FIRST SYLLABLE)</td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>visiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON SECOND SYLLABLE)</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td>admitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>pray</td>
<td>praying</td>
<td>prayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ie</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>tying</td>
<td>tie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. wai__t__ing ... wait
2. pa___tt__ing ... pat
3. bi__t__ing ... bite
4. si__tt__ing ... sit
5. wri___t__ing ... write
6. figh__t__ing ... fight
7. wai__t__ing ... wait
8. ge__tt__ing ... get
9. star__t__ing ... start
10. permi__tt__ing ... permit
11. lif__t__ing ... lift
12. ea__t__ing ... eat
13. tas__t__ing ... taste
14. cu__tt__ ... cut
15. mee__t__ing ... meet
16. visi__t__ing ... visit

PRACTICE 12, p. 27.

1. A: Did you hear
   B: didn’t ... didn’t hear ... was
2. A: Do you hear
   B: don’t ... don’t hear
3. A: Did you build
   B: didn’t ... built
4. A: Is a fish
   B: it is
   A: Are they
   B: they are
   B: don’t know
5. A: want ... look
   Do you want
   B: have ... bought
   B: don’t need
6. offer ... is ... offered
   didn’t accept
7. took ... found
   didn’t know
   isn’t ... didn’t want
   went ... made
   heated ... seemed
   am not
8. likes ... worry
   is ... trust
   graduated (also possible: was graduated)
   went ... didn’t travel
   ... rented
   ... rode
   was ... worried (also possible: were worried)
   were ... saw
   knew

PRACTICE 13, p. 28.

1. was standing
2. was eating
3. was answering
4. was singing
5. was walking
6. were climbing
7. was beginning
8. was counting
9. was melting
10. was looking ... was driving
PRACTICE 15, p. 30.
1. While I was climbing the stairs, the doorbell rang. OR The doorbell rang while I was climbing the stairs.
2. I gave Alan his pay after he finished his chores. OR After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his pay.
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time before they went home. OR Before the firefighters went home, they checked the ashes one last time.
4. When Mr. Novak stopped by our table at the restaurant, I introduced him to my wife. OR I introduced Mr. Novak to my wife when he stopped by our table at the restaurant.
5. While the kitten was sitting on the roof, an eagle flew over the house. OR An eagle flew over the house while the kitten was sitting on the roof.
6. My father was listening to a baseball game on the radio while he was watching a basketball game on television. OR While my father was watching a basketball game on television, he was listening to a baseball game on the radio.

PRACTICE 16, p. 30.
1. began (also possible: was beginning) . . . were walking
2. was washing . . . dropped . . . broke
3. hit . . . was using
4. was walking . . . fell . . . hit
5. knew . . . were attending . . . mentioned . . . were . . . staying (also possible: stayed)
6. was looking . . . started/was starting . . . took . . . was taking . . . (was) enjoying . . . came . . . asked . . . told . . . thanked . . . went . . . came . . . covered . . . went

PRACTICE 19, p. 33.
1. used to hate school
2. used to think
3. used to be a secretary
4. used to have a rat
5. used to go bowling
6. used to raise chickens
7. used to have fresh eggs
8. used to crawl under his bed . . . (used to) put his hands over his ears

PRACTICE 25, p. 38.
1. on
2. at . . . in
3. in . . . on . . . At . . . In
4. In . . . at . . . in
5. in . . . at
6. at
7. In . . . In . . . on . . . on
8. in (also possible: during)

PRACTICE 26, p. 39.
1. at . . . in
2. for . . . in
3. on . . . at . . . in . . . from . . . at/with . . . at
4. with . . . in (also possible: during)
5. on . . . of . . . on . . . in
6. of . . . in

Chapter 3: FUTURE TIME

PRACTICE 1, p. 40.
1. a. arrives
   b. arrived
   c. is going to arrive OR will arrive
2. a. Does . . . arrive
   b. Did . . . arrive
   c. Is . . . going to arrive OR Will . . . arrive
3. a. does not (doesn’t) arrive
   b. did not (didn’t) arrive
   c. is not (isn’t) going to arrive OR will not (won’t) arrive
4. a. eats
   b. ate
   c. is going to OR will eat
5. a. Do . . . eat
   b. Did . . . eat
   c. Are . . . going to eat OR Will . . . eat
6. a. do not (don’t) eat
   b. did not (didn’t) eat
   c. am not going to eat OR will not (won’t) eat

PRACTICE 2, p. 41.
1. B: Do . . . get
   A: do . . . get
   B: Did . . . get
   A: did . . . got
   B: Are . . . going to get
   A: am . . . am going to get
2. B: Do . . . study
   A: do . . . study
   B: Did . . . study
   A: did . . . studied
   B: are . . . going to study
   A: am . . . am going to study
PRACTICE 4, p. 41.
1. A: are you going to do  B: am going to finish
2. A: is Ryan going to be  B: is going to be
3. A: Are you going to have  B: am not going to eat
4. A: Are you going to finish  B: am going to finish
5. A: Are you going to call  B: am not going to call her... am going to write
6. A: is Laura going to talk  B: is going to discuss

PRACTICE 7, p. 43.
1. A: Will you help  B: I will  OR I won’t
2. A: Will Paul lend  B: he will  OR he won’t
3. A: Will Jane graduate  B: she will  OR she won’t
4. A: Will her parents be  B: they will  OR they won’t
5. A: Will I benefit  B: you will  OR you won’t

PRACTICE 8, p. 43.
1. probably won’t  5. will probably
2. will probably  6. probably won’t
3. will probably  7. will probably
4. probably won’t  8. will probably

PRACTICE 11, p. 45.
1. I am going to  5. am going to
2. will  6. will
3. am going to  7. am going to... will
4. will

PRACTICE 12, p. 46.
1. I am going to  6. am going to
2. will  7. A: are... going to
3. will  B: am going to
4. am going to  8. will
5. will

PRACTICE 13, p. 46.
1. When I call Mike tomorrow, I’ll tell him the good news.  OR
   I’ll tell Mike the good news when I call him tomorrow.
2. Ann will lock all the doors before she goes to bed.  OR
   Before Ann goes to bed, she’ll lock all the doors.  OR
   (Before she goes to bed, Ann will lock all the doors.)
3. When I am in London, I’m going to visit the Tate Museum.  OR
   I’m going to visit the Tate Museum when I am in London.
4. The show will start as soon as the curtain goes up.  OR
   As soon as the curtain goes up, the show will start.
5. Nick is going to change the oil in his car after he takes a bath.  OR
   After Nick takes a bath, he’s going to change the oil in his car.  OR
   (After he takes a bath, Nick is going to change the oil in his car.)
6. We’ll call you before we drive over to pick you up.  OR
   Before we drive over to pick you up, we’ll call you.
7. I’ll call you when I get an answer from the bank about the loan.  OR
   When I get an answer from the bank about the loan, I’ll call you.
8. I’ll pay my rent as soon as I get my paycheck.  OR
   As soon as I get my paycheck, I’ll pay my rent.
**PRACTICE 14, p. 47.**
1. will read . . . take
2. will call . . . returns
3. won’t be . . . come
4. go . . . will prepare
5. visits . . . will take
6. will move . . . graduates . . . finds

**PRACTICE 15, p. 47.**
1. is . . . won’t go
2. get . . . will pay
3. will be . . . don’t go
4. will stop . . . tells
5. gets . . . will eat
6. will move . . . graduates . . . finds

**PRACTICE 17, p. 48.**
1. was listening . . . (and) (was) doing
2. are going to meet . . . (and) (are going to) study
3. will rise . . . (and) (will) set
4. was carrying . . . (and) (was) climbing
   flew . . . (and) sat
   dropped . . . (and) spilled
5. is going to meet . . . (and) (is going to) go
6. moves . . . (and) starts
7. slipped . . . (and) fell
8. am getting . . . (and) (am) walking
9. arrived . . . (and) started
   was . . . (and) felt
   was watching . . . (and) (was) feeling
   knocked . . . (and) asked
   see . . . (and) usually spend
   are borrowing . . . (and) (are) going
   are going to take . . . (and) (are going to) go

**PRACTICE 18, p. 49.**
1. will retire . . . (will) travel OR
   are going to retire . . . (are going to) travel
2. close . . . think
3. is watching . . . (is) studying
4. takes . . . buys
5. go . . . tell
6. will take . . . (will) forget OR
   am going to take . . . (am going to) forget
7. will discover . . . (will) apologize OR
   is going to discover . . . (is going to) apologize
8. saw . . . ran . . . caught . . . knocked . . . went . . .
   sat . . . was waiting . . . got . . . understood . . . put . . . took

**PRACTICE 20, p. 51.**
1. is traveling (travelling)
2. are arriving
3. am meeting
4. am getting
5. is . . . taking
6. am studying
7. am leaving
8. is attending . . . am seeing
9. is speaking
10. am spending . . . am visiting

**PRACTICE 21, p. 52.**
Possible answers:
1. Fred is eating/having dinner with Emily on Sunday.
2. He is seeing Dr. Wood at 1:00 p.m. on Monday.
3. He is going to Jean’s birthday party at 7:00 p.m. on Tuesday.
4. He is probably eating lunch with Jack on Wednesday.
5. He is meeting Tom’s plane on Thursday at 2:00 p.m.
6. He is attending a financial seminar on Friday.
7. He is taking his children to the zoo on Saturday.

**PRACTICE 24, p. 53.**
1. A: does . . . begin/start
   B: begins/starts
2. opens
3. arrives/gets in/lands
4. B: begins/starts
   A: does . . . end/finish
   B: ends/finishes

**PRACTICE 25, p. 54.**
1. The chimpanzee is about to eat a banana.
2. Sam is about to leave.
3. The plane is about to land.
4. The woman is about to answer the phone.

**PRACTICE 26, p. 54.**
1. don’t need
2. is planning/plans . . . Are you coming/Are you going to come
3. A: do you usually get
   B: take
4. was watching . . . became . . . stopped . . . found
5. A: am going/am going to go
   B: are going/are going to go
6. will probably call/is probably going to call . . . go
7. A: is . . . are flashing
   B: know . . . know . . . see
   A: is going . . . Are you speeding
   B: am going
5. A: is passing
8. is going to land/will land . . . think
9. ride . . . was raining . . . drove . . . arrived . . . discovered
10. will give
11. are you wearing/are you going to wear . . . am planning/plan . . . bought . . . is . . . will show . . .
   will get . . . (will) bring
12. B: is wearing
   A: didn’t lend
   B: will be/is going to be

ANSWER KEY Chapter 3
PRACTICE 27, p. 56.
(1) made ... did not have ... were not ... wore
(2) make ... comes ... buy
(3) is ... wear ... wear
(4) exist ... wear ... are
(5) will probably be/are probably going to be ... will wear/are going to wear ... Will we all dress/ Are we all going to dress ... show ... do you think

PRACTICE 31, p. 60.
1. at
2. at
3. in
4. with
5. for
6. to ... with
7. for
8. from
9. about
10. for

PRACTICE 32, p. 60.
1. to
2. from ... for
3. to ... at
4. to
5. of
6. from ... for
7. in ... with
8. for ... with ... to

Chapter 4: NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

PRACTICE 1, p. 61.
1. Chicago has busy streets and highways.
2. Boxes have six sides.
3. Big cities have many problems.
4. Bananas grow in hot, humid areas.
5. Insects don't have noses.
6. Lambs are the offspring of sheep.
7. Libraries keep books on shelves.
8. Parents support their children.
9. Indonesia has several active volcanoes.
10. Baboons are big monkeys. They have large heads and sharp teeth. They eat leaves, roots, insects, and eggs.

PRACTICE 2, p. 61.
1. mouse
2. pockets
3. tooth
4. tomato
5. fish
6. woman
7. branches
8. friends
9. duties
10. highways
11. thief
12. beliefs
13. potatoes
14. radios
15. offspring
16. child
17. customs
18. leaf

PRACTICE 5, p. 63.
1. [Bridges S] [cross V] [rivers O].
2. [A terrible earthquake S] [occurred V] [in Turkey PP].
3. [Airplanes S] [fly V] [above the clouds PP].
4. [Trucks S] [carry V] [large loads O].
5. [Rivers S] [flow V] [toward the sea PP].
6. [Salespeople S] [treat V] [customers O] [with courtesy PP].
7. [Bacteria S] [can cause V] [diseases O].
8. [Clouds S] [are floating V] [across the sky PP].
9. [The audience S] [applaud V] [the performers O] [at the end PP] [of the show PP].
10. [Helmets S] [protect V] [bicyclists O] [from serious injuries PP].
PRACTICE 6, p. 63.

1. v. 9. n. 16. n.
2. n. 10. v. 17. n.
3. n. 11. v. 18. v.
5. v. 13. v. 20. n.
7. n. 15. v. 22. v.
8. v.

PRACTICE 8, p. 64.

Expected answers:

1. old 9. hard/difficult 17. expensive
2. old 10. narrow 18. light
3. hot 11. dirty 19. light
4. slow 12. full 20. private
5. happy 13. safe 21. right
6. bad 14. quiet 22. right
7. dry 15. deep 23. strong
8. hard 16. sour 24. short

PRACTICE 9, p. 65.

1. Paul has a [loud] voice.
2. Sugar is [sweet].
3. The students took an [easy] test.
4. Air is [free].
5. We ate some [delicious] food at a [Mexican] restaurant.
7. The child was [sick].

PRACTICE 11, p. 66.

1. newspaper articles 6. city governments
2. page numbers 7. duck ponds
3. paper money 8. shoulder pads
4. apartment buildings 9. pocket knives
5. key chains 10. traffic lights

PRACTICE 12, p. 66.

1. bottles ... caps
2. seats
3. students ... experiments ... classes
4. Houseflies ... pests ... germs
5. Computers ... operators
6. kinds ... flowers
7. reporters ... jobs
8. manners
9. tickets
10. lives ... ways ... years ... lamps ... candles ... houses ... chickens ... fires

PRACTICE 14, p. 68.

1. me (O of vb)
2. I (S) ... me (O of prep)
3. He (S) ... it (O of vb) ... It (S) ... him (O of vb)
4. me (O of prep) ... We (S) ... her (O of vb) ... she (S) ... us (O of vb) ... We (S) ... her (O of prep)
5. He (S) ... them (O of vb) ... them (O of vb) ... They (S)
6. I (S) ... him and me (O of prep) ... He and I (S)

PRACTICE 15, p. 68.

1. She = Janet ... it = a green apple
2. her = Betsy
3. They = Nick and Rob
4. they = phone messages
5. him = Louie ... He = Louie ... her = Alice ... She = Alice
6. She = Jane ... it = letter ... them = Mr. and Mrs. Moore ... They = Mr. and Mrs. Moore ... her = Jane

PRACTICE 16, p. 68.

1. It
2. He ... them
3. They ... her
4. it
5. it ... it ... him ... he
6. they ... them ... they
7. them
8. it
9. it ... It
10. them ... They ... They ... them

PRACTICE 17, p. 69.

1. me
2. He
3. him
4. he
5. her
6. She
7. me ... He ... us
8. her ... They
9. I ... They ... us ... it ... We ... them
10. them
11. me ... him
12. she
13. I ... him and me

PRACTICE 18, p. 70.

1. friend's 9. person's
2. friends' 10. people's
3. son's 11. teacher's
4. sons' 12. teachers'
5. baby's 13. man's
6. babies' 14. men's
7. child's 15. earth's
8. children's
PRACTICE 19, p. 70.
1. A king’s chair
2. Kings’ chairs
3. Babies’ toys
4. a baby’s toys
5. the caller’s words
6. A receptionist’s job . . . callers’ names
7. yesterday’s news . . . today’s events
8. The pilots’ seats
9. the earth’s surface
10. Mosquitoes’ wings
11. A mosquito’s wings
12. A cat’s heart . . . an elephant’s heart
13. the elephants’ tricks
14. the animals’ bodies
15. an animal’s footprints

PRACTICE 22, p. 73.
1. your . . . yours
2. her . . . hers
3. his . . . his
4. your . . . yours
5. their . . . our . . . theirs . . . ours

PRACTICE 24, p. 74.
1. myself
2. himself
3. ourselves
4. yourself
5. yourselves
6. herself
7. themselves

PRACTICE 25, p. 74.
1. blamed myself
2. are going to/will cut yourself
3. introduced myself
4. was talking to himself
5. work for ourselves
6. taught themselves
7. killed himself
8. wished myself
9. is taking care of herself
10. believe in ourselves
11. felt sorry for myself
12. help themselves

PRACTICE 26, p. 75.
1. me . . . him
2. yourselves
3. itself
4. its . . . its
5. hers
6. him
7. yourself . . . your
8. our . . . our
9. ours
10. themselves
11. itself
12. himself

PRACTICE 28, p. 77.
1. The other
2. a. Another
3. b. The other
4. a. Another
5. Another
6. The other
7. a. Another
8. b. the other
9. a. another
10. b. another
11. c. another
d. another
12. e. another
13. f. another
e. another

PRACTICE 29, p. 78.
1. The other
2. The others
3. a. Other
4. b. Others
5. c. Others
6. d. Other
7. others
8. Others
9. Other
10. a. The other
11. b. The others

PRACTICE 30, p. 79.
1. A
2. C
3. D
4. B
5. E
6. C
7. A
8. D
9. B
10. E

PRACTICE 32, p. 80.
1. Robert Jones
2. (no change)
3. Uncle Joe . . . Aunt Sara
4. (no change)
5. Susan W. Miller
6. Prof. Miller’s
7. January
8. (no change)
9. Monday
10. Los Angeles
11. California
12. (no change)
13. United States of America
14. (no change)
15. Atlantic Ocean
16. (no change)
17. Market Street . . . Washington High School
18. (no change)
19. Hilton Hotel . . . Bangkok
20. Japanese . . . German

PRACTICE 33, p. 81.
1. for
2. A: to . . . about
3. to
4. from
5. for
6. A: on
7. in
8. of
9. with . . . about/on
10. to
Chapter 5: Modal Auxiliaries

Practice 1, p. 83.
1. must __________
2. has __________ to
3. should __________
4. ought __________ to
5. May __________ I
6. can __________
7. must __________
8. can't __________
9. have got __________ to
to
10. A: Should __________ I

B: have __________ to ... could __________

A: ought __________ to ... might __________ ...

Would __________

B: should __________ ... can __________ ...

will __________

A: must __________ ... can't __________

Practice 3, p. 84.
1. zebra
2. cat
3. Elephants
4. Monkeys
5. camels
6. cow
7. horse
8. donkey
9. squirrel
10. ants

Practice 6, p. 86.
1. can ... can’t
don't have to
2. may
3. can
3. must
4. may ... may not
doesn't have to
5. may
4. must
6. may
3. must
7. can’t
5. has to/must
8. may
9. might ... might not
3. must not
10. can ... can’t
4. must

Practice 7, p. 87.
1. A
5. B
2. B
6. A
3. B
7. B
4. B
8. A

Practice 10, p. 88.
1. Can
6. A: Could
2. may
B: May
3. Would
7. A: Can
4. could
B: Will
5. Can
8. Could

Practice 12, p. 89.
1. A
6. C
2. C
7. A
3. B
8. C
4. A
9. B
5. B
10. C

Practice 14, p. 90.
1. C
5. B
2. A
6. A
3. D
7. D
4. C
8. C

Practice 16, p. 91.
1. must not
6. must not
2. don't have to
7. don't have to
3. must not
8. must not
4. don't have to
9. must not
5. don't have to
10. don't have to

Practice 17, p. 92.
1. have to/must
5. has to/must
2. doesn't have to
6. doesn't have to
3. don't have to
7. has to/must
4. must not
8. must not

Practice 20, p. 94.
1. must
5. must not
2. must not
6. must not
3. must
7. must
4. must

Practice 22, p. 95.
1. Wait
2. Don't wait
3. Read
4. Don't put
5. Come in ... have
don’t cross
6. Don't just stand ... Do
don’t stand
7. Don't just stand ... Do
call
8. Call
take ... go ...
9. Take ... Go ... Walk ... give
10. Capitalize ... Put ... use
PRACTICE 24, p. 96.
1. A: go... fly  
   B: see  
2. B: get  
   A: take  
3. A: go  
   B: play  

PRACTICE 26, p. 98.
1. prefer  
2. like  
3. would rather  
4. prefer  
5. would rather  
6. A: prefer  
   B: likes  
   B: would rather  

PRACTICE 28, p. 99.
1. A  
2. C  
3. A  
4. A  
5. B  

PRACTICE 32, p. 104.
1. A: with/to  
   B: about  
2. for  
3. to  
4. of  
5. A: in  
   B: for  
6. to  

Chapter 6: QUESTIONS

PRACTICE 1, p. 106.
Possible completions:
1. (Supply your own name.)
2. What is (What's) your name?
3. Is that your first name? / Is Anna your first name?
4. What's your last name?
5. How do you spell that? / How do you spell your last name?
6. Where are you from? / What country are you from? / What country do you come from?
7. What city? (What city are you from?) / Where in Poland? (Where do you come from in Poland?) / What's your hometown?
8. When did you come to (name of this city/country/school)? / When did you arrive here?
9. Why did you come here?
10. What is your major? / What are you going to study? / What are you studying? / What field are you in? / What's your field?
11. How long are you going to stay here? / How long do you plan to stay?
12. Where are you living?
13. Do you live far from / a long way from school? / Is their house far from school?
14. How far is it? / How far is their house from school? / How far away are you?
15. How do you get to school every day?
16. How do you like going to school here? / Do you like it here too?
◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 107.

1. A: Do
   B: I don't
2. A: Is
   B: it is
3. A: Do
   B: they don't
4. A: Are
   B: I am
5. A: Does
   B: it does
6. A: Are
   B: they aren't
7. A: Do
   B: they do
8. A: Are
   B: it does
9. A: Is
   B: it isn't
10. A: Do
    B: they do

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 108.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>watching</td>
<td>TV?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>lunch with Rob?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>Sara</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>to school?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>taking</td>
<td>a nap?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Ted</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>to the meeting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>Rita</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>a bicycle?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>at the wedding?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 109.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>the news yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Eric</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>today's paper?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Eric</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>0?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>your wallet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>your wallet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>Mr. Li</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>to work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Does</td>
<td>Mr. Li</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>to work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Ms. Cook</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>to her office at one o'clock?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Ms. Cook</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>to her office?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>form of be</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>the orange juice</td>
<td>in the refrigerator?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>the orange juice</td>
<td>0?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 110.

1. What time/When do the fireworks start
2. Why are you waiting
3. When does Rachel start
4. What time/When do you usually leave
5. Why didn't you get
6. Where can I buy*
7. What time/When are you leaving
8. Where did you study . . . Why did you study . . . Why didn’t you go
9. When do you expect
10. Where will the spaceship go

* Also possible: Where can you buy? In this case, you is used as an impersonal pronoun meaning someone, anyone, or all people.
**PRACTICE 10, p. 113.**

1. Who knows?
2. Who did you ask?
3. Who knocked on the door?
4. Who did Sara meet?
5. Who will help us?
6. Who will you ask?
7. Who(m) is Eric talking to on the phone? OR To whom is Eric talking on the phone?
8. Who is knocking on the door?
9. What surprised them?
10. What will change Ann's mind?
11. What can Tina talk about? OR About what can Tina talk?

**PRACTICE 11, p. 113.**

1. Who taught you to play chess?
2. What did Robert see?
3. Who got a good look at the bank robber?
4. Who is making the toy for? OR For whom is making the toy?
5. Who does the calculator belong to? OR To whom does the calculator belong?
6. What do you have in your pocket? [also possible: What have you (got) in your pocket?]
7. What did the cat kill?
8. What killed the cat?
9. Who did you get a letter from? OR From whom did you get a letter?
10. Who wrote a note on the envelope?
11. What makes an apple fall to the ground from a tree?

**PRACTICE 12, p. 114.**

1. What is Alex doing?
2. What should I do if someone calls while you're out?
3. What do astronauts do?
4. What should I do?
5. What are you going to do Saturday morning?
6. What do you do when you get sick?
7. What can I do to help you?
8. What did Sara do when she heard the good news?

**PRACTICE 16, p. 116.**

1. Which
2. What
3. Which
4. What
5. What . . . Which
6. What
7. Which
8. which

**PRACTICE 17, p. 117.**

1. Who
2. Whose
3. Whose
4. Who
5. Who
6. Whose
7. Whose
8. Who

**PRACTICE 19, p. 118.**

1. hot . . . hot
2. soon
3. expensive (also common: how much)
4. busy . . . busy
5. serious . . . serious
6. well . . . well
7. fresh . . . fresh . . . fresh
8. safe

**PRACTICE 20, p. 119.**

1. far
2. long
3. far
4. far
5. long
6. far
7. long
8. long
9. far
10. long

**PRACTICE 21, p. 119.**

1. often 10. many
2. long 11. long
3. many 12. often
4. far 13. far
5. many 14. many
6. many 15. often
7. long 16. far
8. many 17. long
9. often
**PRACTICE 23, p. 121.**

1. When are you going to buy a new bicycle?
2. How are you going to pay for it?
3. How long (How many years) did you have your old bike?
4. How often (How many times a week) do you ride your bike?
5. How do you (usually) get to work?
6. Are you going to ride your bike to work tomorrow?
7. Why didn’t you ride your bike to work today?
8. When did Jason get his new bike?
9. Who broke Jason’s new bike?
10. What (Whose bike) did Billy break?
11. What (Whose bike) is broken?
12. How did Billy break Jason’s bike?
13. Does your bike have a comfortable seat?
   [also possible: Has your bike (got) a comfortable seat?]
14. What kind of bicycle do you have?
   [also possible: What kind of bike have you (got)?]
15. Which bicycle is yours, the red one or the blue one?
16. Where do you keep your bicycle at night?
17. Who(m) does that bike belong to? OR To whom does that bike belong?
18. Whose bike did you borrow?
19. Where is Rita?
20. What is she doing?
21. How far did Rita ride her bike yesterday?
22. How do you spell “bicycle?”

**PRACTICE 28, p. 125.**

1. a. don’t
   b. doesn’t
   c. don’t
   d. doesn’t
   e. isn’t
   f. aren’t
   g. does
   h. is
   i. aren’t
   j. doesn’t
   k. don’t
   l. doesn’t
   m. isn’t
   n. aren’t
   o. doesn’t

2. a. aren’t
   b. is
   c. is
   d. weren’t
   e. was
   f. isn’t
   g. can’t
   h. will
   i. shouldn’t
   j. didn’t
   k. did
   l. would
   m. do
   n. f. didn’t
   o. were
   p. wouldn’t
   q. were
   r. did
   s. were
   t. wasn’t
   u. didn’t
   v. wasn’t
   w. wasn’t
   x. aren’t
   y. aren’t
   z. aren’t

**PRACTICE 29, p. 126.**

1. wasn’t he
2. can’t they
3. don’t they
4. is he
5. wouldn’t you
6. aren’t they
7. isn’t it
8. can it
9. shouldn’t you
10. won’t she
11. doesn’t he
12. did you
13. is it
14. do I
15. is it
16. weren’t they
17. will she
18. doesn’t it

**PRACTICE 32, p. 127.**

1. about /of
2. with /for
3. to 
4. at 
5. to
6. A: to
   B: for

Chapter 7: THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

**PRACTICE 1, p. 128.**

1. A: Have you ever eaten
   B: have / have eaten OR haven’t / have never eaten
2. A: Have you ever talked
   B: have / have talked OR haven’t / have never talked
3. A: Has Erica ever rented
   B: has / has rented OR hasn’t / has never rented
4. A: Have you ever seen
   B: have / have seen OR haven’t / have never seen
5. A: Has Joe ever caught
   B: has / has caught OR hasn’t / has never caught
6. A: Have you ever had
   B: have / have had OR haven’t / have never had

**PRACTICE 2, p. 129.**

1. have used
2. has risen
3. have never played
4. have won
5. hasn’t spoken
6. hasn’t eaten
7. has given
8. haven’t saved
9. Have you ever slept
10. have never worn
11. has improved
12. have looked

**PRACTICE 3, p. 129.**

1. have already called ... called
2. have already begun ... began
3. have already eaten ... ate
4. have already bought ... bought
5. has already left ... left
6. have already locked ... locked

**ANSWER KEY Chapter 7**
PRACTICE 4, p. 130.

1. began... have begun
2. bent... have bent
3. broadcast... has broadcast
4. caught... have caught
5. came... have come
6. cut... have cut
7. dug... have dug
8. drew... has drawn
9. fed... have fed
10. fought... have fought
11. forgot... have forgotten
12. hid... have hidden
13. hit... has hit
14. held... has held
15. kept... have kept
16. led... has led
17. lost... has lost
18. met... have met
19. rode... have ridden
20. rang... has rung
21. saw... have seen
22. stole... has stolen
23. stuck... have stuck
24. swept... have swept
25. took... have taken
26. upset... have upset
27. withdrew... have withdrawn
28. wrote... have written

PRACTICE 6, p. 134.

1. since... for
2. for... since
3. since... for
4. for... since
5. for... since
6. since... for
7. since... for
8. for... since
9. for... since
10. for... since
11. since... for
12. since... for
13. since... for
14. since... for

PRACTICE 7, p. 135.

1. have known... were
2. has changed... started
3. was... have been
4. haven't slept... left
5. met... hasn't been
6. has had... bought
7. A: have you eaten... got up
   B: have eaten
8. had... was... left... have taken... have had... have learned

PRACTICE 10, p. 136.

1. A: has Eric been studying
   B: has been studying... two hours
2. A: has Kathy been working at the computer
   B: has been working... two o'clock
3. A: has it been raining
   B: has been raining... two days

PRACTICE 11, p. 137.

1. B
2. B
3. A
4. B
5. A
6. A
7. B
8. A

PRACTICE 15, p. 140.

PART I:

1. Ø is always
2. always finishes Ø
3. always finished Ø
4. Ø will always
5. Ø has always
6. always helped Ø
7. Ø are always
8. always help Ø
9. Ø have always
10. Ø can always
11. Ø are usually
12. usually help Ø
13. Ø have usually
14. Ø can usually

PART II:

15. Do Ø you usually
16. Is Ø Mike usually
17. Did Ø your mom usually
18. Were Ø you usually
19. Can Ø students usually
20. Do Ø you ever
21. Is Ø Mike ever
22. Did Ø your mom ever
23. Were Ø you ever
24. Can Ø students ever
PART 111:
25. probably 0
26. probably 0
27. probably 0
28. probably 0
29. 0
30. 0
31. 0
32. 0

PRACTICE 1, p. 149.
1. ___ / furniture → noncount
2. ___ one ___ table → count
3. ___ one ___ ring → count
4. ___ / ___ jewelry → noncount
5. ___ / ___ homework → noncount
6. ___ one ___ assignment → count
7. ___ one ___ job → count
8. ___ / ___ work → noncount
9. ___ one ___ question → count
10. ___ / ___ information → noncount
11. ___ one ___ new word → count
12. ___ / ___ new vocabulary → noncount

PRACTICE 2, p. 149.
1. ___ some ___ furniture
2. ___ a ___ table
3. ___ a ___ ring
4. ___ some ___ jewelry
5. ___ some ___ homework
6. ___ an ___ assignment
7. ___ a ___ job
8. ___ some ___ work
9. ___ a ___ question
10. ___ some ___ information
11. ___ a ___ new word
12. ___ some ___ new vocabulary

Chapter 8: COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

PRACTICE 17, p. 142.
1. B
2. D
3. A
4. D
5. C

PRACTICE 19, p. 143.
1. a. 1st  b. 2nd
2. a. 2nd  b. 1st
3. a. 1st  b. 2nd
4. a. 2nd  b. 1st

PRACTICE 20, p. 145.
1. has already left
2. had already left
3. have already slept
4. had already slept
5. have already met
6. had already met
7. have already seen
8. had already seen
9. have made
10. had made

PRACTICE 21, p. 145.
1. B
2. A
3. A
4. B
5. B
6. A
7. B
8. B

PRACTICE 22, p. 146.
1. was sleeping
2. have never been
3. had already heard
4. was still snowing
5. had passed
6. were making
7. Hasn't he come
8. had never been
9. was wearing ... had never worn ... hasn't worn
10. ___

PRACTICE 23, p. 147.
1. A
2. C
3. B
4. D
5. A

PRACTICE 25, p. 148.
1. (up)on
2. from
3. of
4. (up)on
5. to
6. to ... for ... for ... (up)on
7. for
8. to/with
9. of
10. for

ANSWER KEY Chapter 8
PRACTICE 3, p. 150.
1. furniture /
2. tables
3. rings
4. jewelry /
5. homework /
6. assignments
7. jobs
8. work /
9. questions
10. information /
11. words
12. vocabulary /

PRACTICE 4, p. 150.
1. (no change)
2. two tables
3. two rings
4. (no change)
5. (no change)
6. two assignments
7. two jobs
8. (no change)
9. two questions
10. (no change)
11. two new words
12. (no change)

PRACTICE 5, p. 151.
1. a lot of furniture
2. a lot of tables
3. a lot of rings
4. a lot of jewelry
5. a lot of homework
6. a lot of assignments
7. a lot of jobs
8. a lot of work
9. a lot of questions
10. a lot of information
11. a lot of new words
12. a lot of new vocabulary

PRACTICE 6, p. 151.
1. much furniture
2. many tables
3. many rings
4. much jewelry
5. much homework
6. many assignments
7. many jobs
8. much work
9. many questions
10. much information
11. many words
12. much new vocabulary

PRACTICE 7, p. 152.
1. a little furniture
2. a few tables
3. a few rings
4. a little jewelry
5. a little homework
6. a few assignments
7. a few jobs
8. a little work
9. a few questions
10. a little information
11. a few new words
12. a little new vocabulary

PRACTICE 8, p. 152.
1. a game
2. a rock
3. a store
4. an army
5. an egg
6. an island
7. an ocean
8. an umbrella
9. a university
10. a horse
11. an hour
12. a star
13. an eye
14. a new car
15. an old car
16. a used car
17. an uncle
18. a house
19. an honest mistake
20. a hospital
21. a hand
22. an aunt
23. an ant
24. a neighbor

PRACTICE 9, p. 153.
1. a letter
2. some mail
3. some equipment
4. a tool
5. some food
6. an apple
7. some clothing
8. an old shirt
9. some advice
10. a suggestion
11. an interesting story
12. some interesting news
13. a poem
14. some poetry
15. a song
16. some Indian music
17. a new idiom
18. some new slang

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 153.
1. grammar /
2. noun s
3. language s
4. English /
5. makeup /
6. scenery /
7. mountain s
8. traffic /
9. automobile s
10. sand /
11. dust /
12. beach es
13. slang /
14. mistake s
15. information /
16. fact s
17. game s
18. weather /
19. thunder /
20. water /
21. parent s . . . health /
22. circle . . . degree s
23. Professor s . . . knowledge /
24. family . . . luck /
25. neighbor s . . . help /
26. factor ies . . . pollution /
27. pride . . . children /
28. people . . . intelligence /

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 155.
1. many letter s are
2. much mail /
3. many men have
4. many families are
5. many word s are
6. many sentences are
7. much chalk / is
8. much English /
9. much English literature /
10. many English words
11. much gasoline / (much petrol )
12. much homework /
13. many grandchildren
14. many page s are
15. many libraries are
16. many bone s are
17. many teeth /
18. much water /
19. many cups
20. much tea /
21. many glasses
22. much fun /
23. much education /
24. much soap /
25. many islands are
26. many people / were
27. many human beings are
28. many people /
29. many zeroes or zeros are
30. many butterflies

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 156.
1. a little music /
2. a few songs
3. a little help /
4. a little English /
5. a few more apples
6. a little honey /
7. a little advice /
8. a few suggestions
9. a few questions
10. a few people /
11. a few more minutes
12. a little light /
13. a little homework /

*The -y is changed to -i and then -es is added. Example: baby → babies. (See Chart 4-1.)
PRACTICE 15, p. 157.
1. How many children do the Millers have?
2. How much money does Jake make?
3. How many players are there on a soccer team?
4. How much homework do you have tonight?
5. How many feet are there in a mile?
6. How many meters/metres are there in a kilometer/kilometre?
7. How many suitcases did you take on the plane to Florida?
8. How much suntan oil did you take with you?
9. How many pairs of sandals did you take?
10. How much toothpaste did you take?

PRACTICE 20, p. 160.
1. D
2. G
3. F
4. B
5. E
6. C
7. A

PRACTICE 22, p. 161.
1. A bird ... Birds have feathers.
2. Ø Corn ... (none possible)
3. Ø Milk ... (none possible)
4. A flower ... Flowers are beautiful.
5. Ø Water ... (none possible)
6. A horse ... Horses are strong.
7. Ø Jewelry ... (none possible)
8. Ø Honey ... (none possible)
9. A shirt ... Shirts have sleeves.
10. Ø Soap ... (none possible)

1. a bird ... I saw some birds.
2. some corn ... (none possible)
3. some milk ... (none possible)
4. a flower ... I picked some flowers.
5. some water ... (none possible)
6. a horse ... I fed grass to some horses.
7. some jewelry ... (none possible)
8. some honey ... (none possible)
9. a new shirt ... Tom bought some new shirts.
10. some soap ... (none possible)

PRACTICE 24, p. 161.
1. a dog
2. the dog
3. the radio
4. a radio ... a tape player
5. a desk, a bed, a chest of drawers
6. the desk ... the top drawer
7. the basement
8. a basement
9. a subject and a verb
10. the subject ... the verb
11. a meeting
12. the meeting
13. a long distance ... a telephone
14. The distance ... the sun ... the earth
15. the telephone
16. a question
17. the problem
18. a poem
19. the lecture ... The speaker ... an interesting talk
20. a cup ... the cafe ... the corner
\* PRACTICE 25, p. 163. 
1. Ø Dogs 
2. the dogs 
3. Ø Fruit 
4. The fruit 
5. Ø Children 
6. the children 
7. Ø Paper ... Ø trees 
8. The paper 
9. the potatoes 
10. Ø Potatoes ... Ø vegetables 
11. Ø Nurses 
12. the nurses 
13. Ø Frogs ... Ø small animals ... Ø tails ... 
Ø turtles ... Ø tails ... Ø hard shells 
14. The frogs ... The turtles 
15. Ø books ... Ø textbooks ... Ø workbooks ... 
Ø dictionaries ... Ø encyclopedias ... 
Ø entertainment ... Ø novels ... Ø poetry 
16. The books 
17. Ø plants ... Ø fruit ... Ø vegetables ... Ø plants ... 
Ø meat ... Ø plants 
18. The plants 
19. An engineer ... Ø engineers ... Ø bridges ... 
Ø rivers ... Ø valleys ... Ø highways ... Ø 
railroad tracks ... Ø other places 
20. the bridges 

\* PRACTICE 26, p. 164. 
1. a banana ... an apple ... the banana ... the apple 
2. some bananas ... some apples ... the bananas ... 
the apples 
3. some coffee ... some milk ... the coffee ... the milk 
4. a desk ... a bed ... The desk ... The bed 
5. a pen ... some paper ... the pen ... the paper 
6. a bag ... some sugar ... some cookies ... the 
sugar ... the flour ... the flour ... some little 
bugs ... the little bugs ... a new bag ... the new 
bag 
7. some birds ... a tree ... a cat ... the tree ... The 
birds ... the cat ... the cat ... the birds 
8. Once upon a time, a princess fell in love 
with a prince. The princess wanted to marry 
the prince, who lived in a distant 
land. She summoned a messenger to take 
some things to the prince to show him her 
love. The messenger took the jewels 
and a robe made of yellow and red silk to 
the prince. The princess anxiously 
awaited the messenger's return. She hoped 
that the prince would send her some 
tokens of his love. But when the messenger 
returned, he brought back the jewels and 

\* PRACTICE 28, p. 166. 
1. An egg ... the egg 
2. Ø Eggs 
3. a scientific fact ... Ø steam ... Ø water 
4. the tape player ... the shelves ... the batteries 
5. Ø Chalk ... a necessity 
6. the plunger ... The sink ... the water supply ... 
the house ... the leak 
7. Ø Water ... the water ... The pollution 
8. a taxi 
9. the car ... a minute ... the kids ... the car ... a 
minute 
10. Ø Newspapers ... an important source ... 
Ø information 
11. The sun ... a star ... the sun ... Ø heat ... 
Ø light ... Ø energy 
12. Ø Ducks 
13. the letter ... A strong wind ... the floor ... the 
dog ... the scraps ... the wastebasket 
14. An efficient transportation system ... an essential 
part 
15. the alarm ... the door ... the stove ... the 
windows ... the lights 
16. an exceptionally talented person 
17. Ø Money ... Ø trees 
18. Ø sick people ... A farmer ... Ø crops ... An 
architect ... Ø buildings ... An artist ... Ø new 
ways ... the world ... Ø life 
19. Ø Earthquakes ... Ø relatively rare events 
20. an earthquake ... the earthquake ... The ground 

\* PRACTICE 30, p. 170. 
1. one 
2. it 
3. one 
4. it ... it 
5. it 
6. one 
7. one 
8. it 
9. one 
10. it 

\* PRACTICE 32, p. 171. 
1. it 
2. some 
3. some 
4. it 
5. them 
6. some 
7. any 
8. it 

ANSWER KEY Chapter 8
PRACTICE 34, p. 173.
1. from
2. about ... for
3. to ... about
4. to ... from ... into ... by
5. for
6. on
7. about/of ... with
8. from ... to
9. about ... from

1. for
2. in
3. In ... to
4. for
5. with
6. at
7. of
8. to
9. at
10. in ... on
11. of
12. to
13. to
14. from ... of
15. for
16. about/of ... at
17. of ... for ... (up)on ... for ... In
18. for ... to
19. A: about ... about ... with/at
    B: from ... in ... to ... for
20. of ... on
Chapter 9: CONNECTING IDEAS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 175.

1. The farmer has a cow, a goat, and a black horse.

2. Danny is a bright and happy child.

3. I picked up the telephone and dialed Steve's number.

4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.

5. My feet were cold and wet.

6. Sara is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.

7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 176.

1. Rivers, streams, lakes, and oceans are all bodies of water.

2. My oldest brother, my neighbor, and I went shopping yesterday.

3. Ms. Parker is intelligent, friendly, and kind.

4. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue, Dan, Joe, and Mary?

5. In the early 1600s, the Chinese made wallpaper by painting birds, flowers, and landscapes on large sheets of rice paper.

6. Can you watch television, listen to the radio, and read the newspaper at the same time?

7. Lawyers, doctors, teachers, and accountants all have some form of continuing education throughout their careers.

8. Gold is beautiful, workable, indestructible, and rare.

9. My mother, father, grandfather, and sisters welcomed my brother and me home.

10. My husband imitates sounds for our children. He moos like a cow, roars like a lion, and barks like a dog.

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 177.

1. Birds fly, and fish swim.

2. Birds fly. Fish swim.

3. Dogs bark. Lions roar.

4. Dogs bark, and lions roar.

5. A week has seven days. A year has 365 days.

6. A week has seven days, and a year has 365 days.

7. Bill raised his hand, and the teacher pointed at him.

8. Bill raised his hand. The teacher pointed at him.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 177.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn't listen.

2. (no change)

3. I talked to Bob for a long time, and he listened carefully to every word.

4. (no change)

5. (no change)

6. Please call Jane, Ted, or Anna.

7. Please call Jane, Ted, and Anna.

8. I waved at my friend, but she didn't see me.

9. I waved at my friend, and she waved back.

10. (no change)

11. (no change)

12. My test was short and easy, but Ali's test was hard.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 178.

1. so

2. and

3. but

4. or

5. and

6. so

7. but

8. or
Diamond Practice 7, p. 178.

1. (no change)
2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
3. I called their house, but no one answered the phone.
4. (no change)
5. I bought some apples, peaches, and bananas.
6. I was hungry, so I ate an apple.
7. (no change)
8. (no change)
9. My daughter is affectionate, shy, independent, and smart.
10. It started to rain, so we went inside and watched television.

Diamond Practice 8, p. 179.

1. Gina wants a job as an air traffic controller. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English, so it is important for her to be fluent in the language.
2. (no change)
3. Mozart was a great composer, but he had a short and difficult life. During the last part of his life, he was penniless, sick, and unable to find work, but he wrote music of lasting beauty and joy.
4. Nothing in nature stays the same forever. Today's land, sea, climate, plants, and animals are all part of a relentless process of change continuing through millions of years.
5. (no change)
6. According to one researcher, the twenty-five most common words in English are: the, and, a, to, of, I, in, was, that, it, he, you, for, had, is, with, she, has, on, at, have, but, me, my, and not.

Diamond Practice 9, p. 179.

1. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
2. I like to get mail from my friends and family. It is important to me.
3. We are all connected by our humanity. We need to help each other. We can all live in peace.
4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong. The streets became raging streams. Luckily no one died in the flood.
5. People have used needles since prehistoric times. The first buttons appeared more than two thousand years ago. Zipper is a relatively recent invention. The zipper was invented in 1890.

Diamond Practice 10, p. 182.

Part I: Part II:
1. don’t 11. do
2. is 12. are
3. won’t 13. isn’t
4. don’t 14. didn’t
5. does 15. does
6. aren’t 16. won’t
7. can 17. is
8. hasn’t 18. can’t
9. is
10. doesn’t

Diamond Practice 11, p. 183.

1. does
2. don’t
3. can’t
4. don’t
5. can’t
6. is
7. does
8. did
9. is
10. isn’t

Diamond Practice 12, p. 183.

Part I: Part II:
1. are too 15. so is
2. can’t either 16. neither do
3. do too 17. neither did
4. does too 18. so are
5. doesn’t either 19. so do
6. isn’t either 20. neither do
7. is too 21. so is
8. wasn’t either 22. neither is
9. didn’t either 23. so does
10. couldn’t either 24. so is
11. did too 25. neither have
12. can’t either 26. so did
13. does too 27. neither did
14. would too 28. neither can

24 • ANSWER KEY Chapter 9
PRACTICE 17, p. 186.

1. Johnny was late for work because [he] [missed] the bus.

2. I closed the door because [the room] [was] cold.

3. Because [I] [lost] my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.

4. Joe didn’t bring his book to class because [he] [couldn’t find] it.

PRACTICE 18, p. 186.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. We felt more comfortable then.

2. (no change)

3. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn’t finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.

4. Annie is very young. Because she is afraid of the dark, she likes to have a light on in her bedroom at night.

5. (no change)

6. Marilyn has a cold. Because she’s not feeling well today, she’s not going to go to her office.

PRACTICE 20, p. 187.

Part I:
1. Jack never showed up for work on time, so he lost his job.
2. I was sleepy, so I took a nap.
3. The room was hot, so I opened the window.
4. It was raining, so I stayed indoors.

Part II:
5. Because Jason was hungry, he ate. OR: Jason ate because he was hungry.
6. Because I was tired, I went to bed.
7. We can’t go swimming because the water in the river is polluted.
8. I was late for my job interview because my watch is broken.

PRACTICE 22, p. 188.

1. B 7. B
2. A 8. B
3. A 9. A
4. B 10. A
5. A 11. B
6. A 12. A.

PRACTICE 23, p. 189.

1. C
2. C
3. C
4. B
5. C

PRACTICE 24, p. 189.

1. C
2. A
3. A
4. B
5. C

PRACTICE 27, p. 192.

1. separable
2. nonseparable
3. separable
4. nonseparable
5. separable
6. nonseparable
7. separable
8. separable

PRACTICE 28, p. 193.

1. out 7. up
2. on 8. on
3. up 9. up
4. over 10. up
5. in 11. down . . . off
6. up
**Chapter 10: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES**

**PRACTICE 1, p. 197.**

1. (INF) Ann promised to wait for me.
2. (GER) I kept walking even though I was tired.
3. (INF) Alex offered to help me.
4. (GER) Karen finished writing a letter and went to bed.
5. (INF) Don't forget to call me tomorrow.
6. (GER) David was afraid of falling and hurting himself.
7. (GER) Working in a coal mine is a dangerous job.
8. (INF) It is easy to grow vegetables.

**PRACTICE 29, p. 193.**

1. on
2. up
3. down...up
4. off
5. B: on  A: off
6. away
7. A: down  B: up
8. out...out
9. A: up  B: off

**PRACTICE 3, p. 198.**

1. went dancing
2. is going to go hiking
3. went shopping
4. go swimming
5. goes fishing
6. go sightseeing
7. go camping
8. go sailing/boating
9. go skiing
10. went skydiving

**PRACTICE 30, p. 195.**

1. over it — NONSEP
2. it up — SEP
3. it off — SEP
4. them down — SEP
5. into him — NONSEP
6. it out — SEP
7. them off — SEP
8. on her — NONSEP
9. them off — SEP
10. it away — SEP

**PRACTICE 4, p. 199.**

3. B  15. A
5. A  17. B
7. B  19. A
10. A  22. B
11. A  23. B

**PRACTICE 31, p. 195.**

1. over it
2. them off
3. it up...it down
4. them away
5. it on
6. into him
7. up...them down...into
8. B: it away...on me  A: it up
9. off...on

**PRACTICE 5, p. 200.**

1. B  5. A, B
2. A, B  6. A, B
3. A, B  7. A, B
9. A
10. A, B
11. A, B
12. A, B
13. B
14. B

**PRACTICE 8, p. 203.**

1. Not yet. But I'm going to pay the electric bill.
2. I didn't want to go to class this morning.
3. No, but I ought to call my mother.
4. No, I haven't, but I intend to take my vacation.
◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 204.
1. in telling
2. of having to be
3. of drowning
4. about meeting
5. for helping
6. in going
7. in solving
8. about visiting
9. of chewing
10. about pleasing
11. on reading
12. to taking
13. like telling
14. for lying
15. on paying
16. of jogging
17. for causing
18. on paying
19. about quitting
20. from doing
21. into forgiving
22. on eating
23. for spilling
24. of failing
25. of losing

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 206.
1. by holding
2. by reading
3. by telling
4. by watching
5. by running
6. by staying . . . taking
7. by treating
8. by running
9. by running
10. by running
11. by running
12. by running
13. by running
14. by running
15. by running
16. by running
17. by running
18. by running
19. by running
20. by running
21. by running
22. by running
23. by running
24. by running
25. by running

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 208.
1. with a broom
2. with a needle and thread
3. with a saw
4. with a thermometer
5. with a spoon
6. with a key
7. with a shovel
8. with a hammer
9. with a knife
10. with a pair of scissors

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 208.
1. with
2. by
3. with
4. by
5. by
6. with
7. by
8. by
9. with
10. with
11. by
12. with
13. by
14. with
15. with
16. with

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 209.
1. a. It . . . to learn
   b. Learning . . . is
2. a. Eating . . . is
   b. It . . . to eat
3. a. Driving . . . is
   b. It . . . to drive
4. a. It . . . to swim
   b. Swimming . . . is
5. a. Is it . . . to live
   b. Is living
6. a. Is it . . . to complete
   b. Is completing

◊ PRACTICE 21, p. 211.
1. (E) I called the hotel desk (in order) to ask for an extra pillow.
2. (C) I turned on the radio (in order) to listen to a ball game.
3. (D) I looked in the encyclopedia (in order) to find the population of Malaysia.
4. (A) People wear boots (in order) to keep their feet warm and dry.
5. (I) Andy went to Egypt (in order) to see the ancient pyramids.
6. (B) Ms. Lane stood on tiptoe (in order) to reach the top shelf.
7. (J) The dentist moved the light closer to my face (in order) to look into my mouth.
8. (F) I clapped my hands and yelled (in order) to chase a stray dog away.
9. (H) Maria took a walk in the park (in order) to get some fresh air and exercise.
10. (G) I offered my cousin some money (in order) to help him pay the rent.

◊ PRACTICE 22, p. 211.
1. for
2. to
3. to
4. for
5. to
6. to
7. for
8. for
9. to
10. for
11. to
12. for
1. strong enough to lift
2. too weak to lift
3. too full to hold
4. large enough to hold
5. too busy to answer
6. early enough to get
7. too big to get
8. big enough to hold

1. Alan is too smart to make that kind of mistake.
2. Alan is smart enough to understand how to solve that problem.
3. My pocket is big enough to hold my wallet.
4. A horse is too big for a person to lift.
5. This room is too hot.
6. That watch is too expensive.
7. Are you tall enough to reach that book for me?
8. He's strong enough to lift it.
9. I am too busy to help you right now.
10. I think this problem is important enough to require our immediate attention.
11. Nora is not tired enough to finish the project before she goes home.
12. Our company is successful enough to start several new branches overseas.

1. back
2. down/off
3. out
4. away
5. on
6. up...off
7. back
8. up
9. out...off...back/up

1. Jim offered to help me with my work.
2. My son isn't old enough to stay home alone.
3. Do you enjoy being alone sometimes, or do you prefer to be with other people all the time?
4. I called my friend to thank her for the lovely gift.
5. Mary talked about going downtown tomorrow, but I'd like to stay home.
6. It is interesting to learn about earthquakes.
7. Approximately one million earthquakes occur around the world in a year's time. Six thousand can be felt by humans. Of those, one hundred and twenty are strong enough to cause serious damage to buildings, and twenty are violent enough to destroy a city.
8. It's important to respect the power of nature. A recent earthquake destroyed a bridge in California. It took five years for humans to build the bridge. It took nature fifteen seconds to knock it down.
9. Predicting earthquakes is difficult. I read about one scientist who tries to predict earthquakes by reading the daily newspaper's lost-and-found ads for lost pets. He believes that animals can sense an earthquake before it comes. He thinks they then begin to act strangely. Dogs and cats respond to the threat by running away to a safer place. By counting the number of ads for lost pets, he expects to be able to predict when an earthquake will occur.

1. them away
2. it up
3. them on
4. it down
5. him up
6. it out
7. it back
8. it up
9. her back
10. it off
11. it off
12. it back
13. her out
14. it back
Chapter 11: THE PASSIVE

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 221.

1. ACTIVE: Farmers grow corn.
2. PASSIVE: Corn is grown by farmers.
3. ACTIVE: Sara wrote the letter.
4. PASSIVE: The letter was written by Sara.
5. ACTIVE: The teacher explained the lesson.
6. PASSIVE: The lesson was explained by the teacher.
7. PASSIVE: Bridges are designed by engineers.
8. ACTIVE: Engineers design bridges.
9. ACTIVE: The mouse ate the cheese.
10. PASSIVE: The cheese was eaten by the mouse.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 222.

1. brought 14. played
2. built 15. read
3. bought 16. saved
4. eaten 17. sent
5. planned 18. spoken
6. given 19. spent
7. grown 20. taken
8. hit 21. taught
9. hurt 22. gone
10. left 23. visited
11. lost 24. worn
12. made 25. written
13. found 26. done

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 222.

1. was eaten 7. will be played
2. is spoken 8. can be taught
3. are written 9. are going to be taken
4. was hurt 10. have been grown
5. is going to be visited 11. is worn
6. has been read 12. will be built

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 223.

Part I: Part II:
1. are collected 7. were collected
2. are eaten 8. was built
3. is grown 9. was written
4. am paid 10. were destroyed
5. are written 6. is understood

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 224.

1. The government collects taxes.
2. Big fish eat small fish.
3. Everyone understands the meaning of a smile.
4. Leo Tolstoy wrote War and Peace.
5. Millions of tourists have visited the pyramids in Egypt.
6. Scientists in the twenty-first century will discover new information about the universe. OR Scientists will discover new information about the universe in the twenty-first century.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 225.

1. Mr. Rice signed the letter.
2. Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?
3. Ms. Owens sent the fax.
4. Did Mr. Chu send the other fax?
5. Will Mr. Berg meet Adam at the airport?
6. Mrs. Berg will meet Adam at the airport.
7. Has Mrs. Jordan invited you to the reception?
8. Mr. Lee has invited me to the reception.
9. Is the teacher going to collect the homework?
10. The teacher is going to collect the homework.

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 225.

1. TRANSITIVE: Alex wrote a letter.
2. INTRANSITIVE
3. INTRANSITIVE
4. INTRANSITIVE
5. TRANSITIVE: Kate caught the ball.
6. INTRANSITIVE
7. INTRANSITIVE
8. TRANSITIVE: A falling tree hit my car.
9. TRANSITIVE: I returned the book to the library yesterday.
10. INTRANSITIVE
PRACTICE 9, p. 226.
1. A noise awakened me. I was awakened by a noise.
2. (no change)
3. Alice discovered the mistake. The mistake was discovered by Alice.
4. (no change)
5. (no change)
6. (no change)
7. (no change)
8. In the fairy tale, a princess kissed a frog. In the fairy tale, a frog was kissed by a princess.
9. (no change)
10. Anita fixed the chair. The chair was fixed by Anita.
11. (no change)
12. Did the Koreans invent gunpowder? Was gunpowder invented by the Koreans?
13. (no change)
14. Research scientists will discover a cure for AIDS someday.

A cure for AIDS will be discovered someday. OR
A cure for AIDS will someday be discovered.
15. (no change)

PRACTICE 10, p. 227.
1. unknown
2. The wastebasket was emptied by Fred. Fred
3. Paul
4. The Eiffel Tower was designed by Alexandre Eiffel. Alexandre Eiffel
5. unknown
6. Nicole
7. unknown
8. Our exam papers will be corrected by Ms. Brown. Ms. Brown
9. unknown
10. Sara
11. unknown
12. unknown

PRACTICE 12, p. 229.
1. enjoys
2. was established . . . established . . . were established
3. were disgusted . . . were replaced . . . were studied . . . (were) kept . . . became
4. understood . . . have become . . . was reduced . . . would become . . . believe
5. are now put . . . are watched . . . are fed . . . have
6. is prepared . . . is designed . . . are fed . . . are fed
7. are treated

PRACTICE 13, p. 230.
1. Some people are considering a new plan.
   . . . is being considered
2. The grandparents are watching the children.
   . . . are being watched
3. Some painters are painting Mr. Rivera's apartment this week.
   . . . is being painted
4. Many of the older people in the neighborhood were growing vegetables.
   . . . were being grown
5. Eric's cousins are meeting him at the airport this afternoon.
   . . . is being met
6. I watched while the movers were moving the furniture from my apartment to a truck.
   . . . was being moved

PRACTICE 16, p. 232.
1. must be sent
2. can be found
3. ought to be washed
4. may be cooked or (may be) eaten
5. has to be fixed
6. might be destroyed
7. may be called off
8. must be kept
9. shouldn't be pronounced
10. should be removed

PRACTICE 18, p. 233.
1. are loved . . . brings . . . are often used . . . can be found
2. exist . . . can be found . . . have
3. are carried . . . carries . . . have been introduced
4. are appreciated . . . is made . . . is gathered . . . are eaten
5. are made . . . do not come . . . are made
6. may be planted . . . (may be) grown . . . survive

PRACTICE 20, p. 235.
1. scare
2. are scared of
3. interest
4. is interested in
5. disappoint
6. are disappointed in
7. is pleased with
8. pleases
9. satisfies
10. am satisfied with

◊ PRACTICE 21, p. 236.
1. interesting
2. interested
3. exciting
4. excited
5. fascinated
6. fascinating
7. bored and confused
8. boring and confusing
9. interesting
10. fascinating . . . surprising

◊ PRACTICE 24, p. 238.
1. got sunburned
2. get well
3. get married
4. gets hungry
5. gets dark
6. get invited
7. get dry
8. getting tired
9. got dressed
10. get busy
11. get dizzy
12. got wet

◊ PRACTICE 26, p. 240.
1. B, C
2. A
3. B, C
4. A
5. B, C
6. A

◊ PRACTICE 27, p. 240.
1. used to go
2. am used to going/am accustomed to going
3. used to eat
4. is used to growing/is accustomed to growing
5. is used to eating/is accustomed to eating
6. used to have.
7. am used to taking/am accustomed to taking
8. used to go

◊ PRACTICE 29, p. 241.
1. I'm supposed to call my parents tonight.
2. We're not supposed to tell anyone about the surprise.
3. You aren't supposed to talk to Alan about the surprise.
4. My friend was supposed to call me last night, but he didn't.
5. Children are supposed to respect their parents.
6. Weren't you supposed to be at the meeting last night?

◊ PRACTICE 30, p. 241.
1. (H) Doctors are supposed to care about their patients.
2. (C) Visitors at a zoo are not supposed to feed the animals.
3. (E) Employees are supposed to be on time for work.
4. (B) Air passengers are supposed to buckle their seatbelts before takeoff.
5. (D) Theatergoers are not supposed to talk during a performance.
6. (I) Soldiers on sentry duty are not supposed to fall asleep.
7. (A) Children are supposed to listen to their parents.
8. (J) Heads of state are supposed to be diplomatic.
9. (F) A dog is supposed to obey its trainer.
10. (G) People who live in apartments are supposed to pay their rent on time.

Chapter 12: ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 245.
1. I thanked the man who helped me move the refrigerator.
   I thanked the man.
   He helped me move the refrigerator.
2. A woman who was wearing a gray suit asked me for directions.
   1: A woman asked me for directions.
   2: She was wearing a gray suit.
3. I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.
   1: I saw a man.
   2: He was wearing a blue coat.
4. The woman who aided the rebels put her life in danger.
   1: The woman put her life in danger.
   2: She aided the rebels.
5. I know some people who live on a boat.
   1: I know some people.
   2: They live on a boat.
PRACTICE 2, p. 246.
1. The woman who answered the phone was polite.
2. The man who sang at the concert has a good voice.
3. We enjoyed the actors who played the leading roles.
4. The girl who fell down the stairs is hurt.

PRACTICE 3, p. 247.
1. The man who answered the phone was polite.
2. I liked the people who sat next to us at the soccer game.
3. People who paint houses for a living are called house painters.
4. I'm uncomfortable around married couples who argue all the time.
5. While I was waiting at the bus stop, I stood next to an elderly gentleman who started a conversation with me about my educational plans.

PRACTICE 4, p. 247.

S V
1. The people who live next to me are nice.

S V
2. They live next to me.

S V
2. The people whom Kate visited yesterday were French.

S V
2. Kate visited them yesterday.

S V
3. The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.

S V
2. I saw them at the park.

S V
4. The students who go to this school are friendly.

S V
2. They go to this school.

S V
5. The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.

S V
2. You met her last week.

PRACTICE 5, p. 248.
1. The woman whom Jack met was polite.
2. I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.
3. The singer whom we heard at the concert was wonderful.
4. The people who came to dinner brought a small gift.
5. What is the name of the woman whom Tom invited to the dance?

PRACTICE 6, p. 248.
1. who
2. who(m)
3. who
4. who(m)
5. who
6. who(m)
7. who
8. who(m)

PRACTICE 8, p. 249.
1. that
2. (no change)
3. that
4. that
5. (no change)
6. (no change) . . . that

PRACTICE 9, p. 250.
1. who
2. who(m)
3. who
4. who
5. who
6. who(m)

PRACTICE 10, p. 250.
1. C
2. A
3. C
4. C
5. B
6. A

ANSWER KEY Chapter 12
**PRACTICE 11, p. 251.**

1. which
   that
   Ø
2. which
   that
3. which
   that
   Ø
4. which
   that
5. which
   that
   Ø
6. which
   that

**PRACTICE 12, p. 251.**

1. them
2. it
3. this
4. this
5. this
6. her

**PRACTICE 15, p. 253.**

1. A, C, D
2. A, D
3. C, D, E
4. A, C, D
5. A, D
6. C, D
7. C, D, E
8. C, D

**PRACTICE 20, p. 256.**

1. tool . . . is
2. tools . . . are
3. woman . . . lives
4. people . . . live
5. cousin . . . works
6. coal miners . . . work
7. athlete . . . plays
8. athletes . . . play
9. person . . . makes
10. artists . . . make

**PRACTICE 21, p. 257.**

1. that . . . for
   which . . . for
   Ø . . . for
   for which . . . Ø
2. that . . . to
   which . . . to
   Ø . . . to
   to which . . . Ø
3. that . . . in
   which . . . in
   Ø . . . in
   in which . . . Ø
4. that . . . with
   who(m) . . . with
   Ø . . . with
   with whom . . . Ø

**PRACTICE 23, p. 258.**

1. a. to b. [we listened to at Sara’s apartment]
2. a. Ø b. [I accidentally broke Ø]
3. a. for b. [we were waiting for]
4. a. to b. [I always enjoy talking to about politics]
5. a. Ø b. [I had just written Ø]
6. a. in b. [I’ve been interested in for a long time]

**PRACTICE 24, p. 258.**

1. [I was looking at]
2. [I wanted Ø]
3. [we were listening to at Jim’s yesterday]
4. [I was staring at]
5. [I’ve always been able to depend on]
6. [I was carrying Ø]
7. [that I’m not familiar with]
8. [we talked about in class]
9. [she is arguing with]
10. [they ate Ø at the cafe]
11. [you waved at]
12. [I borrowed money from]

**PRACTICE 26, p. 259.**

1. I know a man whose daughter is a pilot.
   I know a man. His daughter is a pilot.
2. The woman whose husband is out of work found a job at Mel’s Diner.
   The woman found a job at Mel’s Diner. Her husband is out of work.
3. The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward. The man gave me a reward. I found his wallet.
4. I know a girl whose family never eats dinner together. I know a girl. Her family never eats dinner together.
5. The people whose window I broke got really angry. The people got really angry. I broke their window.

◊ PRACTICE 27, p. 261.
1. whose son was in an accident
2. James chose for his bedroom walls
3. I slept on at the hotel last night
4. that/which is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers
5. whose children were doing poorly in her class
6. Ted bought for his wife on their anniversary
7. whose views I share
8. that/which had backbones
9. that/which disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life

◊ PRACTICE 29, p. 262.
1. who
2. that/which/Ø
3. who
4. whose
5. that/which
6. who(m)/that/Ø
7. that/which
8. whose

◊ PRACTICE 31, p. 264.
1. Flowers that bloom year after year are called perennials. Flowers that bloom only one season are called annuals.
2. B: Are you talking about the boy who's wearing the striped shirt or the boy who has on the T-shirt? A: I'm talking about the boy who just waved at us . . . . Do you see the kid that has the red baseball cap?
3. . . . He stayed with a family who lived near Quito, Ecuador . . . . At first, all the things they did and said seemed strange to Hiroki . . . . He felt homesick for people who were like him in their customs and habits. But as time went on, he began to appreciate the way of life that his host family followed. Many of the things Hiroki did with his host family began to feel natural to him . . . . At the beginning of his stay in Ecuador, he had noticed only the things that were different between his host family and himself. At the end, he understood how many things they had in common as human beings despite their differences in cultural background.
4. Many of the problems that exist today have existed since the beginning of recorded history. One of these problems is violent conflict between people who come from different geographical areas or cultural backgrounds. One group may distrust and fear another group of people who are different from themselves in language, customs, politics, religion, and/or appearance. These irrational fears are the source of much of the violence that has occurred throughout the history of the world.

◊ PRACTICE 34, p. 266.
1. up
2. out
3. in
4. out
5. over
6. down
7. over
8. out
9. up
10. out/in
11. out
12. up

◊ PRACTICE 35, p. 267.
1. out for
2. in on
3. up in
4. along with
5. around with
6. out of
7. through with
8. out for
9. back from
10. out of

Chapter 13: COMPARISONS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 268.
1. aren't as noisy as
2. is as lazy as
3. aren't as strong as
4. is as tall as
5. isn't as comfortable as
6. was as nervous as
7. isn't as big as
8. isn't as fresh and clean as
9. am not as ambitious as
10. are more interesting than
PRACTICE 2, p. 269.

Part I:
1. almost as/not quite as
2. not nearly as
3. just as
4. almost as/not quite as

Part II:
5. just as
6. not nearly as
7. almost as/not quite as
8. almost as/not quite as

Part III:
9. just as
10. not nearly as
11. almost as/not quite as

Part IV:
12. just as
13. almost as/not quite as
14. just as
15. not nearly as
16. almost as/not quite as

PRACTICE 4, p. 271.
1. E
2. C
3. D
4. G
5. B
6. H
7. F
8. A

PRACTICE 5, p. 271.
1. stronger, strongest
2. more important, most important
3. softer, softest
4. lazier, laziest
5. more wonderful, most wonderful
6. calmer, calmest
7. tamer, tamest
8. dimmer, dimmest
9. more convenient, most convenient
10. cleverer, cleverest or more clever, most clever
11. better, best
12. worse, worst
13. farther/further, farthest/furthest
14. slower, slowest
15. more slowly, most slowly

PRACTICE 7, p. 273.
1. softer
2. colder
3. more expensive
4. cleaner
5. prettier
6. more careful
7. funnier
8. more confusing
9. more generous
10. worse
11. thinner
12. lazier

PRACTICE 9, p. 275.
1. A, B
2. B
3. A, B
4. A, B
5. B
6. B
7. A, B
8. B
9. A, B
10. B

PRACTICE 11, p. 276.
1. I did
2. she is
3. I do
4. she did
5. I was
6. he will
7. he does
8. he has
9. she did
10. he can

PRACTICE 13, p. 277.
1. A
2. B, C, D
3. A
4. B, C, D
5. B, C, D
6. A
7. B, C, D
8. A
PRACTICE 14, p. 277.

1. A, B
2. B
3. B
4. A, B
5. A, B
6. A, B
7. B
8. A, B

PRACTICE 16, p. 278.

1. more slowly - ADV
2. slower - ADJ
3. more serious - ADJ
4. more seriously - ADV
5. more politely - ADV
6. more polite - ADJ
7. more careful - ADJ
8. more carefully - ADV
9. more clearly - ADV
10. clearer - ADJ

PRACTICE 17, p. 279.

1. more newspapers - NOUN
2. more homework - NOUN
3. more snow - NOUN
4. more friends - NOUN
5. more pleasant - ADJ
6. more easily - ADV
7. more books - NOUN
8. more carefully - ADV
9. louder - ADJ

PRACTICE 19, p. 280.

1. faster and faster
2. angrier and angrier
   [also possible: more and more angry]
3. bigger and bigger
4. colder and colder
5. better and better
6. harder and harder . . . wetter and wetter
7. weaker and weaker

PRACTICE 20, p. 281.

1. The fresher . . . the better
2. The closer . . . the warmer
3. The sharper . . . the easier
4. The noisier . . . the angrier
5. The faster . . . the more confused

PRACTICE 21, p. 282.

1. (D) Kangaroos are the most familiar Australian grassland animals.
2. (C) Giraffes have the longest necks of all animals.
3. (F) Apes and monkeys are the most intelligent animals that live on land (besides human beings).
4. (E) Bottle-nosed dolphins are the most intelligent animals that live in water.
5. (B) African elephants have the largest ears of all animals.
6. (A) Horses have the largest eyes of all four-legged land animals.

PRACTICE 22, p. 282.

1. the deepest ocean
2. the cleanest air
3. The highest mountains on earth
4. the biggest bird
5. The two greatest natural dangers
6. the most popular forms of entertainment
7. The three most common street names
8. The longest river in South America
9. the largest living animal

PRACTICE 23, p. 283.

1. the laziest . . . in
2. the most nervous of
3. the most beautiful . . . in
4. the worst . . . in
5. the farthest/furthest . . . in
6. the best . . . of
7. the biggest . . . in
8. the oldest . . . in
9. the most comfortable . . . in
10. the most exhausted of

PRACTICE 24, p. 283.

1. the best . . . have ever had
2. the most responsible . . . have ever known
3. the nicest . . . have ever had
4. the most difficult . . . have ever taken
5. the best . . . have ever tasted
6. the worst . . . have ever made
7. the most beautiful . . . have ever seen
8. the easiest . . . have ever taken
**Chapter 14: NOUN CLAUSES**

**PRACTICE 1, p. 296.**

1. I don't know where Jack bought his new boots.  
   NOUN CLAUSE
2. Where did Jack buy his new boots?  
   QUESTION
3. I don't understand why Ann left.  
   NOUN CLAUSE
4. Why did Ann leave?  
   QUESTION
5. I don't know where your book is.  
   NOUN CLAUSE
6. Where is your book?  
   QUESTION
7. When did Bob come?  
   QUESTION
8. I don't know when the movie begins.  
   NOUN CLAUSE
9. What does “calm” mean?  
   QUESTION
    NOUN CLAUSE
11. I don't know how long the earth has existed.  
    NOUN CLAUSE
12. How long has the earth existed?  
    QUESTION

**PRACTICE 2, p. 296.**

Part I:

1. I don't know where [Patty] [went] last night.

2. Do you know where [Joe’s parents] [live]?

3. I know where [Joe] [lives].

4. Do you know what time [the movie] [begins]?

5. She explained where [Brazil] [is].

6. I don't believe what [Estefan] [said].

**PRACTICE 26, p. 285.**

1. the worst
2. worse
3. the best
4. better
5. the worst
6. worse
7. the worst
8. better

**PRACTICE 29, p. 287.**

1. heavier than . . . the heaviest . . . of
2. friendlier than
3. the most famous . . . in
4. more wheels than
5. easier . . . than
6. larger than . . . darker . . . than
7. the safest
8. faster . . . than
9. bigger than
10. the loudest . . . in
11. the largest . . . in . . . the smallest . . . of
12. more important than . . . less important than
13. more information
14. kinder . . . more generous
15. more honest . . . than
16. the worst
17. The most important
18. more education than
19. the longest
20. the most delightful
21. The harder . . . the more impossible
22. the most common/commonest . . . in
23. faster than . . . the fastest . . . of
24. larger than
25. The greatest . . . in
26. safer . . . than
27. the largest . . . in

**PRACTICE 31, p. 291.**

1. to
2. as
3. from
4. Ø . . . Ø
5. to
6. as
7. from
8. Ø . . . Ø
9. to . . . Ø . . . as . . . from
10. Ø . . . as . . . Ø . . . to . . . from

**PRACTICE 32, p. 292.**

1. different
2. similar
3. the same
4. alike . . . alike . . . different
5. like
6. different
7. like
8. A: similar  B: like . . . alike
9. A: as  B: the same
10. A: alike  B: similar . . . the same
PART 1
1. Where did Patty go last night?
2. Where do Joe's parents live?
3. Where does Joe live?
4. What time does the movie begin?
5. Where is Pine Street?
6. What did Estefan say?
7. When will the packages arrive?
8. How far is it to the post office?
9. Who knocked on the door?
10. What happened at the party last night?

PART II
1. Where did Patty go last night?
2. Where do Joe's parents live?
3. Where does Joe live?
4. What time does the movie begin?
5. Where is Pine Street?
6. What did Estefan say?
7. When will the packages arrive?
8. How far is it to the post office?
9. Who knocked on the door?
10. What happened at the party last night?

PRACTICE 3, p. 298.
1. where Jim goes
2. where Alex went
3. why Maria is laughing
4. why fire is
5. how much a new Honda costs
6. why Mike is always
7. how long birds live
8. when the first wheel was invented
9. how many hours a light bulb burns
10. where Emily bought
11. who lives
12. who(m) Julie talked

PRACTICE 4, p. 299.
1. A: Jason works . . . does he work
   B: he does
2. A: did Susan eat B: she ate
3. A: does that camera cost B: this camera costs
4. A: can you run B: I can run
5. A: did you see B: I saw
6. A: Mr. Gow's office is . . . is Mr. Gow's office
7. A: did she get B: she got
8. A: is it B: it is
9. A: will you know B: I will know
10. A: do you go B: Do you mean . . . you want . . .
    I go A: other people go
11. A: Who invented B: who invented
12. A: did Toshi borrow B: Toshi borrowed
13. A: does Rachel plan/ is Rachel planning B: she will
    return A: was she B: she was
14. A: did Tom go B: you said A: Tom went

PRACTICE 5, p. 301.
1. who [that man] [is]
2. [who] [called]
3. who [those people] [are]
4. who [that person] [is]
5. [who] [lives] next door to me
6. who [my teacher] [will be] next semester
7. [who] [will teach] us next semester
8. what [a lizard] [is]
9. [what] [happened] in class yesterday
10. whose hat [this] [is]
11. [whose hat] [is] on the table

PRACTICE 6, p. 301.
1. I don't know who that woman is.
2. I don't know who is on the phone.
3. I don't know what a crow is.
4. I don't know what is in that bag.
5. I don't know whose car is in the driveway.
6. I don't know whose car that is.
7. I don't know who Bob's doctor is.
8. I don't know who is in the doctor's office.

PRACTICE 7, p. 301.
1. whose car that is
2. whose car is in front of Sam's house
3. who has the scissors
4. who the best students are
5. what a violin is
6. what causes earthquakes
7. what kind of fruit that is
8. whose hammer this is
9. who it is . . . where you are

ANSWER KEY Chapter 14
1. if (whether) Tom is coming
2. if (whether) Jennifer can play the piano
3. if (whether) Paul went to work yesterday
4. if (whether) Susan is coming to work today
5. if (whether) Mr. Pips will be at the meeting
6. if (whether) Barcelona is a coastal town
7. if (whether) Carl would like to come with us
8. if (whether) I still have Yung Soo's address

9. It's a fact that the Nile River flows north.
10. It's true that some dinosaurs could fly.
11. Are you aware that dinosaurs lived on earth for one hundred and twenty-five million (125,000,000) years?
12. Is it true that human beings have lived on earth for only four million (4,000,000) years?

Chapter 15: QUOTED SPEECH AND REPORTED SPEECH

1. I believe that we need to protect endangered species of animals.
2. Last night I dreamed that I was at my aunt's house.
3. I think that most people have kind hearts.
4. I know that Matt walks a long distance to school every day.
   I assume that he doesn't have a bicycle.
5. I heard that Sara dropped out of school.
6. Did you notice that Ji Ming wasn't in class yesterday? I hope that he's okay.
7. I believe that she told the truth.
8. A: Can Julia prove that her watch was stolen?
   B: I suppose that she can't, but she suspects that her roommate's friend took it.
9. A: Did you know that leopards sometimes keep their dead prey in trees?
   Yes, I understand that they save their food for later if they're not hungry.
10. A: Do you believe that a monster really exists in Loch Ness in Scotland?
    B: It says that some scientists have proved that the Loch Ness Monster exists.
    A: I think that the monster is purely fictional.

1. I'm sorry that you won't be here for Joe's party.
2. I'm glad that it's warm today.
3. I'm surprised that you bought a car.
4. Are you certain that Mr. McVay won't be here tomorrow?
5. John is pleased that Claudio will be here for the meeting.
6. Carmella was convinced that I was angry with her, but I wasn't.
7. Jason was angry that his father wouldn't let him use the family car.
8. Andy was fortunate that you could help him with his algebra.
   He was delighted that he got a good grade on the exam.

1. “Do you smell smoke?” Alex said.
2. “Something is burning,” he said.
3. “Do you smell smoke? Something is burning,” he said.
5. “The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six,” she said.
6. “The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then?” she said.
7. “The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then?” she asked.
8. “The game starts at seven,” she said. “We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then?”
Mrs. Hill said, "My children used to take the bus to school."
2. She said, "We moved closer to the school."
3. "Now my children can walk to school," Mrs. Hill said.
4. "Do you live near the school?" she asked.
5. "Yes, we live two blocks away," I replied.
6. "How long have you lived here?" Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
7. I said, "We've lived here for five years. How long have you lived here?"
8. "We've lived here for two years," Mrs. Hill said.
9. "It's a nice community," I said. "It's a good place to raise children."
10. Mrs. Hill said, "My children used to take the bus to school."
11. She said, "We moved closer to the school."
12. "Now my children can walk to school," Mrs. Hill said.
13. "Do you live near the school?" she asked.
14. "Yes, we live two blocks away," I replied.
15. "How long have you lived here?" Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
16. I said, "We've lived here for five years. How long have you lived here?"
17. "We've lived here for two years," Mrs. Hill said.
18. "It's a nice community," I said. "It's a good place to raise children."

"Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.
"I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird," I said. "He wasn't feeling well."
"What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird?" Mr. Garcia demanded to know.
I replied, "Yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable."
"Now I've heard every excuse in the world!" Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

"Both of your parents are deaf, aren't they?" I asked Robert.
"Yes, they are," he replied.
"I'm looking for someone who knows sign language," I said. "Do you know sign language?" I asked.
"Of course I do. I've been using sign language with my parents since I was a baby," he said. "It's a beautiful and expressive language. I often prefer it to spoken language."
"Well, a deaf student is going to visit our class next Monday. Could you interpret for her?" I asked.
"That's great!" he answered immediately and enthusiastically. "I'd be delighted to. I'm looking forward to meeting her. Can you tell me why she is coming?"
"She's interested in seeing what we do in our English classes," I said. "Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.
"I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird," I said. "He wasn't feeling well."
"What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird?" Mr. Garcia demanded to know.
I replied, "Yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable."
"Now I've heard every excuse in the world!" Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

"Both of your parents are deaf, aren't they?" I asked Robert.
"Yes, they are," he replied.
"I'm looking for someone who knows sign language," I said. "Do you know sign language?" I asked.
"Of course I do. I've been using sign language with my parents since I was a baby," he said. "It's a beautiful and expressive language. I often prefer it to spoken language."
"Well, a deaf student is going to visit our class next Monday. Could you interpret for her?" I asked.
"That's great!" he answered immediately and enthusiastically. "I'd be delighted to. I'm looking forward to meeting her. Can you tell me why she is coming?"
"She's interested in seeing what we do in our English classes," I said.

1. needed
2. was meeting
3. had studied
4. had forgotten
5. was
6. would carry
7. could teach
8. had to attend
9. should leave
10. wanted

1. how old I was
2. if he was going to be
3. if I could hear
4. if he had ever seen
5. if she was passing her
6. if she had
7. when he would get back from his
8. if he had changed his
PRACTICE 15, p. 324.

1. asked . . . to help
2. invited . . . to have
3. encouraged . . . to take
4. advised . . . to call . . . (to) apologize
5. permitted . . . to use
6. ordered . . . to sit
7. reminded . . . to order
8. warned . . . not to go

PRACTICE 20, p. 329.

1. A
2. B
3. B
4. C
5. B
6. C
7. A
8. B
9. C
10. B
11. C
12. B

Chapter 16: USING WISH; USING IF

PRACTICE 1, p. 333.

1. NO—She wishes she were safe at home.
2. YES—He wishes he had not come to the woods.
3. NO—Heidi wishes she could remember how to get back to town.
4. NO—Sara wishes she had listened to her mother.
5. NO—David wishes he had a flashlight.
6. YES—Heidi wishes they had not left the main path.

PRACTICE 2, p. 334.

1. had
2. didn’t have
3. taught
4. didn’t snow
5. understood
6. could sing
7. didn’t have . . . had
8. didn’t have to study
9. were
10. were

PRACTICE 3, p. 334.

1. don’t . . . did
2. do . . . didn’t
3. isn’t . . . were
4. doesn’t . . . did
5. am . . . weren’t
6. can’t . . . could

PRACTICE 4, p. 335.

1. had had
2. hadn’t had
3. had understood
4. hadn’t lost
5. had been

PRACTICE 5, p. 335.

1. did . . . hadn’t
2. didn’t . . . had
3. did . . . hadn’t
4. don’t . . . did
5. am . . . weren’t

PRACTICE 7, p. 336.

1. NO . . . NO—had . . . could build
2. NO . . . YES—were . . . would not be
3. NO . . . NO—had . . . could lead
4. NO . . . YES—had listened . . . would not have come
5. YES . . . YES—had not left . . . would not have gotten

PRACTICE 8, p. 337.

1. were . . . could speak
2. didn’t have . . . would ask
3. needed . . . would buy
4. weren’t . . . would finish
5. had . . . could go
6. were . . . could paint
7. understood . . . could solve

PRACTICE 10, p. 338.

1. need . . . will/can buy
2. needed . . . would/could buy
3. had needed . . . would have/could have bought
4. go . . . will/can see
5. went . . . would/could see

ANSWER KEY Chapter 16

41
6. had gone . . . would have/could have seen
7. have . . . will/can write
8. had . . . would/could write
9. had had . . . would have/could have written

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 339.
1. had gone . . . would have/could have finished
2. would have answered . . . had heard
3. had told . . . would have/could have helped
4. would have/could have seen . . . had come
5. had read . . . could have talked
6. had seen . . . would have/could have offered
7. had not had to get . . . would have/could have completed

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 339.
1. you’d = you had
   I’d = I would
2. I’d = I would
3. I’d (known) = I had (known)
   I’d (have bought) = I would (have bought)
4. he'd = he would
5. I’d = I had
   They’d = They would

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 340.
1. D
2. B
3. C
4. D

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 341.
1. hadn’t been
2. wouldn’t have found
3. hadn’t yelled
4. had walked
5. wouldn’t have heard
6. hadn’t yelled
7. wouldn’t have been found
8. hadn’t known
9. would have had to spend
10. hadn’t gone

◊ PRACTICE 17, p. 342.
1. had . . . would take
2. were . . . would/could build
3. were . . . would look
4. watch
5. is/will be . . . would be
6. would rise
7. were . . . would the rainbow be . . . would be
8. A: stay/will stay  B: would stay
9. would you do . . . were . . . Would you run . . . Would you call . . . Would you use
10. would you do . . . were
11. A: had  B: had . . . could carry . . . (could) pick
12. would take

42 ◊ ANSWER KEY Chapter 16